# MODEL COURSE 7.01

# MASTER AND CHIEF MATE

## 2014 EDITION

## Electronic edition

This electronic edition is licensed to
Batumi Maritime Academy
for 1 copy.
© International Maritime Organization

IMO INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION

# MODEL COURSE 7.01

# MASTER AND CHIEF MATE

2014 EDITION

ELECTRONIC EDITION

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
London, 2014

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

*Print edition (ISBN: 978-92-801-1581-9)*
*first published in 1991*
by the INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
4 Albert Embankment, London SE1 7SR
www.imo.org

*Electronic edition 2014*

| IMO PUBLICATION |
| --- |
| Sales number: ETB701E |

**ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

This course for Master and Chief Mate is based on material developed for IMO by GlobalMET.

IMO wishes to express its sincere appreciation to GlobalMET for its support, expert assistance, valuable cooperation and generous funding.

Copyright © International Maritime Organization 2014

*All rights reserved.*
*No part of this publication may be reproduced,*
*stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means,*
*without prior permission in writing from the*
*International Maritime Organization.*

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Contents


Page

**Foreword** . . . . . vii

**Introduction** . . . . . **1**
- Purpose of the model courses . . . . . 1
- Use of the model course . . . . . 1
- Lesson plans . . . . . 2
- Presentation . . . . . 2
- Implementation . . . . . 2
- Course objective . . . . . 3
- Entry standards . . . . . 3
- Course intake limitations . . . . . 3
- Textbooks, videos and bibliography . . . . . 4
- Computer applications . . . . . 4
- Conventions, regulations and legislation . . . . . 5

**Part A: Course Framework for all functions** . . . . . **6**
- Aims . . . . . 6
- Objective . . . . . 6
- Function 1 . . . . . 6
- Function 2 . . . . . 6
- Function 3 . . . . . 7
- Entry standards . . . . . 7
- Course certificate . . . . . 8
- Staff requirements . . . . . 8
- Teaching facilities and equipment . . . . . 8
- Teaching aids (A) . . . . . 9
- Videos (DVDs), CD-ROMs, CBTs (V) . . . . . 10
- IMO references (R) . . . . . 14
- Textbooks (T) . . . . . 19
- Bibliography (B) . . . . . 21


INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Function 1: Navigation at the Management Level** . . . . . **33**

**Part B1: Course Outline** . . . . . **36**
Timetable . . . . . 36
Lectures . . . . . 36
Course outline . . . . . 36

**Part C1: Detailed Teaching Syllabus** . . . . . **42**
Introduction . . . . . 42
Explanation of information contained in the syllabus tables . . . . . 42

**Part D1: Instructor Manual** . . . . . **102**
1.1 PLAN A VOYAGE AND CONDUCT NAVIGATION . . . . . 103
1.2 DETERMINE POSITION AND THE ACCURACY OF RESULTANT POSITION FIX BY ANY MEANS . . . . . 106
1.3 DETERMINE AND ALLOW FOR COMPASS ERRORS . . . . . 109
1.4 COORDINATE SEARCH AND RESCUE OPERATIONS . . . . . 110
1.5 ESTABLISH WATCHKEEPING ARRANGEMENTS AND PROCEDURES . . . . 110
1.6 MAINTAIN SAFE NAVIGATION THROUGH THE USE OF INFORMATION FROM NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS TO ASSIST IN COMMAND DECISION MAKING . . . . . 112
1.7 MAINTAIN SAFE NAVIGATION THROUGH THE USE OF ECDIS AND ASSOCIATED NAVIGATION SYSTEMS TO ASSIST COMMAND DECISION MAKING . . . . . 112
1.8 FORECAST WEATHER AND OCEANOGRAPHIC CONDITIONS . . . . . 112
1.9 RESPOND TO NAVIGATIONAL EMERGENCIES . . . . . 114
1.10 MANOEUVRE AND HANDLE A SHIP IN ALL CONDITIONS . . . . . 116
1.11 OPERATE REMOTE CONTROLS OF PROPULSION PLANT AND ENGINEERING SYSTEMS AND SERVICES . . . . . 119

**Function 2: Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level** . . . . . **125**

**Part B2: Course Outline** . . . . . **128**
Timetable . . . . . 128
Lectures . . . . . 128
Course outline . . . . . 128

**Part C2: Detailed Teaching Syllabus** . . . . . **132**

**Part D2: Instructor Manual** . . . . . **182**
2.1 PLAN AND ENSURE SAFE LOADING, STOWAGE, SECURING, CARE DURING THE VOYAGE AND UNLOADING OF CARGOES . . . . . 182
2.2 ASSESS REPORTED DEFECTS AND DAMAGE TO CARGO SPACES, HATCH COVERS AND BALLAST TANKS AND TAKE APPROPRIATE ACTION. . . . . 191
2.3 CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS GOODS . . . . . 191



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Function 3: Controlling the Operation of the Ship and Care for Persons on Board at the Management Level** . . . . . **193**

**Part B3: Course Outline** . . . . . **196**
Timetable . . . . . 196
Lectures . . . . . 196
Course outline . . . . . 196

**Part C3: Detailed Teaching Syallbus** . . . . . **200**

**Part D3: Instructor Manual** . . . . . **287**
3.1 CONTROL TRIM, STABILITY AND STRESS. . . . . 288
3.2 MONITOR AND CONTROL COMPLIANCE WITH LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS AND MEASURES TO ENSURE SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA AND THE PROTECTION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT . . . . . 300
3.3 MAINTAIN SAFETY AND SECURITY OF CREW AND PASSENGERS AND THE OPERATIONAL CONDITION OF SAFETY SYSTEMS. . . . . 310
3.4 DEVELOP EMERGENCY AND DAMAGE CONTROL PLANS AND HANDLE EMERGENCY SITUATIONS. . . . . 313
3.5 USE OF LEADERSHIP AND MANAGERIAL SKILLS . . . . . 313
3.6 ORGANIZE AND MANAGE THE PROVISION OF MEDICAL CARE ON BOARD . . . . . 317

**Appendix 1** . . . . . **318**
Stability Data . . . . . 318
Loading Scale . . . . . 319
KN Curves . . . . . 320

**Appendix 2** . . . . . **321**
Trim Table . . . . . 321

**Part E: Evaluation** . . . . . **322**
Initial/Diagnostic assessment . . . . . 322
Formative assessment . . . . . 322
Summative assessment . . . . . 322
Evaluation for Quality Assurance . . . . . 323
Assessment Planning. . . . . 323
Validity . . . . . 323
Reliability . . . . . 323
STCW . . . . . 324
Calculations . . . . . 325
Compiling tests . . . . . 326
Quality of test items . . . . . 326
Advantages and disadvantages of oral and practical tests . . . . . 330

**Guidance on the implementation of IMO model courses** . . . . . **331**



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
IMO
PUBLISHING

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Foreword

Since its inception the International Maritime Organization (IMO) has recognized the importance of human resources to the development of the maritime industry and has given the highest priority to assisting developing countries in enhancing their maritime training capabilities through the provision or improvement of maritime training facilities at national and regional levels. IMO has also responded to the needs of developing countries for postgraduate training for senior personnel in administrations, ports, shipping companies and maritime training institutes by establishing the World Maritime University in Malmö, Sweden, in 1983.

Following the adoption of the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978 (STCW), a number of IMO Member Governments had suggested that IMO should develop model training courses to assist in the implementation of the Convention and in achieving a more rapid transfer of information and skills regarding new developments in maritime technology. IMO training advisers and consultants also subsequently determined from their visits to training establishments in developing countries that the provision of model courses could help instructors improve the quality of their existing courses and enhance their implementation of the associated Conference and IMO Assembly resolutions.

In addition, it was appreciated that a comprehensive set of short model courses in various fields of maritime training would supplement the instruction provided by maritime academies and allow administrators and technical specialists already employed in maritime administrations, ports and shipping companies to improve their knowledge and skills in certain specialized fields. With the generous assistance of the Government of Norway, IMO developed model courses in response to these generally identified needs and now keeps them updated through a regular revision process taking into account any amendments to the requirements prescribed in IMO instruments and any technological developments in the field.

These model courses may be used by any training institution and, when the requisite financing is available, the Organization is prepared to assist developing countries in implementing any course.

K. SEKIMIZU
Secretary-General



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
IMO
PUBLISHING

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Introduction

## ■ Purpose of the model courses

The purpose of the IMO model courses is to assist maritime training institutes and their teaching staff to introduce and organize new training courses and enhance existing training material, whereby the quality and effectiveness of the training may be improved.

It is not the intention of the model course programme to present instructors with a rigid "teaching package" which they are expected to "follow blindly". Nor is it the intention to substitute audio-visual or "programmed" material for the instructor's presence. As in all training endeavours, the knowledge, skills and dedication of the instructors are the key components in the transfer of knowledge and skills to those being trained through IMO model course material.

Rather, this document should be used as a guide with the course duration given as indicative of the expected time required to cover the required outcomes. The parties may modify this course to suit their respective training schemes.

For those following planned training schemes approved by the Administration, it is intended that this training may form an integral part of the overall training plan and be complementary to other studies. The training may be undertaken in progressive stages; for such candidates, it is not appropriate to specify the duration of the learning, provided achievement of the specified learning outcomes is properly assessed and recorded.

The educational systems and the cultural backgrounds of trainees in maritime subjects vary considerably from country to country. For this reason, the model course material has been designed to identify the basic entry requirements and trainee target group for each course in universally applicable terms, and to specify clearly the technical content and levels of knowledge and skill necessary to meet the technical intent of IMO conventions and related recommendations.

This is the next major revision to this model course. In order to keep the training programme up to date in future, it is essential that users provide feedback. New information will provide better training in safety at sea and protection of the marine environment. Information, comments and suggestions should be sent to the Head of the STCW and Human Element Section at IMO, London.

## ■ Use of the model course

To use the model course the instructor should review the course plan and detailed syllabus, taking into account the information provided under the entry standards specified in the course framework. The actual level of knowledge and skills and the prior technical education of the trainees should be kept in mind during this review, and any areas within the detailed syllabus which may cause difficulties because of differences between the actual trainee entry level and that assumed by the course designer should be identified. To compensate for such differences, the instructor is expected to delete from the course, or reduce the emphasis on, items dealing with knowledge or skills already attained by the trainees. They should



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

also identify any academic knowledge, skills or technical training which they may not have acquired.

By analysing the detailed syllabus and the academic knowledge required to allow training in the technical area to proceed, the instructor can design an appropriate pre-entry course or, alternatively, insert the elements of academic knowledge required to support the technical training elements concerned at appropriate points within the technical course.

Adjustment of the course objective, scope and content may also be necessary if in your maritime industry the trainees completing the course are to undertake duties which differ from the course objectives specified in the model course.

Within the course plan, the course designers have indicated their assessment of the time that should be allotted to each area of learning. However, it must be appreciated that these allocations are arbitrary and assume that the trainees have fully met all entry requirements of the course. The instructor should therefore review these assessments and may need to re-allocate the time required to achieve each specific learning objective or training outcome.

## ■ Lesson plans

Having adjusted the course content to suit the trainee intake and any revision of the course objectives, the instructor should draw up lesson plans based on the detailed syllabus. Where no adjustment has been found necessary in the learning objectives of the detailed syllabus, the lesson plans may simply consist of the detailed syllabus with keywords or other reminders added to assist the instructor in making his presentation of the material.

## ■ Presentation

The presentation of concepts and methodologies must be repeated in various ways until the instructor is satisfied, by testing and evaluating the trainee's performance and achievements, that the trainee has attained each specific learning objective or training outcome. The syllabus is laid out in learning objective format and each objective specifies a required performance or what the trainee must be able to do as the learning or training outcome. Taken as a whole, these objectives aim to meet the knowledge, understanding and proficiency specified in the appropriate tables of the STCW Code.

## ■ Implementation

For the course to run smoothly and to be effective, considerable attention must be paid to the availability and use of:

- properly qualified instructors
- support staff
- rooms and other spaces
- workshops and equipment
- suggested references, textbooks, technical papers, bibliography
- other reference material.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

Thorough preparation is the key to successful implementation of the course. IMO has produced a booklet entitled 'Guidance on the implementation of IMO model courses', which deals with this aspect in greater detail.

In certain cases, the requirements for some or all of the training in a subject are covered by another IMO model course. In these cases, the specific part of the STCW Code, which applies, is given and the user is referred to the other model course.

## ■ Course objective

This model course comprises three functions at the management level. On successful completion of the course and the requisite watchkeeping experience, officers will be prepared for taking full responsibility for the safety of the ship, its passengers, crew and cargo. They will be aware of their obligations under international agreements and conventions concerning safety and the protection of the marine environment and will be prepared for taking the practical measures necessary to meet those obligations.

In this model course, one combined course has been written for both Masters and chief officers. The material is set out assuming that trainees have previously completed the operational level training content required for watchkeeping officer and they have some watchkeeping experience. This does not preclude some of the content for both levels being run within the same training course but it is very important that trainees are familiar with the operational level content before attempting to develop the management level competence outlined in this model course.

The teaching schemes should be carefully scrutinized to ensure that all of the tabulated training outcomes are covered, that repetition is avoided and that essential underpinning knowledge at any stage has already been covered. A certain amount of duplication under different subjects will probably occur, provided it is not excessive, the different approaches can provide useful reinforcement of work already learned. Care should be taken to see that items not included in the syllabus or treatment beyond the depth indicated by the objectives have not been introduced except where necessary to meet additional requirements of the Administration. The teaching scheme should be adjusted to take account of those matters and the timing of any modular courses (such as training in firefighting), that are to be included.

## ■ Entry standards

Entrants should have successfully completed a course covering the minimum standards required for certification as officer in charge of a navigation watch with content similar to IMO model course 7.03, Officer in charge of a navigational watch.

## ■ Course intake limitations

Class sizes should generally be limited to not more than 24 in order to allow the instructor to give adequate attention to individual trainees. Larger numbers may be admitted if extra staff and tutorial periods are provided to deal with trainees on an individual basis. In addition, for scheduling access to learning facilities and equipment, attention to strict time management is necessary. In large classes trainees should have their own reference books, unless sufficient



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

copies can be provided in a central library. Classrooms should be big enough to seat all trainees so they can see and hear the instructor.

During practical sessions and group activities, there will be additional restraints on class size. Where applicable, a recommendation on class size is contained in the framework for each of the individual functions.

## ■ Textbooks, videos and bibliography

References to books, videos and bibliography are made in the Instructor's Manual of the individual subjects to aid both instructors and trainees in finding relevant information and to help in defining the scope and depth of treatment intended.

The mention of a particular textbook does not imply that it is essential to use that book only that it appeared to be best suited to the course at the time of its design. In many instances there are a number of suitable books, and instructors are free to use whatever texts they consider to be most suited to their circumstances and trainees.

Every effort has been made to quote the latest editions of the publications mentioned but new editions are constantly being produced. Instructors should always use the latest edition for preparing and running their courses.

Full use should be made of technical papers and other publications available from maritime and other professional organizations. Such papers contain new developments in techniques, equipment, design, management and opinion, and are an invaluable asset to a maritime training establishment.

## ■ Computer applications

In view of the rapid growth of information technology (IT) and widespread use of computers aboard ship, it is recommended that at the discretion of the Administration, computer applications at an advanced level should be included in the training for Masters and chief engineers. If this topic has not been covered during training as officer in charge of a navigational watch, some basic training may also be required.

Particulars of the training will depend upon the computer facilities available and the needs of the trainees. The following outline provides guidance on topics that could be included:

- The care and storage of magnetic media; use of simple utility programs for identifying disk problems and fixes; LAN maintenance; back-up management; virus protection.
- IT and the use of applications, for communications (email, data, etc.), the internet, intranets and the worldwide web (www).
- The installation and set-up of multi-media applications.
- Accessing and evaluating information through the internet.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The use of multi-media applications can enhance learning in topics in many areas of knowledge and prove of value to Masters and chief officers. Many of the IMO rules and Assembly resolutions are available on CD-ROM. Up-to-date details may be found on the IMO website at http://www.imo.org

## ■ Conventions, regulations and legislation

These are constantly being revised and updated. It is essential that the up-to-date version of these are being used and that all references to particular versions in this model course should be taken to include all future amendments and revisions.

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part A: Course Framework for all functions

## ■ Aims

This model course aims to meet the mandatory minimum requirements for knowledge, understanding and proficiency in table A-II/2 of STCW Code for the function Navigation at the Management Level, for the function Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level and the background knowledge to support Controlling the Operation of the Ship and Care for Persons on Board at the Management Level.

## ■ Objective

### Function 1

The syllabus covers the requirements of the STCW Code, chapter II, section A-II/2. This functional element provides the detailed knowledge to support the training outcomes related to Navigation at the Management Level.

This section provides the background knowledge to support the tasks, duties and responsibilities in:

- planning a voyage and conducting navigation
- determining position and the accuracy of resultant position fix by any means
- determining and allowing for compass errors
- coordinating search and rescue operations
- establishing watchkeeping arrangements and procedures
- maintaining safe navigation through information from navigation equipment and systems to assist command decision making
- maintaining safe navigation through the use of ECDIS and associated navigation systems to assist command decision making
- forecasting weather and oceanographic conditions
- response to navigational emergencies
- manoeuvring and handling a ship in all conditions
- operation of remote controls of propulsion plant and engineering systems and services.

### Function 2

The syllabus covers the requirements of the STCW Code, chapter II, section AII/2. This functional element provides the detailed knowledge to support the training outcomes related to Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

This section provides the background knowledge to support the tasks, duties and responsibilities in:

- planning safe loading, stowage, securing and care during the voyage and unloading of cargoes
- the carriage of dangerous goods.

This includes topics such as ship trim, stability, ballasting, cargo securing, tankers and tanker operations and carriage of dangerous, hazardous and harmful cargoes.

**Function 3**

The syllabus covers the requirements of the STCW Code, chapter II, section A-II/2. This functional element provides the detailed knowledge to support the training outcomes related to Controlling the Operation of the Ship and Care for Persons on Board at the Management Level.

This section provides the background knowledge to support the tasks, duties and responsibilities in:

- controlling trim, stability and stress
- monitoring and controlling compliance with legislation to ensure
  - safety of life at sea
  - protection of the marine environment
- maintaining safety and security of crew and passengers
- developing emergency and damage control plans
- organizing and managing the crew
- organizing and providing medical care on board.

This includes topics such as ship construction and stability, dry-docking, search and rescue, personnel management and contingency planning.

## ■ Entry standards

This course is principally intended for officers for certification as Master and Chief Mate on ships of 500 gross tonnage or more. Entrants should have successfully completed a course covering the minimum standards required for certification as officer in charge of a navigational watch on ships of 500 gross tonnage or more (see IMO model course 7.03, Officer in charge of a navigational watch). In addition they should have completed approved seagoing service as officer in charge of a navigational watch in accordance with STCW Convention, 1978, as amended, regulation II/2, paragraph 2 prior to certification.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## ■ Course certificate

On successful completion of the course and assessments, a document may be issued certifying that the holder has successfully completed a course of training which meets or exceeds the level of knowledge and competence specified in table A-II/2 of STCW Code, for the function.

A certificate may be issued only by centres approved by the Administration.

## ■ Staff requirements

Instructors shall be qualified in the task for which training is being conducted and have appropriate training in instructional techniques and training methods (STCW Code, section AI/6). Depending on the complexity of the exercises set, an assistant instructor with similar experience is desirable for certain practical exercises.

## ■ Teaching facilities and equipment

A classroom equipped with an overhead projector and a blackboard, whiteboard or interactive board or flipchart should be provided for teaching the theory of the course and holding group discussions.

The following items are necessary for use in group work:

For Function 1:

**COLREGS 1972** — a set of table-top models displaying proper signals or lights, a magnetic board or a navigation light simulator

**Manoeuvring** — a set of models to represent ships, jetties, piers and other dock configurations, which can be used on a table top to illustrate ship, handling techniques STCW provides for trainees to have practical competence in ship manoeuvring. The practical components of this may be developed and assessed on vessels in service; however, those training centres completing the practical element of this competence within a training course will need to provide an approved ship simulator, manned ship models or a training ship for this purpose.

For Functions 2 and Function 3:

- a collection of photographs, drawings and plans, illustrating various types of ship and constructional details, should be provided; cutaway models also can be used to reinforce this knowledge
- a floating ship stability demonstration model and a flotation tank are recommended
- the model should be capable of demonstrating the effects of adding or removing masses, of shifting masses, of suspending masses and of free surface liquid working models of heavy-lift derricks
- a ship's loading instrument or manufacturers' descriptions of examples, capacity plans and hydrostatic data for one or more ships' electronic calculators.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## ■ Teaching aids (A)

The list of teaching aids and references are recommendations only and are intended to support the learning outcomes of the course.

A1 Instructor Manual (Part D of this course)
A2 Catalogue of British Admiralty charts and other hydrographic publications
A3 British Admiralty Notices to Mariners
A4 Nautical Almanac
A5 Nautical tables (Norie's, Burton's or others)
A6 Pre-computed altitude and azimuth tables (e.g. H0229)
A7 Pocket calculator
A8 Working chart
A9 Ocean plotting sheet
A10 Passage planning charts
A11 Routeing charts
A12 *Ocean Passages for the World* (NP 136), Taunton, Hydrographer of the Navy, 1987
A13 Distance tables
A14 British Admiralty List of Lights
A15 National list of lights and buoyage system
A16 British Admiralty tide table of the area concerned
A17 Local tide table
A18 Tidal stream atlas
A19 British Admiralty 'Pilot' book for the area concerned
A20 National sailing directions
A21 Port information books
A22 IALA Maritime Buoyage System, Admiralty NP 735
A23 British Admiralty List of Radio Signals, Vol. 2: Radio Aids to Navigation, Satellite Navigation Systems, Legal Time, Radio Time Signals and Electronic Position Fixing System
A24 British Admiralty List of Radio Signals, Vol. 5: Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS)
A25 British Admiralty List of Radio Signals, Vol. 6: Pilot Services, Vessel Traffic Services and Port Operations. 7 volumes
A26 British Admiralty List of Radio Signals, Vol. 3: Maritime Safety Information Services
A27 Ship's logbook
A28 Loran-C Receiver
A29 Magnetic compass in a binnacle with necessary correcting devices for identification of various parts only
A30 Pelorus and azimuth mirror
A31 Gyrocompass
A32 GPS Receivers
A33 Differential GPS (DGPS) Receiver
A34 Enhanced Loran (eLoran) Receiver
A35 Global Navigation Satellite System (GLONASS) Receiver
A36 Galileo Receiver
A37 Automatic Identification System (AIS) Receiver
A38 Long Range Identification and Tracking (LRIT) Receiver
A39 Voyage Data Recorder (VDR) and Simplified Voyage Data Recorder (S-VDR)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

A40 Bridge Navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS)
A41 Ship's Drawings/Plan (GA, Mid section)
A42 Simulators (wherever applicable to enhance understanding of topics, especially, COLREGS and Ship handling)

## ■ Videos (DVDs), CD-ROMs, CBTs (V)

V1 Ships' Routeing on CD, Version 4 (2008) (IMO Code No. DC927E, ISBN 978-92-801-70207)
V2 IMO – Safe, Secure and Efficient Shipping on Clean Oceans on DVD (2006 Edition) (IMO Code No. V010M, ISBN 978-92-801-70023)
Available from: IMO Publishing
4 Albert Embankment
London SE1 7SR, UK
Tel: +44 20 7735 7611, Fax: 44 20 7587 3348
Internet site: http://www.imo.org
V3 Ship handling — Part 1 (Code No. 95)
V4 Ship handling — Part 2 (Code No. 129)
V5 Ship handling — Part 3 (Code No. 321)
V6 Anchoring safely (Code No. 928)
V7 Interaction (Code No. 13)
V8 Ship handling in following seas (Code No. 636)
V9 Ship handling in head seas (Code No. 661)
V10 Ship handling in restricted waters – ship squat and shallow (Code No. 697)
V11 Ship handling in restricted waters – bank effect & interaction (Code No. 748)
V12 Manoeuvring characteristics of special car carriers (Code No. 696)
V13 Manoeuvring and control characteristics of special type ships: Part 1 Focusing on the wind pressure effect on a PCC (Code No. 9985)
V14 Manoeuvring and control characteristics of special type ships: Part 2 Anchoring and mooring of a PCC (Code No. 9986)
V15 Working with tugs (Code No. 972)
V16 Tractor tugs (Code No. 165)
V17 Ship handling with Tractor Tugs (Code No. 359)
V18 Navigating in ICE (Code No. 927)
V19 Helicopter operations at sea (edition 2) (Code No. 704)
V20 Margins of safety (Code No. 73)
V21 Voyage planning (Code No. 758)
V22 Bridge watchkeeping (Code No. 497)
V23 Master/pilot relationship (Code No. 498)
V24 Accident prevention – the human factor (Code No. 637)
V25 Emergency procedures (Code No. 638)
V26 Navigational charts & associated publications (Code No. 639)
V27 Working with VTS (Code No. 640)
V28 Five case studies (Code No. 781)
V29 Shipping Casualty Emergency response (Code No. 467)
V30 Safer mooring (Code No. 997)
V31 Theory of mooring – edition 4 (Code No. 1104)
V32 Safe mooring practice – edition 4 (Code No. 1105)
V33 Maintenance of mooring systems – edition 4 (Code No. 1106)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

V34 Pilot on board, working together (Code No. 945)
V35 Basic instincts (passenger mustering & crowd control) (Code No. 603)
V36 The cold and heavy weather file (Code No. 626)
V37 Meteorology for safe navigation in cyclones (Code No. 695)
V38 Wind, waves and storms Part 1 – understanding weather system (Code No. 738)
V39 Wind, waves and storms Part 2 – coping with hazardous weather (Code No. 743)
V40 AIS – automatic identification systems (Code No. 926)
V41 The safe use of electronic charts (Code No. 705)
V42 Target tracking devices (Code No. 948)
V43 Gyrocompass – Part 1 (Code No. 9897)
V44 Gyrocompass – Part 2 (Code No. 9898)
V45 Gyrocompass – Part 3 (Code No. 9899)
V46 Watchkeeping in port (Code No. 659)
V47 Dangerous goods at sea series (edition 5) (Code No. 713)
V48 Dangerous goods at sea series part 2 (edition 5) (Code No. 719)
V49 Centrifugal pumps – theory & operation (Code No. 9)
V50 Crude oil washing operations (edition 3) (Code No. 707)
V51 Operation & maintenance of inert gas systems (edition 3) (Code No. 708)
V52 The ship-shore interface (petroleum tankers) (Code No. 709)
V53 Safe cargo stowage & securing (Code No. 747)
V54 Ship to ship transfer – petroleum and liquid cargoes (Code No. 751)
V55 Tank purging and line cleaning onboard chemical tankers (Code No. 752)
V56 Introduction to liquefied gas carriers (edition 2) (Code No. 753)
V57 Safe log carrier operations (Code No. 760)
V58 Successful reefer container operations (Code No. 788)
V59 Bulk carriers – handle with care (Code No. 691)
V60 Hatch covers – a practical guide (Code No. 938)
V61 Chemical tank cleaning & inspection (edition 2) (Code No. 950)
V62 Chemical tanker operations: safety and pollution prevention part 1 (Code No. 951)
V63 Chemical tanker operations: safety and pollution prevention part 2 (Code No. 952)
V64 Tank cleaning practice (Code No. 982)
V65 Over and under pressurization of tanks (edition 2) (Code No. 984)
V66 Handling vegetable oils (Code No. 988)
V67 Dangerous & difficult bulk cargoes (Code No. 1101)
V68 Vapour emission control (Code No. 1118)
V69 Ro-ro safety and cargo operations (Code No. 162)
V70 Portable tanks and tank containers (Code No. 314)
V71 Reefer container operations (Code No. 481)
V72 Fire fighting & safe cargo operations on car carriers (Code No. 540)
V73 Don't gamble with safety on chemical tankers (Code No. 595)
V74 Cargo loss prevention on board bulk carriers (Code No. 598)
V75 Cargo lashing operations (ro-ro) (Code No. 631)
V76 Safe use of rigging equipment (Code No. 700)
V77 Manual handling techniques (Code No. 703)
V78 Tanker practices series
Pumping cargo part 1 (Code No. 501)
Pumping cargo part 2 (Code No. 502)
Tank cleaning – part 3 (Code No. 503)
Heating cargo – part 4 (Code No. 504)
Measuring cargo – part 5 (Code No. 505)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

V79 Fighting pollution – preventing pollution at sea (edition 3) (Code No. 755)
V80 Good bunkering practice (edition 2) (Code No. 962)
V81 Permit to work (Code No. 621
V82 Safe gangway and ladder operations (Code No. 946)
V83 Personal safety on tankers (edition 2) (Code No. 970)
V84 Personal safety on chemical tankers (Code No. 946 (Code No. 980)
V85 Seven steps to ship stability part 1 (Code No. 622)
Seven steps to ship stability part 2 (Code No. 623)
V86 Entering into enclosed spaces (edition 2) (Code No. 682)
V87 Death in minutes – rescue techniques from confined spaces (Code No. 750)
V88 Permit to work (Code No. 621)
V89 Safe hot work procedures (Code No. 701)
V90 Waste and garbage management (Code No. 627)
V91 Medical first aid (edition 2) (Code No. 990)
V92 Hull stress monitoring (Code No. 550)
V93 Mistaken identity (Code No. 14)
V94 Survival (Code No. 681)
V95 Basic fire fighting (edition 3) (Code No. 674)
V96 Enclosed lifeboats, freefall lifeboats rescue boats (Code No. 679)
V97 STCW and flag state implementation (Code No. 629)
V98 Search techniques (Code No. 935)
V99 Security at sea (Code No. 484)
V100 Immersion suits – the difference between life and death (Code No. 947)
V101 Muster lists, drills & helicopter operations (Code No. 678)
V102 MLC 2006 (Code No. 986)
V103 Shipshape. A guide to good housekeeping part 1: on deck (Code No. 974)
V104 The shipboard management role (edition 2) (Code No. 969)
V105 Port state control – tightening the net (edition 2) (Code No. 977)
V106 Health & welfare advice for seafarers (Code No. 510)
V107 Personal hygiene (Code No. 993)
V108 Load line surveys – part 1 (Code No. 544)
V109 Safety construction survey – part 2 (Code No. 545)
V110 Safety equipment survey – part 3 (Code No. 546)
V111 Management for seafarer series (Code No. 607 – 612)
Available from: Videotel Marine International
84 Newman Street, London W1T 3EU, UK
Tel: +44(0) 20 72991800
Fax: +44(0) 207299 1818
Email: mail@videotelmail.com
URL: www.videotel.co.uk
V112 Ballast water management
V113 Emergency Response – the vital first minutes
V114 Interpreting weather at sea
V115 MARPOL. The new rules
V116 Oily water separators



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

V117 Stowaways! A new view on prevention
Available from: Walport International Ltd,
Riverside Business Centre
Fort Road, Tilbury
Essex, RM18 7ND
United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0)1375 489 790
Fax: +44 (0)1375 489 794
Email: sales@walport.com
URL: www.walport.com

V118 SOPEP (CBT # 0004)
V119 ISM Code (CBT # 0005)
V120 Vessel Structural Conditions (CBT # 0014)
V121 Corrosion Protection I (CBT # 0015)
V122 Corrosion Protection II (CBT # 0016)
V123 Steering Gear (CBT # 0017)
V124 Auxiliary Engine (CBT # 0024)
V125 Voyage Planning (CBT # 0026)
V126 Ballast Water Management (CBT # 0027)
V127 Protection and Indemnity (CBT # 0028)
V128 Emergency Towing system (CBT # 0031)
V129 Liquid Cargo Properties (CBT # 0032)
V130 Medical First Aid (CBT # 0036)
V131 Operation of Generators (CBT # 0041)
V132 Bilge Water Separator (CBT # 0043)
V133 Auxiliary Boiler Plant (CBT # 0046)
V134 Radar Observation and Plotting (CBT # 0049)
V135 ARPA Theory (CBT # 0050)
V136 HAZMAT – IMDG Code (CBT # 0053)
V137 COW (CBT # 0054)
V138 ODME (CBT # 0055)
V139 Satellite Navigation GPS (CBT # 0059)
V140 Navigation in Ice (CBT # 0060)
V141 Stability II, Damage Stability (CBT # 0061)
V142 Basic Ship Handling (CBT # 0066)
V143 Sulzer Medium Speed Diesel Engine (CBT # 0074)
V144 Pumps and Pumping Operations (CBT # 0078)
V145 Human Relations (CBT # 0088)
V146 Medical Care (CBT # 0089)
V147 Incinerators (CBT # 0091)
V148 Introduction to MARPOL (CBT # 0092)
V149 Fresh Water Generator (CBT # 0098)
V150 INS – Integrated Navigation System (CBT # 0103)
V151 AIS – Automatic Identification System (CBT # 0109).
V152 Heavy Weather Damage (Container Vessels) (CBT # 0111)
V153 Risk Assessment and Management (CBT # 0123)
V154 HAZMAT – IMDG Code, Advanced (CBT # 0151)
V155 Hatch Cover Maintenance and Operation (CBT # 0152)
V156 Stowaways, migrants and refugees (CBT # 0155)
V157 Introduction to the Maritime Labour Convention (MLC 2006) (CBT # 0191)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

V158 MLC 2006 – Onboard Responsibilities (CBT # 0192)
V159 Culture Management (CBT # 0251)
V160 Active Listening (CBT # 0252)
V161 Corrective Feedback (CBT # 0253)
V162 Meeting Management (CBT # 0254)
V163 Question Techniques (CBT # 0255)
V164 Team Leadership (CBT # 0256)
V165 Stress Management (CBT # 0257)
V166 Personal Safety (DVD # 2001)
V167 SOPEP (DVD # 2004)
V168 Mooring and Anchoring (DVD # 2063)
Available from: Seagull AS
P.O. Box 1062
N-3194 Horten, Norway
Tel: +47 33 03 09 10
Fax: +47 33 04 62 79
Email: seagull@sgull.com
V169 Counting the cost
V170 Any fool can stuff a container
V171 No Room for Error
V172 Bulk Matters
V173 Container Matters
V174 Gas Matters
V175 Tanker Matters
Available from: UK P&I
Thomas Miller P&I Ltd.
90 Fenchurch Street,
London EC3M 4ST,
UNITED KINGDOM
Tel: +44 20 7283 464

## ■ IMO references (R)

**CHECKS SHOULD BE MADE THAT THESE ARE THE LATEST EDITIONS AVAILABLE**

R1 International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers (STCW), 2011 edition (IMO Sales No. 938, ISBN 9789280152884)
R2 International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), as amended (IMO Sales No. IE110E) SOLAS – Consolidated Edition, 2009 (ISBN 9789280115055)
R3 Ships' Routeing (2010, 10th ed.) (IMO Sales No. ID927E)
R4 Assembly resolution A.665(16): Performance standards for radio direction-finding systems
R5 Assembly resolution A.574(14): Recommendation on general requirements for electronic navigational aids
R6 Assembly resolution A.382(X): Magnetic compasses: carriage and performance standards
R7 Assembly resolution A.424(XI): Performance standards for gyrocompasses



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

R8 Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972 (COLREGS 1972), as amended (IMO Sales No. IB904E) Consolidated Edition, 2003 (ISBN 978-92-801-41672)
R9 International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973 (MARPOL 1973) (IMO Sales No. IC520E) Consolidated Edition, 2006 (ISBN 978-92-801-42167)
R10 Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Oil – Annex 1, MARPOL 73/78 (IMO Sales No. 520)
R11 Regulations for the Control of Pollution by Noxious Substances in Bulk – Annex II, MARPOL 73/78 (IMO Sales No. 520)
R12 Guidelines for the implementation of Annex V of MARPOL 73/78 (IMO Sales No. 520)
R13 Manual on Oil Pollution, Section 1 – Prevention (IMO Sales No. 557) OUT OF PRINT
R14 Assembly resolution A.648(16) – General Principles for Ship Reporting Systems and Ship Reporting Requirements, including Guidelines for Reporting Incidents Involving Dangerous Goods, Harmful Substances and/or Marine Pollutants
R15 Assembly resolution A.626(15) – Amendments to the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972
R16 Assembly resolution A.678(16) – Amendments to the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972
R17 Assembly resolution A.601(15) – Provision and display of manoeuvring information on board ships Assembly resolution A.751(18) – Interim standards for ship manoeuvrability
R18 Assembly resolution A.160(ES.IV) – Recommendation on data concerning manoeuvring capabilities and stopping distances of ships
R19 Assembly resolution A.269(VIII) – Recommendation for skippers of fishing vessels on ensuring a vessel's endurance in conditions of ice formation
R20 Assembly resolution A.889(21) – Pilot transfer arrangements
R21 International Convention on Salvage, 1989. The London Salvage Convention
R22 Assembly resolution A.528(13) – Recommendation on weather routeing
R23 Comite Maritime International, International Conventions on Maritime Law (Antwerp, CMI Secretariat (Firma Henry Voet-Genicot, Borzestraat 17, B-2000 Antwerp), 1987)
R24 Assembly resolution A.439(XI) – IMCO Search and Rescue Manual
R25 Assembly resolution A.530(13) – Use of radar transponders for search and rescue purposes
R26 MEPC.14(20) Amendments to Annex I of MARPOL 73/78
R27 MEPC.16(22) Amendments to Annex II of MARPOL 73/78
R28 MEPC.21(22) Amendments to Protocol I of MARPOL 73/78 and the text of the Protocol, as amended, annexed thereto
R29 MSC.35(63) – Guidelines for emergency towing arrangements on tankers
R30 INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION ON THE CONTROL OF HARMFUL ANTI-FOULING SYSTEMS (AFS) ON SHIPS, 2001 (2005 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA680E, ISBN 978-92-801-41955
R31 International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue Manual (IAMSAR Manual) Volume I – Organization and Management, Volume II – Mission Coordination, Volume III – Mobile Facilities (2008 Edition, IMO Sales No. IF960E, IC961E, IF962E, ISBN 978-92-801-14881, ISBN 978-92-801-14898, ISBN 978-92-801-14904)
R32 International Code of Signals (2005 edition) (IMO Sales No. IA994E, ISBN 978-92-801-41986)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

R33 IMO Standard Marine Communication Phrases (IMO SMCP) (2002 Edition) (IMO Sales No. IA987E, ISBN 978-92-801-51374)
R34 Assembly resolution A.954(23) – Proper use of VHF channels at sea
R35 Assembly resolution A.953(23) – World-wide radio navigation system
R36 Assembly resolution A.577(14) – Operational Status of Electronic Position-Fixing Systems
R37 Assembly resolution A.615(15) – Radar Beacons and Transponders
R38 Assembly resolution A.280(VIII) – Recommendations on Performance Standards for Gyrocompasses
R39 Assembly resolution A.382(X) – Magnetic Compasses: Carriage and Performance Standards
R40 Assembly resolution A.384(X) – Performance Standards for Radar Reflectors
R41 Assembly resolution A.823(19) – Performance standards for automatic radar plotting aids (ARPAs)
R42 Assembly resolution A.424(XI) – Performance Standards for Gyrocompasses
R43 Assembly resolution A.479(XII) – Performance Standards for Shipborne Receivers for Use with Differential Omega
R44 Assembly resolution A.281(VIII) – Recommendation on general requirements for electronic navigational aids
R45 Assembly resolution A.694(17)* – General Requirements for Shipborne Radio Equipment Forming Part of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) and for Electronic Navigational Aids
R46 Assembly resolution A.918(22) – IMO standard marine communication phrases
R47 Assembly resolution A.488(XII) – Use of the Standard Marine Navigational Vocabulary
R48 Assembly resolution A.429(XI) – Routeing Systems
R49 MSC.71(69) – Amendments to the General Provisions on Ships' routeing
R50 Assembly resolution A.528(13) – Recommendation on Weather Routeing
R51 Assembly resolution A.113(V) – Revised International Code of Signals
R52 MSC.165(78) – Adoption of amendments to the general provisions on ships' routeing
R53 International Convention on Load Lines, 1966 (2005 Edition) IMO Sales No. IB701E, ISBN 978-92-801-41948
R54 International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code (IMDG Code), 2008 Edition (incorporating amendment 34-08) IMO Sales No. IG200E, ISBN 978-92-801-42419
R55 International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code (IMDG Code) Supplement, 2008 Edition, IMO Sales No. IG210E, ISBN 978-92-801-42426
R56 International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes Code (IMSBC Code) and Supplement (2009 Edition) IMO Sales No. IE260E, ISBN 978-92-801-42396
R57 Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes, 1991 (1992 Edition) IMO Sales No. I275E, ISBN 978-92-801-12856
R58 Assembly resolution A.489(XII) – Safe Stowage and Securing of Cargo Units and Other Entities in Ships Other Than Cellular Container Ships
R59 Assembly resolution A.533(13) – Elements to Be Taken Into Account When Considering the Safe Stowage and Securing of Cargo Units and Vehicles in Ships
R60 Assembly resolution A.581(14) – Guidelines for Securing Arrangements for the Transport of Road Vehicles on Ro-Ro Ships
R61 Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing (CSS Code) (2003 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA292E, ISBN 978-92-801-51459
R62 International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk (International Grain Code) (1991 edition) IMO Sales No. I240E, ISBN 978-92-801-12757



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

R63 Guidelines on the Enhanced Programme of inspections during survey of Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers (2008 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA265E, ISBN 978-92-801-14966

R64 Code of Practice for the Safe Loading and Unloading of Bulk Carriers (BLU Code) (1998 Edition) IMO Sales No. I266E, ISBN 978-92-801-14584

R65 Manual on loading and unloading of Solid Bulk cargoes for Terminal representative (BLU Manual) (2008 Edition) IMO Sales No. I267E, ISBN 978-92-801-14928

R66 International Convention for Safe Containers (CSC), 1972 (1996 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA282E, ISBN 978-92-801-14119

R67 Guidelines for the Transport and Handling of Limited Amounts of Hazardous and Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk on Offshore Support Vessels (LHNS) (2007 Edition) IMO Sales No. I289E, ISBN 978-92-801-14874

R68 REVISED RECOMMENDATIONS ON THE SAFE TRANSPORT OF DANGEROUS CARGOES AND RELATED ACTIVITIES IN PORT AREAS (2007 Edition) IMO Sales No. IB290E, ISBN 978-92-801-14720

R69 Guidelines for the Preparation of the Cargo Securing Manual (1997 Edition) IMO Sales No. I298E, ISBN 978-92-801-14416

R70 CRUDE OIL WASHING SYSTEMS (2000 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA617E, ISBN 978-92-801-50940

R71 BALLAST WATER MANAGEMENT CONVENTION AND THE GUIDELINES FOR ITS IMPLEMENTATION (2009 Edition) IMO Sales No. I621E, ISBN 978-92-801-15031

R72 MARPOL – How to do it, 2002 Edition. IMO Sales No. IA636E, ISBN 978-92-801 41528

R73 Pollution prevention equipment under MARPOL, 2006 Edition. IMO Sales No. IA646E, ISBN 978-92-801-14706

R74 Manual on Oil Pollution – Section II – Contingency Planning, 1995 Edition. IMO Sales No. IA560E, ISBN 978-92-801-13303
Manual on Oil Pollution – Section III – Salvage, 1997 Edition. IMO Sales No. IA566E, ISBN 978-92-801-14423
Manual on Oil Pollution – Section IV – Combating Oil spills, 2005 Edition. IMO Sales No. IA569E, ISBN 978-92-801-41771
Manual on Oil Pollution – Section V – Administrative Aspects of Oil Pollution Response, 2009 Edition. IMO Sales No. IA572E, ISBN 978-92-801-15000
Manual on Oil Pollution – Section VI – IMO Guidelines for Sampling and Identification of Oil Spills, 1998 Edition. IMO Sales No. I578E, ISBN 978-92-801-14515
MANUAL ON CHEMICAL POLLUTION – Section 1 – Problem Assessment and Response Arrangements (1999 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA630E, ISBN 978-92-801-60963
MANUAL ON CHEMICAL POLLUTION – Section 2 – Search and Recovery of Packaged Goods Lost at Sea (2007 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA633E, ISBN 978-92-801-42228

R75 United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea, Official Records Volume II Plenary Meetings. Geneva, 1958 (United Nations Publication Sales No. 58.VA, Vol II) containing:
Geneva Convention of the Territorial Sea and the Contiguous Zone, 1958
Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958
Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf, 1958

R76 United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea. New York, 1983 (United Nations Publication Sales No. E.83.V.5)

R77 IMO Assembly resolution A.671(16) – Safety Zones and Safety of Navigation Around Offshore Installations and Structures

R78 Supplement relating to the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966 (IMO Sales No. 705)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

R79 IMO Assembly resolution A.760(18) 1993. Symbols related to life-saving appliances and arrangements
R80 PROCEDURES FOR PORT STATE CONTROL (2000 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA650E, ISBN 978-92-801-50995
R81 GUIDELINES FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF SHIPBOARD MARINE POLLUTION EMERGENCY PLANS (2010 Edition) IMO Sales No. IB586E, ISBN 978-92-801-15185
R82 International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC Code) (2007 Edition) IMO Sales No. IC100E, ISBN 978-92-801-42266
R83 INTERNATIONAL CODE FOR THE CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT OF SHIPS CARRYING LIQUEFIED GASES IN BULK (IGC Code) (1993 Edition) IMO Sales No. I104E, ISBN 978-92-801-12771
R84 INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE ON SPECIAL TRADE PASSENGER SHIPS,1971 (1972 Edition) IMO Sales No. I727B, ISBN 978-92-801-00136
R85 WHO International Health Regulations (1969), 3rd annotated ed. (Geneva, World Health Organization, 1983, ISBN 92-4-158007-0)
R86 INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE ON SPACE REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIAL TRADE PASSENGER SHIPS, 1973 (1973 Edition) IMO Sales No. I734B, ISBN 978-92-801-00228
R87 IMO Assembly resolution A.494(XII) – Revised Interim Scheme for Tonnage Measurement for Certain Ships
R88 IMO Assembly resolution A.540(13) – Tonnage Measurement for Certain Ships Relevant to the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978
R89 IMO Assembly resolution A.541(13) – Interim Scheme for Tonnage Measurement for Certain Ships for the Purpose of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution From Ships, 1973, As Modified by the Protocol of 1978 Relating Thereto
R90 IMO Assembly resolution A.769(18) – Procedures and Arrangements for Issuing GMDSS Certificates to Holders of Non-GMDSS Certificates
R91 INTERNATIONAL SAFETY MANAGEMENT CODE (ISM Code) AND GUIDELINES ON IMPLEMENTATION OF THE ISM CODE (2010 Edition) IMO Sales No. IB117E, ISBN 978-92-801-51510
R92 International Life Saving Appliance Code (LSA Code) (2010 edition) IMO Sales No. ID982E, ISBN 978-92-801-15079
R93 International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) IMO Sales No. IA155E, ISBN 978-92-801-14812
R94 INTERNATIONAL CODE FOR APPLICATION OF FIRE TEST PROCEDURES (FTP Code) (1998 Edition) IMO Sales No. IB844E, ISBN 978-92-801-14522
R95 GRAPHICAL SYMBOLS FOR FIRE CONTROL PLANS (2006 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA847E, ISBN 978-92-801-42259
R96 INTERNATIONAL CODE ON INTACT STABILITY, 2008 (2009 Edition) IMO Sales No. IB874E, ISBN 978-92-801-15062
R97 PREVENTION OF CORROSION ON BOARD SHIPS (2010 Edition) IMO Sales No. I877M, ISBN 978-92-801-00358
R98 IMO Assembly resolution A.1001(25) 2007. Criteria for the provision of mobile satellite communication systems in the global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS)
R99 IMO Assembly resolution A.705(17) 2008. Amendments to resolution A.705(17) – Promulgation of Maritime Safety Information
R100 IMO Assembly resolution A.706(17) 2008. Amendments to resolution A.706(17) – World-Wide Navigational Warning Service



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

R101 MSC.306(87) 2010. Revised performance standards for enhanced group call (EGC) equipment
R102 IMO/UNEP GUIDELINES ON OIL SPILL DISPERSANT APPLICATION INCLUDING ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS (1995 Edition) IMO Sales No. IA575E, ISBN 978-92-801-13327
R103 MANUAL ON OIL SPILL RISK EVALUATION AND ASSESSMENT OF RESPONSE PREPAREDNESS (2010 Edition) IMO Sales No. I579E, ISBN 978-92-801-15123
R104 ILO, Maritime Labour Convention 2006
R105 Convention on limitation of liability for maritime claims, 1976 (LLMC 1976) (IMO Sales No. 444)
R106 Inter-Governmental Conference on the Dumping of wastes at Sea (LDC 1972) (IMO Sales No. 532)
R107 International Convention relating to Intervention on High Seas in cases of Oil Pollution Casualties, 1979 (Intervention) (IMO Sales No. 402)
R108 International Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage,1969 (CLC 1969)
R109 Intact Stability Criteria for Passenger & Cargo Ships (1987 edition) (IMO Sales No. 832)
R110 FAL.2/Circ.123/MEPC.1/Circ.769/MSC.1/Circ.1409, List of Certificates and Documents Required to be Carried on Board

Details of distributors of IMO publications that maintain a permanent stock of all IMO publications may be found on the IMO website at http://www.imo.org

## ■ Textbooks (T)

T1 Admiralty Manual of Navigation. Vol 1. London, The Stationary Office 1999 4th impression (ISBN 0-11-772880-2)
T2 Bole, A.G. and Dineley, W.O. and Nicholls, C.E. The Navigation Control Manual. 2nd ed. Oxford, Heinemann Professional, 1992 (ISBN 0-7506-0542-1)
T3 House, D.J. Seamanship techniques. 3rd ed. Oxford, Elsevier Butterworth-Heinemann, 2005 (ISBN 0-7506-6315-4)
T4 Derrett, D.R. Ship Stability for Masters and Mates, 6th ed. Butterworth-Heinemann, 2006 (ISBN 0-7506-6784-2)
T5 Eyres, D.J. Ship Construction, 5th ed. London, Butterworth-Heinemann, 2001 (ISBN 0-7506-4887-2)
T6 Frost, A. Practical Navigation for Second Mates. 6th ed. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson, 1985 (ISBN 0-851 7-4397-8)
T7 Frost, A. The Principles and Practice of Navigation. 3rd ed. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson, 1988 (ISBN 0-851 7-4443-3)
T8 Gylden, S.G. & Petterson, B. Plotting and parallel index. Constant radius turns: Navigation in fog. 2nd ed. Ytterby (Sweden), Micronav Consultants, 1991
T9 Hensen, Capt. H. Tug Use In Port, A practical guide, 2nd ed. The Nautical Institute (ISBN 1-8700-7739-3)
T10 Hill, C. Maritime Law, 4th ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1995 (ISBN 1-850-44-888-4)
T11 Hooyer, H.H. The Behaviour and Handling of Ships. Cornell Maritime Press (ISBN 0-7870-33306-2)
T12 International Chamber of Shipping, Bridge Procedures Guide, 3rd ed. 1998 London. Marisec Publications
T13 International Medical Guide for Ships. World Health Organization, 1989



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

T14 International Safety Guide for Oil Tankers and Terminals. 5th ed. ICS/OCIMF. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2006 (ISBN 978-1856-092-913)
T15 Immer, J.R. Cargo Handling. Marine Education Textbooks, 1984 (ISBN 1-877977-806-8)
T16 Kemp, J.F. and Young, P. Notes on Compass Work. 2nd ed. London, Stanford Maritime, 1972; reprinted 1987 (ISBN 0-5400-0362-X)
T17 La Dage, J. and Van Gemert, L. (Eds). Stability and Trim for the Ship's Officer. 3rd ed. Centreville, Maryland, US, Cornell Maritime Press, 1983 (ISBN 0-8703-3-297-X)
T18 MacElvrey, D.H. Shiphandling for the Mariner. 3rd ed. Centreville, Maryland, US, Cornell Maritime Press, 1995 (ISBN 0-8703-3464-6)
T19 Morton, G.S. Tanker Operations. A Handbook for the Ship's Officer 3rd ed., 1992 (ISBN 0-8703-3-432-8)
T20 Maritime Meteorology, 2nd ed., 1997. Thomas Reed Publications (ISBN 0-901 2-81 67-0)
T21 McGuire and White. Liquefied Gas Handling Principles on Ships and Terminals. 2nd ed. London, Witherby, 1996 (ISBN 1-8560-9087-6)
T22 Merrifield, F.G. Ship Magnetism and The Magnetic Compass, Pergamon Press
T23 Meteorological Office, Marine Observer's Handbook. 11th ed. (Met.0.887). London, HMSO, 1995 (ISBN 0-1 140-0367-X)
T24 Meteorological Office, Meteorology for Mariners, 3rd ed. 8th impression. London, HMSO, 1978 (ISBN 0-1 140-0311-4)
T25 Rowe, R.W. The Shiphandler's Guide. The Nautical Institute. 1996 (ISBN 1-870077 35 0)
T26 Ship Captain's Medical Guide. 1985. Department of Transport HMSO published by HMSO
T27 Swift, Capt. A.J. Bridge Team Management – A Practical Guide. The Nautical Institute, 1993 (ISBN 1-8700-771 4-8)
T28 Taylor, D.A. Merchant Ship Construction. 3rd ed. London, Institute of Marine Engineers, 1992 (ISBN 0-9072-0646-8)
T29 Tetley, L. and Calcutt, D. Electronic Aids to Navigation: Position Fixing. 2nd ed. 1986 London, Edward Arnold, 1991 (ISBN 0-3405-4380-9)
T30 The Mariner's Handbook (NP 100). 6th ed. Taunton (UK), Hydrographer of the Navy,1989
T31 Thomas, O.O., Agnew, J. and Cole, K.L. Thomas' Stowage: The Properties and Stowage of Cargoes, 3rd ed. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson, 1996
T32 Taylor, D.A. Introduction to Marine Engineering. 2nd ed. London, Butterworth, 1990 (ISBN 0-4080-5706-8)
T33 Medical First Aid Guide for use in Accidents involving Dangerous Goods (MFAG). 5th ed. 1994 (ISBN 92-801-1 322-4)
T34 Guidelines for the Inspection and Maintenance of Double Hull Tanker Structures. OCIMF. London, Witherby, 1995 (ISBN 1-8560-9090-9)
T35 Bulk Carriers: Guidance and information on bulk cargo loading and discharging to reduce the likelihood of overstressing the hull structures. IACS. London 1997
T36 Code of Safe Working Practices for Merchant Seamen, London. The Stationery Office Publications Centre, 1998 (ISBN 01 1551 8363)
T37 Holder, L.A. Training and Assessment on Board. 3rd ed. London, Witherby & Co Ltd, 2002 (ISBN 1 85609 228 3)
T38 Anwar, Capt. N. – Navigation Advanced – Mates/Masters, Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2006 (ISBN 1-905331-15-0)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

T39 Anwar, Capt. N. & Khalique, A. – Passage Planning – Practice, Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2006 (ISBN 1-8560-9323-9)
T40 Cockcroft, A.N. – A guide to the collision avoidance rules. 6th ed. Oxford: Elsevier Butterworth-Heinemann, 2004 (ISBN 0-7506-6179-8)
T41 JACKSON, L. – Reed's instrumentation and control systems. 4th ed. London: Thomas Reed Publications Ltd, 1992 (Reed's Marine Engineering Series Vol. 10). (ISBN 0-947637-86-9)
T42 Maclachlan, Malcolm – The Shipmaster's Business Companion (Book and CD), 4th ed., 2004 (ISBN 978 1 870077 45 3)
T43 Maclachlan, Malcolm – Shipmaster's Business Self-Examiner, 7th ed., 2009 (ISBN 978 1 906915 00 1)
T44 Rhodes, M. – Ship Stability Mates Masters, 1st ed., Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2012 (ISBN 978-0-9534379-3-1)

## ■ Bibliography (B)

B1 ANDERSON, P. – ISM Code: A guide to the legal and insurance implications. London, Lloyd's of London Press (ISBN 1-859-786-21-9)
B2 ARROYO, D.W. – International maritime conventions. Deventer (Netherlands), Kluwer Law and Taxation Publishers, 1991 (ISBN 90-6544-4408)
B3 BARRASS, C.B. – Ship stability: Notes and examples. 3rd ed. Oxford, Butterworth-Heinemann, 2001 (ISBN 0-7506-4850-3)
B4 BAUGHEN, S. – Shipping law. London: Cavendish Publishing Ltd, 1998 (ISBN 1-85941-313-7)
B5 BENNET, H. – Law of marine insurance. 2nd ed. Oxford, Oxford University Press, 2006 (ISBN 0-19-927359-6)
B6 BIRNIE, P. & BOYLE, A.E. – International law and the environment. 2nd ed. Oxford, Oxford University Press, 2002 (ISBN 0-19-8766553-3)
B7 Bowditch, N. – American practical navigator (Combined edition Vol. 1 & 2). Riverdale, (MD) (USA), National Ocean Servicing, 1995
B8 Brown & Perring Ltd – Admiralty charts. London, Brown & Perrings Ltd (Various regions, published individually)
B9 BROWN, E.D. – The International law of the sea. 2 Vols. Aldershot, Dartmouth Publishing Co. Ltd, 1994 (ISBN 1-85521-306-0)
B10 BROWN, R.H. – Marine insurance. Vol. 1 – Principles and basic practice. 6th ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1999 (ISBN 1-85609-150-3)
B11 BROWN, R.H. – Marine insurance. Vol. 2 – Cargo practice. 5th ed. 1997 (ISBN 1-85609-132-5); Vol. 3 – Hull practice. 2nd ed. 1992 (ISBN 0-948691-45-X).
B12 Brown, Son & Ferguson – Brown's nautical almanac daily tide and tables. Glasgow: Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd (Annual)
B13 Brown, Son & Ferguson – Regulations for preventing collisions at sea. Revised. Glasgow (UK), Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd, 1995 (ISBN 0-85174-645-4)
B14 BRUBAKER, D. – Marine pollution and international law: principles and practices. London, Belhaven Press, 1993 (ISBN 1-85293-273-2)
B15 BUNDOCK, M. – Shipping law handbook. 3rd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2003 (ISBN 1-84311-209-4)
B16 Buyese, Capt. J. – Handling Ships in Ice. A practical guide to handling class 1A and 1AS ships. The Nautical Institute, 2007 (ISBN 1-8700-7784-2)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B17 Cahill, R.A. – Collisions and their causes. 2nd ed. London, The Nautical Institute, 2002 (ISBN 1-870077-60-6; Ref: 0268)
B18 Cahill, R.A. – Disaster at sea: From the Titanic to the Exxon Valdez. London, Century Publishing, 1990
B19 Cahill, R.A. – Strandings and their causes. 2nd ed. London, The Nautical Institute, 2002 (ISBN 1-870077-61-3 Ref: 0269)
B20 CAMINOS, H. (Ed.) – Law of the sea. Aldershot: Dartmouth Publishing Co., 2001 (ISBN 1-84014-090-9)
B21 CHEMICAL INDUSTRIES ASSOCIATION – Guidelines for shipping packaged dangerous goods by sea. London: Chemical Industries Association, 1997 (ISBN 1-85897-062-8)
B22 CHEN, X. – Limitation of liability for maritime claims. The Hague, Kluwer Law International, 2001 (ISBN 90-411-1598-6)
B23 CHURCHILL, R. & LOWE, A. – Law of the sea. 3rd ed. Manchester University Press, 1989 (ISBN 0-7190-4381-6)
B24 Clark, I.C. – Mooring and Anchoring Ships Vol. 1 – Principles and Practice. London, The Nautical Institute, 2009 (ISBN 1-870077-93-4)
B25 Clark, I.C. – Ship dynamics for mariners. London, The Nautical Institute, 2005 (ISBN 1-870077-68-7)
B26 Cockroft, A.N. – Nicholl's Seamanship and Nautical Knowledge. 26th ed. Glasgow (UK), Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd, 1993 (ISBN 0-85174-407-1)
B27 Collins, L. – Global Positioning System (GPS): Theory and practice. 5th ed. New York: Springer-Verlag, 2001 (ISBN 3-211-83534-2)
B28 Cornish, M. & Ives, E. – Reed's maritime meteorology. 3rd ed. Hampton Court (UK), Reed (Thomas) Publications, 2009 (ISBN 0-901281-67-0)
B29 CURTIS, S. – The law of shipbuilding contracts. 3rd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2002
B30 DAVIES, D. – Commencement of laytime, 3rd. ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, (ISBN 1-85978-196-9)
B31 DAVIES, M. & DICKEY, A. – Shipping law. 3rd ed. Sydney, Lawbook Co. 2004 (ISBN 0-455-22081-6)
B32 DAVISON, R. & SNELSON, A. – The law of towage. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1990 (ISBN 1-85044-347-5)
B33 DURNFORD, J.R. Technical sketching for deck and engineer officers. London, Nautical Institute, 1996 (ISBN 1 87007734 2)
B34 EMBLETON, W. – Engineering knowledge: Instruments and control systems for deck officers. 5th ed. Hampton Court (UK), Reed (Thomas) Publications Ltd, 1995 (ISBN 0-90128-115-8)
B35 FAIRPLAY PUBLICATIONS – Tonnage measurement of ships. 2nd ed. Coulsdon (UK), Fairplay Publications Ltd, 1980 (ISBN 0-905045-03-3)
B36 Fifield, L.W.J. – Navigation for watchkeepers. Oxford, Heinemann Professional Publishing, 1980 (ISBN 0-434-90564-X)
B37 FISHER, A., ECON, D. – Principles of marine insurance. London, Chartered Insurance Institute, 1999 (ISBN 1-85369-267-0)
B38 FISHER, W. – Engineering for nautical students. Glasgow (UK), Brown, Son & Ferguson (ISBN 0-851740-40)
B39 FOGARTY – Merchant shipping legislation. 2nd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2004 (ISBN 1-84311-329-5)
B40 Forsberg, G. – Salvage from the sea. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd, 1977 (ISBN 0-71008698-9)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B41 Frampton, R. & Uttridge, P. – Meteorology for seafarers. 3rd ed. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd, 2008 (ISBN 978-0-85174-799-6)
B42 Gale, Capt. H – From Paper Charts to ECDIS – A practical voyage plan. The Nautical Institute, 2009 (ISBN 1-8700-7798-9)
B43 GASKELL, N. et al – Bills of lading: Law and contracts. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2000 (ISBN 1-85978-480-1)
B44 GAUCI, G. – Oil pollution at sea: Civil liability and compensation for damage. Chichester (West Sussex): John Wiley & Sons, 1997 (ISBN 0-471-97066-2)
B45 Gibilisco, S – Meteorology Demystified, McGraw-Hill. 2006 (ISBN 0-071-48790-0)
B46 GOLD, E. – Gard handbook on marine pollution. 2nd ed. Arendal (Norway), Assurance for engine Gard, 1997 (ISBN 82-90344-11-2)
B47 GORTON, L., HILLENIUS, P., IHRE, R., SANDERVARN, A. – Ship broking and chartering practice. 6th ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2004 (ISBN 1-8431-322-8)
B48 GUERRERO Jr, J. – Maritime cargo insurance. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2003 (ISBN 1-85609-263-1)
B49 HAZELWOOD, S.J. – P & I Clubs: Law and practice. 3rd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2000 (ISBN 1-85978-531-X)
B50 Hensen, Capt, H. – Ship bridge simulators: A project handbook. London, Nautical Institute, 1999
B51 Hobbs, R.R. – Marine navigation. Piloting, celestial and electronic navigation. 3rd ed. Annapolis (MD) (USA), Naval Institute Press, 1994 (ISBN 0-87021-294-X)
B52 HODGES, S. & HILL, C. – Principles of maritime law. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2001 (ISBN 1-85978-998-6)
B53 HODGES, S. – Law of marine insurance. London, Cavendish Publishing Ltd, 1996 (ISBN 1-85941-227-0)
B54 HOPKINS, F.N. – Business and law for the shipmaster. 7th ed. Glasgow (UK), Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd, 1989 (ISBN 0-85174537-7)
B55 House, D.J. – Anchor Practice: A Guide for Industry, London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2006 (ISBN 1-8560-9212-7)
B56 House, D.J. – Marine survival and rescue systems. 2nd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1997 (ISBN 1-85609-127-9)
B57 House, D.J. – Navigation for masters. 3rd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2006 (ISBN 1-85609-271-2
B58 House, D.J. – Seamanship techniques. 3rd. ed. Oxford, Elsevier Butterworth-Heinemann, 2005 (ISBN 0-7506-6315-4)
B59 House, D.J. – Seamanship techniques: for shipboard & maritime operations. 3rd ed. Butterworth-Heinemann, 2004 (ISBN 0-7506-6315-1)
B60 House, D.J. – Ship Handling – Theory and practice. Butterworth-Heinemann, 2007 (ISBN 0-7506-8530-6)
B61 House, D.J. – The Command companion of seamanship techniques. Vol. 3. Oxford, Butterworth-Heinemann, 2000 (ISBN 0-7506-4443-5)
B62 House, D.J. & Saeed, F. – The Seamanship Examiner: For STCW Certification Examinations. Butterworth-Heinemann, 2005 (ISBN 0-7506-6701-2)
B63 House, Lloyd, Toomey & Dickin – The Ice Navigation Manual, Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2009 (ISBN 1-9053-3159-8)
B64 HUDSON, N. and ALLEN, J. – Marine claims handbook. 5th ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1996 (ISBN 1-85978-048-2)
B65 Hydrographer of the Navy – Admiralty list of radio signals. 6 Vols. Taunton (UK), Hydrographer of the Navy, 2001



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B66 Hydrographer of the Navy (UK) – Admiralty manual of hydrographic surveying. Vol. 1, 1965. Taunton (UK), Hydrographer of the Navy
B67 Hydrographer of the Navy (UK) – Admiralty manual of hydrographic surveying. Vol. II, Taunton (UK), Hydrographer of the Navy
B68 Hydrographer of the Navy (UK) – Catalogue of admiralty charts and publications 2000. Taunton (UK), Hydrographer of the Navy, 2000
B69 Hydrographer of the Navy (UK) – Symbols and abbreviations used on admiralty charts (Chart 5011), 2nd ed. Taunton (UK), Hydrographer of the Navy, 1998
B70 Hydrographer of the Navy (UK) – The mariner's handbook. 7th ed. Taunton (UK), Hydrographer of the Navy, 1999 (ISBN 0-707-71123-1)
B71 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES (IACS) – Bulk carriers: Guidance and information to shipowners and operators. London: IACS, 1992
B72 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES (IACS) – Bulk carriers: Guidelines for surveys, assessment and repair of hull structure. 3rd ed. London: Witherby and Co. Ltd, 1995 (ISBN 1-85609-135-X)
B73 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES (IACS) – Bulk carriers: Handle with care. London, IACS, 1998
B74 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES (IACS) – Bulk carriers: Guidelines for surveys, assessment and repair of hull structure. 3rd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1995 (ISBN 1-85609-135-X)
B75 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES (IACS) – Container ships: Guidelines for surveys, assessment and repair of hull structures. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2005 (ISBN 1-85609-296-8)
B76 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES (IACS) – General cargo ships: Guidelines for surveys, assessment and repair of hull structure. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1999 (ISBN 1-85609-189-9)
B77 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES (IACS) – Guidelines for coatings maintenance and repairs. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2005 (ISBN 1-85609-308-5)
B78 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF DRY CARGO SHIPOWNERS (INTERCARGO) – Bulk carrier casualty report 2005, the previous ten years (1996-2005) and the trends. London, Intercargo, 2006
B79 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF DRY CARGO SHIPOWNERS (INTERCARGO) – Port state control: A guide for ships involved in the dry bulk trades. London, Intercargo, 2000
B80 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF DRY CARGO SHIPOWNERS (INTERCARGO) – Bulk carriers: Guidelines for surveys, assessment and repair of hull structures. 2nd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2002 (ISBN 1-85609-223-2)
B81 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF INDEPENDENT TANKER OWNERS (INTERTANKO) – A guide to crude oil washing and cargo heating criteria. Oslo, Intertanko, 2004
B82 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF INDEPENDENT TANKER OWNERS (INTERTANKO) – A guide for correct entries in the Oil Record Book (Part I – Machinery space operations). Revised edition. Oslo, Intertanko, 2006
B83 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF INDEPENDENT TANKER OWNERS (INTERTANKO) – A guide for vetting inspections. 3rd ed. Oslo: Intertanko, 1997
B84 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF INDEPENDENT TANKER OWNERS (INTERTANKO) – A Guide to International Environmental Management Systems (EMS). Oslo: Intertanko, 2002



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B85 INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF INDEPENDENT TANKER OWNERS (INTERTANKO) – A guide to bunkering of ships for the purposes of Annex VI to MARPOL. Oslo, Intertanko, 2004
B86 International Association of Lighthouses Authorities (IALA) – IALA aids to navigation guide (NAVGUIDE). Edition 4. Paris: IALA, 2001
B87 International Association of Lighthouses Authorities (IALA) – IALA Vessel Traffic Services manual. Paris, IALA, 1993 (ISBN 2-910312-01-1)
B88 INTERNATIONAL CARGO HANDLING COORDINATION ASSOCIATION (ICHCA) – The loading and unloading of solid bulk cargoes. London: ICHCA, 1998 (ISBN 1-85330-096-9)
B89 INTERNATIONAL CARGO HANDLING COORDINATION ASSOCIATION (ICHCA) – The loading and unloading of solid bulk cargoes. London, ICHCA, 1998 (ISBN 1-85330-096-9)
B90 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – Condition evaluation and maintenance of tanker structure. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1992 (ISBN 1-85609-039-6)
B91 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – International Safety Guide for Oil Tankers and Terminals (ISGOTT). 5th ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2006 (ISBN 1-85609-291-7)
B92 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – Safety in chemical tankers. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1977
B93 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – Safety in liquefied gas tankers. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1980
B94 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – Safety in oil tankers. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1978
B95 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – Ship shore safety checklist for bulk carriers. London, ICS, 2000
B96 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – Shipping and the environment: A code of practice. 3rd ed., London, ICS, 1999
B97 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – Tanker safety guide: Chemicals. 3rd ed. London, ICS, 2002 (ISBN 0-906270-04-9)
B98 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS) – Tanker safety guide: Liquefied gas. 2nd ed. London, ICS, 1995 (ISBN 0-906270-03-0)
B99 International Chamber of Shipping (ICS)/Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF) – Peril at sea and salvage: A guide for masters. 5th ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1998 (ISBN 1 – 5609-095-7)
B100 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS)/OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Clean seas guide for oil tankers. 4th ed. London Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1994 (ISBN 1-85609-058-2)
B101 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS)/OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Guidance manual for the inspection and condition assessment of tanker structures. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1986 (ISBN 0-948691-11-5)
B102 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS)/OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Ship to ship transfer guide: Liquefied gases. 2nd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1995 (ISBN 1-85609-082-5)
B103 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING (ICS)/OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Ship to ship transfer guide: (Petroleum). 4th ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2005 (ISBN 1-85609-258-5)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B104 INTERNATIONAL CHAMBER OF SHIPPING et al – Bulk carrier checklists. London, ICS, 1996
B105 International Hydrography Organization (IHO) – IHO/IMO world-wide navigational warning service. Guidance document. Monaco, IHO, 1995 (Special Publication No. 53. Language(s): E, F
B106 INTERNATIONAL INSTITUTE OF MARINE SURVEYING – Code of practice for draught surveys. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1998 (ISBN 1-85609-152-X)
B107 INTERNATIONAL LABOUR ORGANIZATION (ILO) – Maritime labour convention 2006. CD-ROM. Geneva, ILO, 2006 (ISBN 92-2-018784-1)
B108 International Maritime Pilot's Association (IMPA) – Required boarding arrangements for pilots. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1995
B109 INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO) – Ships and marine technology: Bulk carriers: Construction quality of hull structure. Geneva, ISO, 2000 (ISO 15401)
B110 INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO) – Ships and marine technology: Bulk carriers: Repair quality of hull structure. Geneva, ISO, 2000 (ISO 15402)
B111 INTERNATIONAL SHIPPING FEDERATION (ISF) – ILO Maritime Labour Convention: A guide for the shipping, London, ISF, 2006
B112 Irving, M. – Marine pilot safety. London, Nautical Institute, 1996 (ISBN 1-870077-31-8)
B113 ISBESTER, J. – Bulk carrier practice. London: The Nautical Institute, 1993 (ISBN 1-870077-16-4)
B114 JACKSON, D. – Enforcement of maritime claims. 4th ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2005 (ISBN 1-84311-424-0)
B115 JERVIS, B. – Reeds marine insurance. London, Adlard Coles Nautical, 2005 (ISBN 0-7136-7396-6) (http://www.adlardcoles.com)
B116 Jones, T.G. – Seamanship notes. 5th ed. Oxford, Butterworth-Heinemann, 1992 (ISBN 0-7506-0281-3)
B117 KEMP, J.F. & YOUNG, P. – Kandy: Cargo work. 5th ed. Oxford, Butterworth-Heinemann, 1982 (ISBN 0-7506-0524-3)
B118 KEMP, J.F. & YOUNG, P. – Ship construction: Sketches and notes. Oxford, Butterworth-Heinemann, 1991 (ISBN 0-7506-0381-X)
B119 Khalique, A. – Nav Basics. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2009 (ISBN 9781905331581)
B120 Lee, Capt., G.W.U. and Parker, C.J. – Managing Collision Avoidance at Sea. The Nautical Institute, 2007 (ISBN 1-8700-7786-6)
B121 Lloyd, Capt., M. – Captains Legal. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2009 (ISBN 9781905331406)
B122 Lloyd, Capt., M. – In Command. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2007 (ISBN 978 1 85609 353)
B123 Lloyd, Capt., M. – The Complete Chief Officer. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2006 (ISBN 1-8560-9359-0)
B124 Lloyd, Capt., M. – The Masters Pocketbook Series – Checklists. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2009 (ISBN 9781905331444)
B125 Lloyd, Capt., M. – The Pocket Book of Anchoring. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2006 (ISBN 9781905331451)
B126 LLOYD'S OF LONDON PRESS (LLP) – Marine claims: A guide for the handling and prevention of marine claims. Lloyd's list practical guide. 2nd ed. London, LLP, 1996 (ISBN 1-85978-047-4)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B127 Lloyd's of London Press – Lloyd's Nautical Yearbook, 2000. LLP Professional Publishing, 1999 (ISBN 1-85978-540-9)
B128 LLOYD'S REGISTER OF SHIPPING – Bulk carriers – The safety issues. London: Lloyd's Register of Shipping, 1991
B129 LLOYD'S REGISTER OF SHIPPING – Bulk carriers: An update (January 1996). London: Lloyd's Register of Shipping, 1996
B130 LLOYD'S REGISTER OF SHIPPING – Bulk carriers: Guidance to operators on the inspection of cargo holds. London: Lloyd's Register of Shipping, 1991
B131 LLOYD'S REGISTER OF SHIPPING – Lloyd's register and the Standard. A master's guide to hatch cover maintenance. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2002 (ISBN 1-85609-232-1)
B132 LUDDEKE, C. & JOHNSON, A. – The Hamburg Rules. 2nd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1995 (ISBN 1-85044-84-1)
B133 LUX, J. (Ed). – Classification societies. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1993 (ISBN 1-85044-491-9)
B134 M Notices – Consolidated list to August 1996. 3 Vols. (ISBN 0-11-551853-3)
B135 MANDARAKA-SHEPPARD, A. – Modern admiralty law. London, Cavendish Publishing Ltd, 2001 (ISBN 1-85941-531-8)
B136 Maritime And Coastal Agency – Code of safe working practice for merchant seamen. London, HMSO, 1998 (ISBN 0-11-551836-3)
B137 MEESON, N. – Admiralty jurisdiction and practice. 3rd ed. London, LLP Professional Publishing, 2003 (ISBN 1-84311-271-X)
B138 Meteorological Office, The marine Observer's Handbook. 11th ed. (Met.0.,887). London, HMSO, 1996 (ISBN 0-1140-0367-X)
B139 Ministry Of Defence (UK) – Admiralty manual of navigation. Vol. 1 – General navigation, 1986. London, HMSO
B140 Ministry Of Defence (UK) – Admiralty manual of navigation. Vol. 2 – Ocean navigation, 1973. London, HMSO
B141 Ministry Of Defence (UK) – Admiralty manual of navigation. Vol. 3 – Radio aids, etc. 1987. London, HMSO
B142 Moore, D.A. – International light, shape and sound signals. 2nd ed. Oxford, Butterworth-Heinemann, 1982 (ISBN 0-434-913-103)
B143 Morgans Technical Books – Seaman's guide to the rule of the road. 6th ed. Morgans Technical Books Ltd, 1995 (ISBN 0-948254-00-9)
B144 NAUTICAL INSTITUTE – Improving ship operational design. London, The Nautical Institute, 1998
B145 NAUTICAL INSTITUTE – Master's role in collecting evidence. London, Nautical Institute, 1989 (ISBN 1-870077-05-9)
B146 NAUTICAL INSTITUTE – Safe operation of bulk carriers. London, Nautical Institute, 1991
B147 NAUTICAL INSTITUTE – Seaworthiness: The Marine and the Maritime Law Series No. 3. London, Nautical Institute, 1992
B148 NAUTICAL INSTITUTE – Signing bills of lading. London, Nautical Institute, 1992
B149 NAUTICAL INSTITUTE – Unsafe berths and ports. London, Nautical Institute, 1992
B150 Norris, Dr. A. – Radar and AIS-Vol. 1 Integrated Bridge Systems. The Nautical Institute, 2008 (ISBN 1-8700-7795-8)
B151 Norris, Dr. A. – Integrated Bridge Systems, Vol. 2 ECDIS and Positioning. The Nautical Institute, 2010 (ISBN 1-9069-1511-3)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B152 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Guide on marine terminal fire protection and emergency evacuation. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1987 (ISBN 0-948691-30-1)
B153 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Marine and terminal operations survey guidelines. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1994 (ISBN 1-85609-62-0)
B154 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Oil spill contingency planning: A brief guide. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1990 (0-900886-40-4)
B155 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Oil spill fate and impact on the marine environment. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1980 (ISBN 0-900-80086-49-8)
B156 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Recommendations for oil tanker manifolds and associated equipment. 4th ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1991 (ISBN 1-85609-017-5)
B157 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Recommendations on equipment for towing of disabled tankers. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1981 (ISBN 0-900886-65-X)
B158 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Safety guide for terminals handling ships carrying liquefied gases in bulk. 2nd ed. London. Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1993 (ISBN 1-85609-057-4)
B159 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Vessel inspection questionnaire for bulk oil/chemical carriers and gas carriers – V.I.Q. 2nd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2000 (ISBN 1-85609-200-3)
B160 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF)/INTERNATIONAL TANKER OWNERS POLLUTION FEDERATION (ITOPF) – Guidelines for the preparation of shipboard oil spill contingency plans. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1990 (ISBN 1-85609-016-7)
B161 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF)/SOCIETY OF INTERNATIONAL GAS TANKERS AND TERMINAL OPERATORS (SIGTTO) – Inspection guidelines for ships carrying liquefied gases in bulk. 2nd ed. London: Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1998 (ISBN 1-85609-139-2)
B162 OIL COMPANIES INTERNATIONAL MARINE FORUM (OCIMF)/SOCIETY OF INTERNATIONAL GAS TANKERS AND TERMINAL OPERATORS (SIGTTO) – Ship information questionnaire for gas carriers. 2nd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1998 (ISBN 1-85609-138-4)
B163 Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF) – Anchoring Systems and Procedures, 2nd edition. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2010 (ISBN 1-8560-9404-9)
B164 Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF) – Effective mooring. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1989 (ISBN 0-948691-88-3)
B165 Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF) – Guidelines and recommendations for the safe mooring of large ships at piers and sea islands. 2nd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1992 (ISBN 1-85609-041-8)
B166 Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF) – The Use of Large Tankers in Seasonal First-Year Ice and Severe Sub-Zero Conditions. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd, 2010 (ISBN 1-8560-9429-4)
B167 OIL INTERNATIONAL COMPANIES MARINE FORUM (OCIMF) – Vessel inspection questionnaire for bulk oil/chemical carriers and gas carriers – V.I.Q. 2nd ed. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2000 (ISBN 1-85609-200-3)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B168 Owen, P. – High speed craft: A practical guide for deck officers. London, The Nautical Institute, 1995 (ISBN 1-870077-22-9)
B169 OZCAYIR, Z.O. – Liability for oil pollution and collisions. London, Lloyd's of London Press (ISBN 1-85978-179-9)
B170 PAMBORIDES, G.P. – International shipping law: Legislation and enforcement. The Hague: Kluwer Law International, 1999 (ISBN 90-411-1193-X)
B171 PAYNE & IVAMY – Marine insurance. 4th ed. Sevenoaks (UK), Butterworth & Co. Ltd, 1985 (ISBN 0-406-25313-7)
B172 Peacock, Lt Cmdr A. – Astro Navigation – Admiralty Manual of Navigation Vol. 2, 2004 (ISBN 1-8700-7765-1)
B173 Peacock, Lt Cmdr A. – The Principles of Navigation – The Admiralty Manual of Navigation Vol. 1, 10th ed. 2008 (ISBN 1-8700-7790-3)
B174 PHILIPS, N., CRAIG, N. – Merchant shipping act 1995 – Annotated guide. 2nd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2001 (IBSN 1-8597-8563-8)
B175 POLAND, S., ROOTH, T. – Gard handbook on P & I insurance. 4th ed. Arendal (Norway), Assuranceforeningen Gard, 1996 (ISBN 82-90344-16-3)
B176 RAINEY, S. – The Law of tug and tow. 2nd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2002 (ISBN 1-84311.169.1)
B177 Reed (Thomas) Publication Ltd – Reed marine distance tables. 7th ed. Hampton Court (UK). Reed (Thomas) Publication Ltd, 1992 (ISBN 0-947637-27-3)
B178 REYNOLDS, M. – Arbitration. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1995 (ISBN 1-85044-550-8)
B179 RHIDIAN THOMAS, D. (Ed.) – Modern law of marine insurance. Vol. 1. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1996 (ISBN 1-85978-033-4)
B180 RHIDIAN THOMAS, D. (Ed.) – Modern law of marine insurance. Vol. 2. London Lloyd's of London Press, 2002 (ISBN 1-84311-120-9)
B181 RICHARDSON, J. – The Hague and Hague-Visby rules. 4th ed. London: Lloyd's of London Press, 1999 (Lloyd's Practical Shipping Guides) (ISBN 1-85978-180-2)
B182 ROGERS, P., et al – Coal: Carriage by sea. 2nd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1997 (ISBN 1-85978-108-X)
B183 Rose, F. – Marine Insurance: law and practice. Informa, 2004 (ISBN 1-8431-1247-7)
B184 ROSES, F. – General average: Law and practice. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1997 (ISBN 1-85978-158-6)
B185 SANDS, P. – Principles of international environmental law. 2nd ed. Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 2003 (ISBN 0-521-81794-3)
B186 SCHOENBAUM, T.J. – Admiralty and maritime law. 3rd ed. St. Paul (Minn.) (USA), West Publishing Co., 2001 (ISBN 0-314-02711-4)
B187 SCHOFIELD, J. – Laytime and demurrage. 5th ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2005 (ISBN 1-84311-419-4)
B188 Society Of International Gas Tanker And Terminal Operators (SIGTTO) – A guide for passage planning for the transit of the Straits of Malacca and Singapore for vessels of draughts of less than 12 metres London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2000 (ISBN 1-85609-195-3)
B189 SOCIETY OF INTERNATIONAL GAS TANKER AND TERMINAL OPERATORS (SIGTTO) – Crew safety standards and training for LNG carriers: Essential best practices for the industry. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2003 (ISBN 1-85609-257-7)
B190 SOCIETY OF INTERNATIONAL GAS TANKER AND TERMINAL OPERATORS (SIGTTO) – Liquefied gas fire hazard management. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2004 (ISBN 1-85609-265-8)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B191 SOCIETY OF INTERNATIONAL GAS TANKER AND TERMINAL OPERATORS (SIGTTO) – Liquefied gas carriers: Your personal safety guide. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2002 (ISBN 1-85609-217-8)
B192 SOCIETY OF INTERNATIONAL GAS TANKER AND TERMINAL OPERATORS (SIGTTO) – LNG Operations in port areas: Essential best practices for the industry. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2004 (ISBN 1-85609-256-9)
B193 SPARKS, A. – Steel: Carriage by Sea. 4th ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 2003.
B194 Squairy W.H. – Modern chart work. 6th ed. Glasgow (UK), Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd, 1992 (ISBN 0-85174-548-2)
B195 Subramaniam, Capt. – Practical Navigation. 4th Edition. Nutshell Series Book 1. Vijaya Publications
B196 TANKER STRUCTURE COOPERATIVE FORUM – Guidance manual for tanker structures. London, Witherby & Co, Ltd, 1997 (ISBN 1-85609-093-0)
B197 TANKER STRUCTURE COOPERATIVE FORUM/INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES (IACS) – Guidelines for the inspection and maintenance of double hull tanker structures. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1995 (ISBN 1-85609-080-9)
B198 TAYLOR, L.G. – Cargo work. 12th ed. Glasgow, Brown, Son & Ferguson Ltd, 1992 (ISBN 0-85174-605-5)
B199 TETLEY, W. – Maritime liens and claims. 2nd ed. Montreal, International Shipping Publications, 1998 (ISBN 2-89451-227-9)
B200 The Standard – A Master's Guide to Berthing. Witherby Seamanship International Ltd (ISBN 9781856092906)
B201 The Stationery Office – Admiralty manual of seamanship. London HMSO, 1995 (ISBN 0-11-772695-8) Loose-leaf
B202 The Stationery Office – The Nautical Almanac. London, HMSO (Annual)
B203 THE TANKER STRUCTURE COOPERATIVE FORUM – Guidelines for ballast tank coating systems and surface preparation. London: Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2002 (ISBN 1-85609-214-3)
B204 THOMAS, D.R. – Maritime liens. Andover (Hants, UK), Stevens, 1998 (ISBN 0-4216-0920-6)
B205 TODD, P. – Bills of lading and bankers' documentary credits. 3rd ed. London, Lloyd's of London Press, 1998 (ISBN 1-85978-113-6)
B206 TUPPER, E.C. – Introduction to naval architecture. Butterworth-Heinemann, 1996 (ISBN 0-75062-529-5)
B207 UNITED NATIONS (UN) – United Nations Convention on the carriage of goods by sea, 1978 (Hamburg Rules). New York, 1994 (ISBN 92-1-133494-2)
B208 Van Kluijven, P.C. et al – IMO standard marine communication phrases (Dutch-English). Alkmaar (The Netherlands): De Alk & Heijnen bv, 2003 (ISBN 90-5961-008-3)
B209 Various authors. Bridge Watchkeeping. 2nd ed. The Nautical Institute, 2003 (ISBN 1-8700-7717-0)
B210 Vervloesem, W. – Mooring and Anchoring Ships Vol. 2 – Inspection and Maintenance. The Nautical Institute, 2009 (ISBN 1-8700-7794-1)
B211 VIDEOTEL MARINE INTERNATIONAL – Fighting pollution (Book, video and posters), London, Videotel Marine International, 1991
B212 Waugh, I. – The mariner's guide to marine communications. 2nd ed. London: The Nautical Institute, 2006 (ISBN 1-870077-78-4) (http://www.nautinst.org)
B213 WILFORD, M. et al – Time charters. 5th ed. London, LLP Professional Publishing, 2003 (ISBN 1-84311-210-8)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B214 Williamson, P.R. – Ship manoeuvring principles and pilotage. London: Witherby & Co. Ltd, 2001 (ISBN 1-85609-210-0)
B215 WITHERBY & CO. LTD – Condition evaluation and maintenance of tanker structures. London, Witherby & Co. Ltd, 1992 (ISBN 1-85609-039-6)
B216 WITHERBY SEAMANSHIP INTERNATIONAL – Chemical tankers: A pocket safety guide. London, Witherbys Publishing Ltd, 2006 (ISBN – 1-85609-324-7)
B217 WITHERBY SEAMANSHIP INTERNATIONAL – LNG: Operational practice. London, Witherbys Publishing Ltd, 2006 (ISBN – 1-85609-321-7)
B218 Witherby Seamanship International Ltd – Macneil's Seamanship Examiner MATES/ MASTERS Pocket Book, 2010 (ISBN 9781856094146)
B219 Witherby Seamanship International Ltd – Macneil's Seamanship Examiner COLREGS Pocket Book, 2010 (ISBN 9781 856094122)
B220 Witherby Seamanship International Ltd – Passage Planning Guide – English Channel and Dover Strait, 2010 (ISBN 1-9053-3194-0)
B221 Witherby Seamanship International Ltd – Passage Planning Guide – Malacca & Singapore Straits 2nd ed., 2010 (ISBN 1905331940)
B222 Witherby Seamanship International Ltd – Regulatory Primer for Mates & Masters Covering Current and New Regulations, 2010 (ISBN 9781856094207)
B223 World Meteorological Organization (WMO) – Handbook on marine meteorological services. Geneva, WMO, 1991
B224 World Meteorological Organization (WMO) – Manual on marine meteorological services. 2 Vols. Geneva, WMO, 1990
B225 Jeffery, R. (2007) *Leadership Throughout.* London: The Nautical Institute
B226 Bass, B.M. (1990) *Bass and Stodgill's Handbook of Leadership.* Third Edition. London: The Free Press
B227 Carnegie, Dale (1936 rev 1981) *How to Win Friends and Influence People.* Random House
B228 Drucker, P.F. (1968) *The Practice of Management.* London. William Heinemann
B229 Drucker, P.F. (2003) *The New Realities.* New Brunswick, NJ. Transaction Publishers
B230 Drucker, P.F. (2004) *The Daily Drucker: 365 Day of Insight and Motivation for Getting the Right Things Done.* Harper
B231 Goleman, D. (1996) *Emotional Intelligence: Why It Can Matter More Than IQ.* London, Bloomsbury
B232 Grint, K. (2005) *Leadership: Limits and Possibilities.* Basingstoke, Palgrave Macmillan
B233 Handy, C.B. (1993) *Understanding Organisations.* London, Penguin
B234 Hart, D. (1994) *Authentic Assessment: A Handbook for Educators,* Menlo Park, CA; Addison Wesley. Excerpted from *Classroom Teacher's Survival Guide*
B235 Jones, S. & Glosling, J. *Nelson's Way: Leadership Lessons from the Great Commander.* London; Nicholas Brealey
B236 Kotter, J. (1990) *A Force for Change: How Leadership Differs from Management.* New York, The Free Press
B237 Moon, J.A. (2002) *Reflection in Learning and Development.* London, Kogan Page
B238 Maritime & Coastguard Agency (MCA) UK (2010) *The Human Element: A Guide to the Human Behaviour in the Shipping Industry.* London, The Stationery Office
B239 Reason, J. (1990) *Human Error.* New York, Cambridge University Press
B240 Reason, J. (1997) *Managing the risks of organizational accidents.* Aldershot, Ashgate
B241 Senge, P.M. (1994) *The Fifth Discipline.* New York, Doubleday Business
B242 B18 Western, S. (2008) *Leadership: A Critical Test.* London, Sage
B243 Sidney Dekker (2007) *Just Culture: Balancing Safety and Accountability*. Aldershot, Ashgate



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

B244 Gunnar Fahlgren (2011) *Human Factors.* Bloomington, Author House
B245 Grech, Horberry, Koester (2008) *Human Factors in the Maritime Domain.* London, CRC Press
B246 Beaty, David (1995) *The Naked Pilot.* Shrewsbury, Airlife Publishing

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Master and Chief Mate

# Function 1:
# Navigation at the Management Level

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
IMO
PUBLISHING

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Master and Chief Mate

# Function 1: Navigation at the Management Level

# INDEX


Page

**Part B1: Course Outline** . . . . . **36**
Timetable
Lectures
Course outline

**Part C1: Detailed Teaching Syllabus** . . . . . **42**
Introduction
Explanation of information contained in the syllabus tables
1.1 Plan a voyage and conduct navigation
1.2 Determine position and the accuracy of resultant position fix by any means
1.3 Determine and allow for compass errors
1.4 Coordinate search and rescue
1.5 Establish watchkeeping arrangements and procedures
1.6 Maintain safe navigation through the use of information from navigation equipment and systems to assist command decision making
1.7 Maintain safe navigation through the use of ECDIS and associated navigation systems to assist command decision making
1.8 Forecast weather and oceanographic conditions
1.9 Respond to navigational emergencies
1.10 Manoeuvre and handle a ship in all conditions
1.11 General knowledge of remote controls of propulsion plant and engineering systems and services

**Part D1: Instructor Manual** . . . . . **102**




Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part B1: Course Outline

## ■ Timetable

No formal example of a timetable is included in this model course.

Development of a detailed timetable depends on the level of skills of the officers entering the course and the amount of revision work of basic principles that may be required.

Lecturers must develop their own timetable depending on:

- the level of skills of trainees
- the numbers to be trained
- the number of instructors

and normal practices at the training establishment.

Preparation and planning constitute an important factor which makes a major contribution to the effective presentation of any course of instruction.

## ■ Lectures

As far as possible, lectures should be presented within a familiar context and should make use of practical examples. They should be well illustrated with diagrams, photographs and charts where appropriate, and be related to matter learned during seagoing time.

An effective manner of presentation is to develop a technique of giving information and then reinforcing it. For example, first tell the trainees briefly what you are going to present to them; then cover the topic in detail; and, finally, summarize what you have told them. The use of an overhead projector and the distribution of copies of the transparencies as trainees handouts contribute to the learning process.

## ■ Course outline

The tables that follow list the competencies and areas of knowledge, understanding and proficiency, together with the estimated total hours required for lectures and practical exercises. Teaching staff should note that timings are suggestions only and should be adapted to suit individual groups of trainees depending on their experience, ability, equipment and staff available for training.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## Course outline

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|
| **Competence:** | | |
| **1.1 PLAN A VOYAGE AND CONDUCT NAVIGATION** | | |
| 1.1.1 VOYAGE PLANNING AND NAVIGATION FOR ALL CONDITIONS | | |
| .1 Voyage planning for all conditions by acceptable methods of plotting ocean tracks | 24 | |
| .2 Navigation and monitoring of the voyage | 12 | |
| .3 Logbooks and voyage records | 2 | 38 |
| 1.1.2 ROUTEING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE GENERAL PROVISIONS ON SHIP'S ROUTEING | | |
| .1 Routeing | 12 | 12 |
| 1.1.3 REPORTING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR SHIP REPORTING SYSTEMS AND WITH VTS PROCEDURES | | |
| .1 Ship reporting systems | 1 | 1 |
| **1.2 DETERMINE POSITION AND THE ACCURACY OF RESULTANT POSITION FIX BY ANY MEANS** | | |
| 1.2.1 POSITION DETERMINATION IN ALL CONDITIONS | | |
| .1 Celestial navigation | 10 | |
| .2 Terrestrial observations, including the ability to use appropriate charts, notices to mariners and other publications to assess the accuracy of the resulting fix | 16 | |
| .3 Modern electronic navigational aids with specific knowledge of their operating principles, limitations, sources of error, detection of misrepresentation of information and methods of correction to obtain accurate position fixing | 20 | 46 |
| **1.3 DETERMINE AND ALLOW FOR COMPASS ERRORS** | | |
| 1.3.1 PRINCIPLES OF THE MAGNETIC COMPASS | | |
| .1 Parts of the magnetic compass and their function | 3 | |
| .2 Errors of the magnetic compass and their correction | 27 | 30 |
| 1.3.2 PRINCIPLES AND ERRORS OF GYROCOMPASSES | | |
| .1 Principles of gyrocompasses | 3 | |
| .2 Gyrocompass errors and corrections | 7 | 10 |
| 1.3.3 SYSTEMS UNDER THE CONTROL OF THE MASTER GYRO AND THE OPERATION AND CARE OF THE MAIN TYPES OF GYROCOMPASS | | |
| .1 Systems under the control of the master gyro and the operation and care of the main types of gyrocompass | 2 | 2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|---|
| **1.4** | **COORDINATE SEARCH AND RESCUE OPERATIONS** | | |
| | *See IMO model course 1.08 and STCW reg. I/12* | | |
| **1.5** | **ESTABLISH WATCHKEEPING ARRANGEMENTS AND PROCEDURES** | | |
| 1.5.1 | INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA | | |
| | .1 Thorough knowledge of content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended | 30 | 30 |
| 1.5.2 | PRINCIPLES TO BE OBSERVED IN KEEPING A NAVIGATIONAL WATCH | | |
| | .1 Thorough knowledge of the content, application and intent of the principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch at a management level | 12 | 12 |
| 1.5.3 | BRIDGE WATCHKEEPING EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS | | |
| | .1 Knowledge of voyage data recorders (VDR) and bridge navigational watchkeeping alarm systems (BNWAS) | 6 | 6 |
| **1.6** | **MAINTAIN SAFE NAVIGATION THROUGH THE USE OF INFORMATION FROM NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS TO ASSIST COMMAND DECISION MAKING** | | |
| | *See IMO model courses 1.08, 1.22, 1.27, 1.34 and STCW reg. I/12* | | 60 |
| **1.7** | **MAINTAIN SAFE NAVIGATION THROUGH THE USE OF ECDIS AND ASSOCIATED NAVIGATION SYSTEMS TO ASSIST COMMAND DECISION MAKING** | | |
| | *See IMO model courses 1.27 in association with 1.08 and 1.22* | | 40 |
| **1.8** | **FORECAST WEATHER AND OCEANOGRAPHIC CONDITIONS** | | |
| 1.8.1 | SYNOPTIC CHARTS AND WEATHER FORECASTING | | |
| | .1 Synoptic and prognostic charts and forecasts from any source | 6 | |
| | .2 Range of information available through fax transmission, internet and email | 3 | |
| | .3 Weather forecasting | 15 | 24 |
| 1.8.2 | CHARACTERISTICS OF VARIOUS WEATHER SYSTEMS | | |
| | .1 Tropical revolving storms (TRS) | 8 | |
| | .2 Main types of floating ice, their origins and movements | 2 | |
| | .3 Guiding principles relating to the safety of navigation in the vicinity of ice | 2 | |
| | .4 Conditions leading to ice accretion on ship's superstructures, dangers and remedies available | 2 | 14 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.8.3 | OCEAN CURRENT SYSTEMS | | |
| | .1 Surface water circulation of the ocean and principal adjoining seas | 3 | |
| | .2 Principle of voyage planning with respect to weather conditions and wave height | 2 | |
| | .3 Formation of sea waves and swell waves | 2 | 7 |
| 1.8.4 | CALCULATION OF TIDAL CONDITIONS | | |
| | .1 Ability to calculate tidal conditions | 6 | 6 |
| 1.8.5 | APPROPRIATE NAUTICAL PUBLICATIONS ON TIDES AND CURRENTS | | |
| | .1 Nautical publications on tides and currents and information which can be obtained via internet and email | 3 | 3 |
| **1.9** | **RESPOND TO NAVIGATIONAL EMERGENCIES** | | |
| 1.9.1 | PRECAUTIONS WHEN BEACHING A SHIP | | |
| | .1 Precautions when beaching a ship | 2 | 2 |
| 1.9.2 | ACTION TO BE TAKEN IF GROUNDING IS IMMINENT AND AFTER GROUNDING | | |
| | .1 Action to be taken if grounding is imminent and after grounding | 2 | 2 |
| 1.9.3 | REFLOATING A GROUNDED SHIP WITH AND WITHOUT ASSISTANCE | | |
| | .1 Refloating a grounded ship with and without assistance | 1 | 1 |
| 1.9.4 | ACTION TO BE TAKEN IF COLLISION IS IMMINENT AND FOLLOWING A COLLISION OR IMPAIRMENT OF THE WATERTIGHT INTEGRITY OF THE HULL BY ANY CAUSE | | |
| | .1 Action to be taken if collision is imminent and following a collision or impairment of the watertight integrity of the hull by any cause | 2 | 2 |
| 1.9.5 | ASSESSMENT OF DAMAGE CONTROL | | |
| | .1 Assessment of damage control | 1 | 1 |
| 1.9.6 | EMERGENCY STEERING | | |
| | .1 Emergency steering | 1 | 1 |
| 1.9.7 | EMERGENCY TOWING ARRANGEMENTS AND TOWING PROCEDURES | | |
| | .1 Emergency towing arrangements and towing procedure | 2 | 2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | | | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1.10** | **MANOEUVRE AND HANDLE A SHIP IN ALL CONDITIONS** | | | |
| | (Also refer to IMO model course 1.22, Ship simulator and bridge teamwork and STCW reg. I/12) | | | |
| 1.10.1 | MANOEUVRING AND HANDLING A SHIP IN ALL CONDITIONS | | | |
| | .1 | Approaching pilot stations and embarking or disembarking pilots, with due regard to weather, tide, head reach and stopping distances | 4 | |
| | .2 | Handling ship in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters, having regard to the effects of current, wind and restricted water on helm response | 10 | |
| | .3 | Application of constant rate of turn techniques | 3 | |
| | .4 | Manoeuvring in shallow water including the reduction in under-keel clearance caused by squat, rolling and pitching | 2 | |
| | .5 | Interaction between passing ships and between own ship and nearby banks (canal effect) | 2 | |
| | .6 | Berthing and unberthing under various conditions of wind, tide and current with and without tugs | 20 | |
| | .7 | Ship and tug interaction | 3 | |
| | .8 | Use of propulsion and manoeuvring systems including different types of rudder | 4 | |
| | .9 | Types of anchor; choice of anchorage; anchoring with one or two anchors in limited anchorages and factors involved in determining the length of anchor cable to be used | 6 | |
| | .10 | Procedures for anchoring in deep water and in shallow water | 1 | |
| | .11 | Dragging anchor; clearing fouled anchors | 1 | |
| | .12 | Dry-docking, both with and without damage | 4 | |
| | .13 | Management and handling ships in heavy weather including assisting a ship or aircraft in distress; towing operations; means of keeping an unmanageable ship out of a sea trough, lessening lee drift and use of oil | 6 | |
| | .14 | Precautions in manoeuvring to launch rescue boats and survival craft in bad weather | 2 | |
| | .15 | Methods of taking on board survivors from rescue boats and survival craft | 1 | |
| | .16 | Ability to determine the manoeuvring and propulsion characteristics of common types of ships, with special reference to stopping distances and turning circles at various draughts and speeds | 3 | |
| | .17 | Importance of navigating at reduced speed to avoid damage caused due to own ship's bow and stern waves | 1 | |
| | .18 | Practical measures to be taken when navigating in or near ice or in conditions of ice accumulation on board | 4 | |
| | .19 | Use of, and manoeuvring in and near traffic separation schemes and in vessel traffic service (VTS) areas | 4 | 81 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|
| **1.11 GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF REMOTE CONTROLS OF PROPULSION PLANT AND ENGINEERING SYSTEMS AND SERVICES** | | |
| 1.11.1 OPERATING PRINCIPLES OF MARINE POWER PLANTS | 25 | 25 |
| 1.11.2 SHIPS' AUXILIARY MACHINERY | 25 | 25 |
| 1.11.3 GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF MARINE ENGINEERING SYSTEMS | | |
| .1 Marine engineering terms and fuel consumption | 4 | |
| .2 Arrangements necessary for appropriate and effective engineering watches to be maintained for the purpose of safety under normal circumstances and UMS operations | 2 | |
| .3 Arrangements necessary to ensure a safe engineering watch is maintained when carrying dangerous cargo | 2 | 8 |
| **Total for Function 1: Navigation at the Management Level** | | **451 hours** |

Teaching staff and Administrations should note that the hours for lectures and exercises are suggestions only as regards sequence and length of time allocated to each objective. These factors may be adapted by lecturers to suit individual groups of trainees depending on their experience, ability, equipment and staff available for teaching.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part C1: Detailed Teaching Syllabus

## ■ Introduction

The detailed teaching syllabus is presented as a series of learning objectives. The objective, therefore, describes what the trainee must do to demonstrate that the specified knowledge or skill has been transferred.

Thus each training outcome is supported by a number of related performance elements in which the trainee is required to be proficient. The teaching syllabus shows the *Required performance* expected of the trainee in the tables that follow.

In order to assist the instructor, references are shown to indicate IMO references and publications, textbooks and teaching aids that instructors may wish to use in preparing and presenting their lessons.

The material listed in the course framework has been used to structure the detailed teaching syllabus; in particular,

- Teaching aids (indicated by A)
- IMO references (indicated by R)
- Textbooks (indicated by T) and
- Bibliography (indicated by B)

will provide valuable information to instructors.

## ■ Explanation of information contained in the syllabus tables

The information on each table is systematically organized in the following way. The line at the head of the table describes the FUNCTION with which the training is concerned. A function means a group of tasks, duties and responsibilities as specified in the STCW Code. It describes related activities which make up a professional discipline or traditional departmental responsibility on board.*

In this model course there are three functions:

- Navigation at the Management Level
- Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level
- Controlling the Operation of the Ship and Care for Persons on Board at the Management Level.

The header of the first column denotes the **COMPETENCE** concerned. Each function comprises a number of competences. For example, Function 1, Navigation at the Management Level, comprises a total of eleven COMPETENCES. Each competence is uniquely and consistently numbered in this model course.

* Morrison, W.S.G. Competent crews = safer ships. Malmo, WMU Press, 1997 (ISBN 91-973372-0-X)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The first is **Plan a Voyage and Conduct Navigation**. It is numbered 1.1, that is the first competence in Function 1. The term competence should be understood as the application of knowledge, understanding, proficiency, skills, experience for an individual to perform a task, duty or responsibility on board in a safe, efficient and timely manner.

Shown next is the required TRAINING OUTCOME. The training outcomes are the areas of knowledge, understanding and proficiency in which the trainee must be able to demonstrate knowledge and understanding. Each COMPETENCE comprises a number of training outcomes. For example, the competence **Plan a Voyage and Conduct Navigation** comprises a total of seven training outcomes. The first is in VOYAGE PLANNING AND NAVIGATION FOR ALL CONDITIONS. Each training outcome is uniquely and consistently numbered in this model course. That concerned with Voyage Planning and Navigation for all Conditions is uniquely numbered 1.1.1. For clarity, training outcomes are printed in black on grey, for example TRAINING OUTCOME.

Finally, each training outcome embodies a variable number of required performances – as evidence of competence. The instruction, training and learning should lead to the trainee meeting the specified required performance. For the training outcome Voyage Planning and Navigation for all Conditions, there are two areas of performance. These are:

**1.1.1.1 Logbooks**

**1.1.1.2 Navigation Planning for all Conditions**

Following each numbered area of required performance there is a list of activities that the trainee should complete and which collectively specify the standard of competence that the trainee must meet. These are for the guidance of teachers and instructors in designing lessons, lectures, tests and exercises for use in the teaching process. For example, under the topic 1.1.1.2 Navigation Planning for all Conditions, to meet the Required performance, the trainee should be able to:

- plan navigation in restricted waters by day, using terrestrial observations…
- plan navigation in restricted waters by night…
- plan navigation in restricted visibility…

and so on.

IMO references (Rx) are listed in the column to the right hand side. Teaching aids (Ax), videos and CBTs (Vx), textbooks (Tx) and bibliography (Bx) relevant to the training outcome and required performances are placed immediately following the TRAINING OUTCOME title.

It is not intended that lessons are organized to follow the sequence of required performances listed in the Tables. The Syllabus Tables are organized to match with the competence in the STCW Code, table A-II/2. Lessons and teaching should follow college practices. It is not necessary, for example, for celestial navigation to be studied before tides. What is necessary is that all the material is covered and that teaching is effective to allow trainees to meet the standard of the required performance.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.1 | Plan a Voyage and Conduct Navigation | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrate a knowledge and understanding of:<br>1.1.1 VOYAGE PLANNING AND NAVIGATION FOR ALL CONDITIONS<br>1.1.2 ROUTEING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE GENERAL PROVISIONS ON SHIP'S ROUTEING<br>1.1.3 REPORTING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR SHIP REPORTING SYSTEMS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.1 | Plan a Voyage and Conduct Navigation | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.1.1 VOYAGE PLANNING AND NAVIGATION FOR ALL CONDITIONS<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T2, T12, T38, T39, B7, B8, B12, B26, B36, B51, B57, B58, B60, B68, B69, B70, B86, B87, B105, B108, B119, B127, B134, B136, B138, B139, B140, B141, B142, B172, B173, B177, B194, B202, B209, B212, B220, B221<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, A2, A3, A8, A10, A13, A14, A15, A16, A17, A18, A19, A20, A21, A22, A23, A24, A25, A26, A27, V20, V21, V22, V23, V34, V40, V41, V125<br>Required performance: | | |
| **1.1** | **Voyage planning for all conditions (24 hours)**<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the passage planning, position monitoring, chartwork, sailings using plane, Mercator and great circle sailing methods, tidal, meteorology and oceanography content of IMO model course 7.03 before completing these performance requirements. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*<br>– determines key parameters for the voyage to be planned and briefs officers appropriately<br>– fully appraises all information that may be relevant to the voyage, including information from:<br>– Routeing and pilot charts<br>– *Ocean Passages for the World*<br>– Sailing Directions<br>– Charts<br>– IMO Routeing Guide<br>– Lists of Lights<br>– Lists of Radio Signals<br>– Tidal and Tidal Stream Information<br>– Load line, insurance and charter party parameters<br>– Port Information<br>– Notices to Mariners<br>– Navigation Warnings<br>– Meteorological information<br>– Vessel condition, draught, trim and handling characteristics<br>– plans voyages from berth to berth using appropriate strategies and contingency plans in order to deal with various factors, such as:<br>– encountering restricted visibility<br>– expected meteorological conditions<br>– navigational hazards and no go areas<br>– making landfall<br>– accuracy of position fixing required in critical areas<br>– encountering or navigating in ice | R1, R3, R32, R33, R34, R48, R49 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.1 | Plan a Voyage and Conduct Navigation | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – areas of restricted/confined/pilotage waters<br>– traffic separation schemes en route<br>– expected traffic density<br>– operational requirements in terms of passage time and fuel consumption<br>– areas of extensive tidal effects<br>– ensuring adequate fuel, water and provisions<br>– ensuring the safety of the personnel, property and the environment<br>– ship reporting requirements in vessel traffic service (VTS) and other reporting areas<br>– vessel condition, draught, trim and handling characteristics<br>– ensures that charts, course cards and other voyage planning documentation, i.e. navigation notebooks etc. accurately detail the plan and are prepared in accordance with industry practice including ECDIS where appropriate<br>– ensures that positions, distances and ETAs or average speed required calculations completed using mercator sailing, great circle sailing, composite great circle sailing and limited latitude sailing are accurate<br>– ensures that there is adequate fuel, water and provisions on board for the voyage<br>– ensures that all watchkeeping officers are fully briefed and familiar with the voyage plan<br>– ensures that watchkeeping officers understand the circumstances in which they may deviate from the initial plan and the requirement to update the plan where this occurs | |
| **1.2** | **Navigation and monitoring of the voyage (12 hours)**<br>– plans and establishes parameters and guidance to watchkeeping officers to ensure that the navigation and monitoring of the voyage is appropriate for the area being navigated, with particular regard to navigation in areas of:<br>– restricted waters<br>– meteorological conditions<br>– ice<br>– restricted visibility<br>– traffic separation schemes<br>– vessel traffic service (VTS) areas<br>– areas of extensive tidal effects<br>– ensures that the vessel's position is monitored using two or more independent position determination systems appropriate to the area<br>– ensures that the vessel's position is determined at appropriate intervals and monitored continuously<br>– ensures that the execution of the voyage plan is monitored and that any required alterations are appraised, evaluated and approved where these are outside the authority of the watchkeeping officer | |
| **1.3** | **Logbooks and voyage records (2 hours)**<br>– ensures that proper log and voyage records are maintained in accordance with maritime shipping acts and other laws and regulations | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.1 | Plan a Voyage and Conduct Navigation | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.1.2 ROUTEING IN ACCORDANCE WITH GENERAL PROVISIONS ON SHIP'S ROUTEING<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T2, T3, B8, B57, B68, B177<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, A3, A11, A12, A13, A23, A24, V1<br>Required performance:<br>**2.1 Routeing (12 hours)**<br>– selects ocean and coastal routes that appropriately consider:<br>– mandatory or recommended requirements including the IMO Routeing Guide<br>– distance<br>– average passage speed and fuel consumption<br>– availability of position monitoring<br>– safety of life, property and the environment<br>– selects appropriate routes using:<br>– weather routeing information received from shore-based providers<br>– weather routeing techniques using synoptic and prognosis information observed and received from ashore | | R2, R3, R48, R49, R50 |
| 1.1.3 REPORTING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR SHIP REPORTING SYSTEMS AND WITH VTS PROCEDURES<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T2<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, A3, A25, V27<br>Required performance:<br>**3.1 Ship reporting systems (1 hour)**<br>– explains the general principles for various ship reporting systems<br>– explains the general principles for reporting as per VTS procedures<br>– determines the reporting requirements for particular reporting and VTS systems<br>– explains the use of AIS within reporting systems<br>– makes reports in accordance with published procedures and criteria | | R1<br>R2 reg. V/8-1<br>R3, R14 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.2 | Determine Position and the Accuracy of Resultant Position Fix by any Means | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOME:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>1.2.1 POSITION DETERMINATION IN ALL CONDITIONS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.2 | Determine Position and the Accuracy of Resultant Position Fix by any Means | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.2.1 POSITION DETERMINATION IN ALL CONDITIONS<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T1, T2, T6, T7, T29, T38, T39, B7, B8, B12, B26, B27, B42, B50, B51, B57, B58, B119, B139, B140, B141, B150, B151, B172, B173, B195, B202<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, A2, A4, A5, A6, A7, A8, A9, A10, A16, A17, A18, A26, A28, A30, A32, A33, A34, A35, A36, A37, A38, A39, A40, V26, V40, V41, V42, V139, V150, V151<br>Required performance: | | |
| **1.1** | **Celestial navigation (10 hours)**<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the celestial techniques covered in IMO model course 7.03 before completing these performance requirements. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*<br>– determines parameters for position monitoring on ocean passages using celestial observations of the sun and stars uses appropriate techniques, frequency and is completed accurately<br>– verifies that celestial techniques are correctly applied by watchkeeping officers<br>– provides guidance and support to cadets and watchkeeping officers in the correct application of celestial techniques<br>– assesses the accuracy of position monitoring using celestial techniques | R1 |
| **1.2** | **Terrestrial observations, including the ability to use appropriate charts, notices to mariners and other publications to assess the accuracy of the resulting fix (16 hours)**<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the terrestrial position determination techniques covered in IMO model course 7.03 before completing these performance requirements. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*<br>– selects and applies the most appropriate techniques for position monitoring using terrestrial observations in any area being navigated<br>– verifies that the position is determined at appropriate frequencies and monitored continuously using terrestrial observations and techniques where these are possible<br>– provides guidance and support to cadets and watchkeeping officers in the correct application of terrestrial position fixing techniques<br>– assesses the accuracy of position monitoring using terrestrial techniques, particularly considering:<br>  – the limitations and errors of the technique used<br>  – information from charts, notices to mariners and other publications<br>– ensures charts and publications are up to date | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.2 | Determine Position and the Accuracy of Resultant Position Fix by any Means | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **1.3** | **Modern electronic navigational aids with specific knowledge of their operating principles, limitations, sources of error, detection of misrepresentation of information and methods of correction to obtain accurate position fixing (20 hours)**<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the principles, operation, limitations and errors of the electronic navigation aids covered in IMO model course 7.03 before completing these performance requirements. These aids include Loran C, eLoran, GNSS including GPS and augmented satellite systems, Echo Sounders and Speed Measurement systems. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*<br>– ensures that the most appropriate electronic systems and electronic navigation aids are used for position monitoring in any area given the information the system may provide and the limitations, errors and accuracy of the available system<br>– verifies that each electronic navigation aid used is set up and operated effectively<br>– provides guidance and support to cadets and watchkeeping officers in the correct set-up and use of electronic navigation aids<br>– assesses the accuracy of position monitoring using electronic navigation aids<br>– ensures that the vessel position is determined at appropriate frequencies and monitored continuously using the most appropriate electronic navigation aids available and this is cross checked with terrestrial or celestial observations where these are possible | R1, R5, R36, R44, R45, |
| **1.4** | **Integrated Navigation system (INS) and Integrated Bridge system (IBS)**<br>– briefly describe that Integrated Navigation system (INS) ‘supports safety of navigation by evaluating inputs from several independent and different sensors, combining them to provide information giving timely warnings of potential dangers and degradation of integrity of this information’<br>– evaluate the three categories of INS as defined by IMO, namely:<br>– INS(A), which as a minimum provides the information of position, speed, heading and time, each clearly marked with an indication of integrity<br>– INS(B), which automatically, continually and graphically indicates the ship’s position, speed and heading and, where available, depth in relation to the planned route as well as to known and detected hazards<br>– INS(C), which provides means to automatically control heading, track or speed and monitor the performance and status of these controls<br>– states that Integrity monitoring is an intrinsic function of the INS and that in the INS the integrity of information is verified by comparison of the data derived from two or more sources if available<br>– states that in Integrity monitoring by the INS, the integrity is verified before essential information is displayed or used and information with doubtful integrity should be clearly marked by the INS and not used for automatic control systems | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.2 | Determine Position and the Accuracy of Resultant Position Fix by any Means | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that the Integrated Bridge systems (IBS) is 'a combination of systems which are interconnected in order to allow centralized access to sensor information or command/control workstations, with the aim of increasing safe and efficient ship's management by suitably qualified personnel'<br>– states that IBS recommendation apply to a system performing two or more operations, namely: passage execution; communication; machinery control; loading, discharging and cargo control; and safety and security<br>– describes the limitations of the systems | |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.3 | Determine and Allow for Compass Errors | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>1.3.1 PRINCIPLES OF THE MAGNETIC COMPASS AND THEIR CORRECTION<br>1.3.2 PRINCIPLES AND ERRORS OF GYROCOMPASSES<br>1.3.3 SYSTEMS UNDER THE CONTROL OF THE MASTER GYRO AND THE OPERATION AND CARE OF THE MAIN TYPES OF GYROCOMPASS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.3 | Determine and Allow for Compass Errors | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.3.1 PRINCIPLES OF THE MAGNETIC COMPASS AND THEIR CORRECTION<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T16, T22<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, A27, A29, A30<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the principles of magnetism and the magnetic compass covered in IMO model course 7.03 before completing these performance requirements. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content* | | |
| **1.1** | **Parts of the magnetic compass and their function (3 hours)** | R2, ch. V reg. 19, R6, R39 |
| | – explains the requirements of SOLAS chapter V, regulation 19, in regard to the requirements for the carriage of magnetic compasses<br>– explains that ships must also be fitted with a pelorus, or other means, to take bearings over an arc of 360° of the horizon and a means for correcting heading and bearings to true at all times<br>– describes the parts of the magnetic compass and explains their function<br>– briefly explains the operating principle of Transmitting Magnetic Compass (TMC)<br>– outlines the performance standards for magnetic compasses | |
| **1.2** | **Errors of the magnetic compass and their correction (27 hours)** | R2, ch. V reg. 19, R6, R39 |
| | – explains the importance of keeping a record of observed deviations<br>– determines deviations and prepares a table or graph of deviations<br>– defines the approximate coefficients A, B, C, D and E<br>– states the equation for the deviation on a given heading in terms of the coefficients<br>– describes the conditions which give rise to each of the coefficients<br>– explains the use of the approximate coefficients A, B,C, D and E<br>– describes why coefficients A and E may exist at a badly sited compass<br>– explains the non-magnetic causes of an apparent coefficient A<br>– explains that coefficient B results partly from the ship's permanent magnetism and partly from induced magnetism<br>– explains that induced magnetism may also contribute to coefficient C in a badly sited compass<br>– describes how the deviation associated with the coefficient permanent B varies with magnetic latitude | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.3 | Determine and Allow for Compass Errors | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| – describes how the deviation associated with the coefficient induced B varies with magnetic latitude<br>– explains why the deviation due to permanent magnetism should be compensated by permanent magnets and deviation due to induced magnetism by spherical soft iron correctors, where possible<br>– describes the causes of heeling error and how it varies with heel, course and magnetic latitude<br>– describes the correction of heeling error and why the correction does not remain effective with change of magnetic latitude<br>– defines the constants lambda 1 and lambda 2<br>– defines the constant mu<br>– explains how the soft iron spheres increase the mean directive force towards magnetic north and that the value of lambda with the spheres in place is called the ship's multiplier<br>– describes the vertical force instrument and its use in correcting heeling error<br>– describes methods of obtaining a table of deviations<br>– analyses a table of deviations to obtain approximate coefficients<br>– states that anything which could affect the deviation of the compass should be stowed in its seagoing position before correcting it<br>– explains the adjustment of the compass by the analysis and/or tentative methods and obtains a table of residual deviations<br>*(Administrations shall determine whether trainees should be capable of adjusting the compass themselves or whether they require only the competence to supervise the adjustment of the compass by a licensed compass adjuster)*<br>– states the order in which corrections should be made and explains why they are made in that order<br>– describes how heeling error may produce an unsteady compass on certain headings after a large change of magnetic latitude and how to deal with it<br>– explains why a large coefficient B may appear after a large change of magnetic latitude and how to correct it<br>– describes how subpermanent magnetism gives rise to retentive error<br>– states that deviations may be affected by cargo of a magnetic nature, the use of electromagnets for cargo handling, or repairs involving hammering or welding of steelwork in the vicinity of the compass<br>– defines the magnetic moment of a bar magnet as the product of the pole strength and the length of the magnet<br>– states that, for a suspended magnet vibrating in a magnetic field, $T^2$ is proportional to 1/H, where T is the period of vibration and H is the field strength<br>– explains how the relative strengths of two fields may be found | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.3 | Determine and Allow for Compass Errors | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.3.2 PRINCIPLES AND ERRORS OF GYROCOMPASSES<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T16, T29<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, A29, A31, V43, V44, V45<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the principles of the gyrocompass covered in IMO model course 7.03 before completing these performance requirements. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content* | | |
| **2.1** | **Principles of gyrocompass (3 hours)** | R1, R7, R38, R42 |
| | – reviews the operating principles of the mechanical/ballistic gyrocompass<br>– explains the operating principle of other types of gyrocompass such as fibre optic gyrocompass and ring laser gyrocompass and their advantages over the mechanical/ballistic gyrocompass | |
| **2.2** | **Gyrocompass errors and corrections (7 hours)** | |
| | – explains why a gyrocompass that is damped in tilt will settle with its spin axis at a small angle to the meridian, except when at the equator<br>– states that the resulting error is known as latitude error or damping error and varies directly as the tangent of the latitude<br>– states that latitude error can be removed by a manual setting that mechanically moves the lubber line and the follow-up system to show the correct heading<br>– states that course and speed error is caused by the tilting of the spin axis, resulting from the ship's motion over the surface of the earth<br>– states that the rate of tilting, in minutes of arc per hour, is equal to the north-south component of the ship's velocity<br>– explains how the tilt causes precession in azimuth to the west on northerly headings and to the east on southerly headings in compasses with liquid ballistic control<br>– states that the velocity error is removed by manual settings of latitude and speed to offset the lubber line and the follow-up system in liquid-controlled compasses<br>– explains how the correction is made in compasses that employ other methods of detecting tilt<br>– states that ballistic deflection results from changes in the ship's north-south component of velocity<br>– explains the behaviour of a liquid ballast during a change of speed or an alteration of course<br>– explains that the precession resulting from ballistic deflection may be arranged to move the compass to the correct settling position, after allowance for the change in course and speed error, by choosing a suitable period for the compass<br>– explains that the pendulum of a tilt detector will be thrown out of the vertical during a change of course or speed, producing an error in its output | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.3 | Determine and Allow for Compass Errors | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that the method used in the above objective is not applicable for compasses without liquid ballistic control since course and speed error is fully corrected for all headings<br>– explains that errors are limited by damping the pendulum and limiting the applied torque for large deflections of the pendulum<br>– states that the sensitive element of a gyrocompass is made such that its moment of inertia about any axis is the same, thus preventing any tendency to turn when swinging pendulously as a result of rolling or pitching<br>– describes the effect of rolling on a liquid ballistic for various ship's headings<br>– explains why the movement of the liquid causes an error except on the cardinal headings<br>– explains how intercardinal rolling error is reduced to negligible proportions<br>– states that intercardinal rolling error does not occur in compasses having no gravitational control attachments to the gyroscope<br>– states that errors caused by acceleration of the compass during rolling and pitching can be reduced by sitting the master compass low down, near the rotational centre of the ship<br>– outlines the performance standards for gyrocompasses | |
| 1.3.3 | SYSTEMS UNDER THE CONTROL OF THE MASTER GYRO AND THE OPERATION AND CARE OF THE MAIN TYPES OF GYROCOMPASS | |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T34, T59 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, A29, A31 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **3.1** | **Systems under the control of the master gyro and the operation and care of the main types of gyrocompass in use at sea (2 hours)**<br>– defines the main systems under the control of the master gyro<br>– defines the main types of gyrocompass in use at sea<br>– refers to manufacturers' manuals to determine necessary maintenance tasks | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.4 | Coordinate Search and Rescue | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOME:** | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |
| 1.4.1 | PROCEDURES CONTAINED IN INTERNATIONAL AERONAUTICAL AND MARITIME SEARCH AND RESCUE MANUAL (IAMSAR) VOL III<br>See IMO model course 1.08, Radar navigation – management level | R24, R25, R31, R37 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>1.5.1 INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA<br>1.5.2 PRINCIPLES TO BE OBSERVED IN KEEPING A NAVIGATIONAL WATCH<br>1.5.3 BRIDGE WATCHKEEPING EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.5.1 INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T40, B17, B18, B142<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V134, V135<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea covered in IMO model course 7.03 before completing these performance requirements. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content* | | |
| **1.1** | **International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended (30 hours)**<br>– demonstrates a thorough knowledge of the content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended<br>– describes the lights, shapes and sound signals that should be shown or made by own ship in any situation<br>– demonstrates the ability to determine risk of collision and to take appropriate action when encountering all types of vessel when in sight of one another by day or night<br>– demonstrates the ability to determine the risk of collision and the proper action to take to avoid collision in restricted visibility<br>– determines a safe speed for any situation<br>– demonstrates the ability to take appropriate actions when manoeuvring in narrow channels and traffic separation schemes including encounters with other vessels<br>– demonstrates the ability to maintain situational awareness, determine risk of collision and to take appropriate action in situations of high traffic density both when vessels are in sight and when in restricted visibility<br>– demonstrates the ability to take appropriate action when another vessel is believed not to be taking the action required under the Regulations or where a collision cannot be avoided by the action of this vessel alone | R1, R8, R15, R16, R41 |
| 1.5.2 PRINCIPLES TO BE OBSERVED IN KEEPING A NAVIGATIONAL WATCH<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T12, T27, B7, B8, B12, B13, B16, B17, B18, B19, B24, B25, B26, B27, B36, B42, B50, B51, B55, B57, B62, B63, B65, B69, B70, B86, B87, B105, B108, B112, B119, B134, B136, B138, B139, B140, B141, B142, B143, B150, B151, B172, B173, B177, B195, B202, B208, B209, B212<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V21, V22, V23, V26, V27, V28, V46 | | STCW Code section A-VIII/2 part 3-1, R32, R33, R34 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

Required performance:

*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the Principles of Keeping a Safe Navigational Watch from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*

**2.1 Thorough knowledge of the content, application and intent of the principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch (12 hours)**

- determines appropriate watchkeeping arrangements that are adequate for maintaining safe watchkeeping, taking into account the prevailing circumstances and conditions
- determines the appropriate composition of the watch for differing situations
- determines and posts watch schedules that ensure that rest periods are observed and that watchkeepers are fit for duty for operational conditions
- ensures that the responsibilities and expected actions of the Master when in charge of the navigational watch and the officer of the watch at other times are consistent with the Principles outlined in the STCW Code and that these are clearly understood by these officers, including:
  - calling the Master
  - expectation of action until the Master formally takes control of the watch
  - physical presence on the bridge
  - maintaining an effective lookout
  - not undertaking any duties that interfere with watchkeeping
  - determining if there is risk of collision and the correct application of Colreg
  - monitoring and adjusting the vessel position in a accordance with the voyage plan
  - knowing the handling characteristics of their ship, including its stopping distances
  - using the helm, engines and sound signalling apparatus
  - familiarization and operational use of all bridge equipment, charts, and publications
  - checks and tests
  - actions expected when encountering restricted visibility or distress situations
  - actions when pilots are embarked
  - actions when there is any doubt
- prepares standing orders for watchkeeping at anchor or under way
- ensures that an appropriate lookout is maintained at all times
- states that watch schedules must be posted and accessible
- states the contents of the STCW Code, section A-VIII/2, part 4-1 Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch
- states that watch duties should be so arranged to comply with rest periods prescribed in the STCW Code, chapter VIII Standards regarding watchkeeping, section A-VIII/1 Fitness for duty



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch is the Master's representative and is primarily responsible at all times for the safe navigation of the ship and for complying with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended.
- states that officers in charge of the navigational watch under the Master's general direction are responsible for navigating the ship safely during their periods of duty, when they should be physically present on the navigating bridge or in a directly associated location such as the chartroom or bridge control room at all times
- states that the Master, chief engineer officer and officer in charge of watch duties should maintain a proper watch, making the most effective use of the resources available, such as information, installations/equipment and other personnel
- states that the lookout must be able to give full attention to the keeping of a proper lookout and that no other duties should be undertaken or assigned which could interfere with that task
- states that the duties of the lookout and helmsperson are separate and that the helmsperson should not be considered to be the lookout while steering, except in small ships where an unobstructed all-round view is provided at the steering position and there is no impairment of night vision or other impediment to the keeping of a proper lookout
- lists all factors to be considered to decide if the officer in charge of the navigational watch can be the sole lookout in daylight
- lists all relevant factors to be taken into account by the Master in determining that the composition of the navigational watch is adequate to ensure that a proper lookout can continuously be maintained, including those described in the STCW Code
- outlines all factors to be taken into account when deciding the composition of the watch on the bridge, which may include appropriately qualified ratings
- states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should:
  1. keep the watch on the bridge;
  2. in no circumstances leave the bridge until properly relieved; and
  3. continue to be responsible for the safe navigation of the ship, despite the presence of the Master on the bridge, until informed specifically that the Master has assumed that responsibility and this is mutually understood
- states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should not be assigned or undertake any duties which will interfere with the safe navigation of the ship
- states that in cases of need, the officer in charge of the navigational watch should not hesitate to use the helm, engines and sound signalling apparatus. However, timely notice of intended variations of engine speed should be given where possible or effective use should be made of UMS engine controls provided on the bridge in accordance with the applicable procedures
- states that the officers of the navigational watch should know the handling characteristics of their ship, including its stopping distances, and should appreciate that other ships may have different handling characteristics
- states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should make sure that a proper lookout is maintained at all times



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that in a ship with a separate chartroom, the officer in charge of the navigational watch may visit the chartroom, when essential, for a short period for the necessary performance of navigational duties, but should first ensure that it is safe to do so and that proper lookout is maintained
- lists all the checks that should be carried out during the navigational watch by the officer in charge of the navigational watch
- states that the officers of the navigational watch should be thoroughly familiar with the use of all electronic navigational aids carried, including their capabilities and limitations, and should use each of these aids when appropriate and should bear in mind that the echo-sounder is a valuable navigational aid
- states that whenever restricted visibility is encountered or expected, the officer in charge of the navigational watch should use the radar, and at all times in congested waters, having due regard to its limitations
- lists all the circumstances when the officer in charge of the navigational watch should notify the Master immediately, which are:
  1. if restricted visibility is encountered or expected;
  2. if the traffic conditions or the movements of other ships are causing concern;
  3. if difficulty is experienced in maintaining course;
  4. on failure to sight land, or a navigation mark or to obtain soundings by the expected time;
  5. if, unexpectedly, land or a navigation mark is sighted or a change in soundings occurs;
  6. on breakdown of the engines, propulsion machinery remote control, steering gear or any essential navigational equipment, alarm or indicator;
  7. if the radio equipment malfunctions;
  8. in heavy weather, if in any doubt about the possibility of weather damage;
  9. if the ship meets any hazard to navigation, such as ice or a derelict; and
  10. in any other emergency or if in any doubt
- states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should not hesitate to take immediate action for the safety of the ship, where circumstances so require, despite notifying the Master immediately in the circumstances considered important for his presence on the bridge
- states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should give watchkeeping personnel all appropriate instructions and information which will ensure the keeping of a safe watch, including a proper lookout
- states that in clear weather the officer in charge of the navigational watch should take frequent and accurate compass bearings of approaching ships as a means of early detection of risk of collision and should bear in mind that such risk may sometimes exist even when an appreciable bearing change is evident, particularly when approaching a very large ship or a tow or when approaching a ship at close range
- states that the officer in charge of the navigational watch should also take early and positive action in compliance with the applicable International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended and subsequently check that such action is having the desired effect



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that when restricted visibility is encountered or expected, the first responsibility of the officer in charge of the navigational watch is to comply with the relevant rules of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended with particular regard to the sounding of fog signals, proceeding at a safe speed and having the engines ready for immediate manoeuvre
- states that in addition to the above, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall:
  1. inform the Master;
  2. post a proper lookout;
  3. exhibit navigation lights; and
  4. operate and use the radar
- states that when arranging lookout duty, in hours of darkness, the Master and the officer in charge of the navigational watch should have due regard to the bridge equipment and navigational aids available for use, their limitations, procedures and safeguards implemented
- states that in coastal and congested waters the largest scale chart on board, suitable for the area and corrected with the latest available information, should be used
- states that fixes in coastal and congested waters should be taken at frequent intervals, and should be carried out by more than one method whenever circumstances allow
- states that when using ECDIS, in coastal and congested waters, appropriate scale of electronic navigational charts should be used and the ship's position should be checked by an independent means of position fixing at appropriate intervals
- states that in coastal and congested waters the officer in charge of the navigational watch should positively identify all relevant navigation marks
- states that when navigating with pilot on board, despite the duties and obligations of pilots, their presence on board does not relieve the Master or the officer in charge of the navigational watch from their duties and obligations for the safety of the ship
- states that when navigating with pilot on board, the Master and the pilot should exchange information regarding navigation procedures, local conditions and the ship's characteristics
- states that when navigating with pilot on board, the Master and/or the officer in charge of the navigational watch should cooperate closely with the pilot and maintain an accurate check on the ship's position and movement
- states that when navigating with pilot on board, if in any doubt as to the pilot's actions or intentions, the officer in charge of the navigational watch should seek clarification from the pilot and, if doubt still exists, should notify the Master immediately and take whatever action is necessary before the Master arrives



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

1.5.3 BRIDGE WATCHKEEPING EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

**3.1 Knowledge of voyage data recorders (VDR) and bridge navigational watchkeeping alarm systems (BNWAS) (6 hours)**

**Voyage data recorder (VDR) and simplified voyage data recorder (S-VDR)**

- explains that voyage data recorder (VDR) and simplified voyage data recorder (S-VDR) means a complete system, including any items required to interface with the sources of input data, for processing and encoding the data, the final recording medium in its capsule, the power supply and dedicated reserve power source
- explains that the purpose of a voyage data recorder (VDR) and simplified voyage data recorder (S-VDR) is to maintain a store, in a secure and retrievable form, of information concerning the position, movement, physical status, command and control of a vessel over the period leading up to and following an incident having an impact thereon
- explains that the information contained in a VDR and S-VDR is made available to both the Administration and the shipowner and this information is for use during any subsequent investigation to identify the cause(s) of the incident
- describes the operation of a VDR and S-VDR, that is it:
  - continuously maintains sequential records of preselected data items relating to the status and output of the ship's equipment, and command and control of the ship
  - permits subsequent analysis of factors surrounding an incident, the method of recording ensures that the various data items are co-related in date and time during playback on suitable equipment. The final recording medium is installed in a protective capsule and in case of S-VDR of either a fixed or float-free type that meets all of the following requirements:
    - is capable of being accessed following an incident but secure against tampering;
    - for VDR – it maximizes the probability of survival and recovery of the final recorded data after any incident;
    - for S-VDR – it maintains the recorded data for a period of at least two years following termination of recording;
    - is of a highly visible colour and marked with retro-reflective materials; and
    - is fitted with an appropriate device to aid location
- explains the requirements set out in MSC resolution A.861(20) on the fixed type protective capsule for S-VDR
- explains that the equipment is so designed that, as far as is practical, it is not possible to tamper with the selection of data being input to the equipment, the data itself nor that which has already been recorded, and any attempt to interfere with the integrity of the data or the recording is recorded
- explains that the recording method is such that each item of the recorded data is checked for integrity and an alarm is given if a non-correctable error is detected
- describes the continuity of operation of VDR and S-VDR



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- lists and states the data items recorded in the VDR and S-VDR, which are:
  - date and time
  - ship's position
  - ship's speed
  - bridge audio
  - communications audio
  - radar data, post-display selection (or, for S-VDR only, AIS data if radar data is not available) in addition to the above data sets, a VDR should also record:
    - depth under the keel
    - status of all mandatory bridge alarms
    - rudder order and rudder position
    - engine orders and engine response (rev/min or pitch), including any transverse-thrusters
    - status of hull openings
    - status of watertight doors and fire doors
    - wind speed and direction
- explains the data output interface of VDR and S-VDR, that they provide an interface for downloading the stored data and playback the information to an external computer. This interface is compatible with an internationally recognized format, such as Ethernet, USB, FireWire, or equivalent
- describes the software for data downloading and playback
- states that the shipowner, in all circumstances and at all times, owns the VDR and its information
- explains that in the event of an accident the owner of the ship makes all decoding instructions available as necessary to recover the recorded information and maintains the same
- explains the recovery and relevant information of VDR and S-VDR
- explains the custody, read-out and access to the VDR and S-VDR information
- describes the limitations of the receivers

**Bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS)**

- explains that the carriage requirement of bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS) is set out by SOLAS, chapter V/19 and the requirements will be mandatory for new ships and phased in for existing ships
- states when BNWAS must be fitted to existing ships
- explains that the purpose of BNWAS is to monitor bridge activity and detect operator disability, which could lead to marine accidents
- explains that this purpose is achieved by a series of indications and alarms to alert first the OOW and, if he/she is not responding, then to alert the Master or another qualified OOW
- explains that the system monitors the awareness of the officer-on-watch (OOW) and automatically alerts the Master or other qualified OOW if for any reason the OOW becomes incapable of performing watch duties
- explains that additionally, the BNWAS may provide the OOW with a means of calling for immediate assistance if required



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.5 | Establish Watchkeeping Arrangements and Procedures | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that the BNWAS should be operational whenever the ship's heading or track control system is engaged, unless inhibited by the Master
- explains that the system has the following operational modes: Automatic, Manual On and Manual Off
- lists and explains the operational sequence of indications and alarms:
  - once operational, the alarm system remains dormant for a period of between 3 and 12 min (Td – selected dormant period)
  - at the end of this dormant period, the alarm system initiates a visual indication on the bridge
  - if not reset, the BNWAS additionally sounds a first stage audible alarm on the bridge 15 sec after the visual indication is initiated
  - if not reset, the BNWAS additionally sounds a second stage remote audible alarm in the back-up officer's and /or Master's location 15 sec after the first stage audible alarm is initiated
  - if not reset, the BNWAS additionally sounds a third stage remote alarm at locations of further crew members capable of taking corrective actions 90 seconds after the second stage remote audible alarm is initiated
  - in vessels other than passenger vessels, the second or third stage remote audible alarms may sound in all the above locations at the same time. If the second stage audible alarm is sounded in this way, the third stage alarm may be omitted
- states that in larger vessels, the delay between the second stage and third stage may be set to a longer value on installation, up to a maximum of 3 min, to allow sufficient time for back-up officer and /or Master to reach the bridge
- lists and explains the resetting function of the BNWAS, which are as follows:
  - it is not possible to initiate the reset or cancel any audible alarm from any device, equipment or system not physically located in areas of the bridge providing proper lookout
  - the reset function does, by a single operator action, cancel the visual indication and all audible alarms and initiate a further dormant period. If the reset function is activated before the end of the dormant period, the period is re-initiated to run for its full duration from the time of reset
  - to initiate the reset function, an input representing a single operator action by the OOW is required. This input may be generated by reset devices forming an integral part of the BNWAS or by external inputs from other equipment capable of registering physical activity and mental alertness of the OOW
  - a continuous activation of any reset device does not prolong the dormant period or cause a suppression of the sequence of indications and alarms
- explains that the emergency call facility may be provided on the bridge to immediately activate the second, and subsequently third stage, remote audible alarms by means of an "Emergency Call" push button or similar
- explains that the means of selecting the operational mode and the duration of the dormant period (Td) is security protected so that access to these controls should be restricted to the master only
- describes the limitation of the system



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.6 | Maintain Safe Navigation through the Use of Information from Navigation Equipment and Systems to Assist Command Decision Making | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>1.6.1 SYSTEM ERRORS AND OPERATIONAL ASPECTS OF MODERN NAVIGATION SYSTEMS INCLUDING RADAR AND ARPA<br>1.6.2 BLIND PILOTAGE TECHNIQUES<br>1.6.3 EVALUATION OF NAVIGATIONAL INFORMATION TO AID IN COMMAND DECISIONS FOR AVOIDING COLLISION AND SAFE NAVIGATION OF THE SHIP<br>1.6.4 INTERRELATIONSHIP AND OPTIMUM USE OF ALL NAVIGATIONAL DATA<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of modern navigation systems, navigation techniques, collision avoidance and bridge resource management from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*<br>See IMO model courses 1.08 Radar navigation – management level, 1.22 Ship simulator and bridge teamwork and 1.27 Operational use of electronic chart display and information systems (ECDIS) and 1.34 AIS Operator course | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.7 | Maintain Safe Navigation through the Use of ECDIS and Associated Navigation Systems to Assist Command Decision Making | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:** | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |
| Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of: | | |
| 1.7.1 COMMAND DECISION MAKING USING THE INFORMATION PROVIDED BY ECDIS AND ASSOCIATED NAVIGATION SYSTEMS (40 hours) | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| *Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and operational use of ECDIS from IMO model course 1.27. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of operational level content before undertaking this management level content* | | |
| See IMO model courses 1.27, Operational use of electronic chart display and information systems (ECDIS), 1.34, AIS Operator course and STCW reg. I/12 from the perspective of command decision making, 1.08 Radar navigation – management level and 1.22, Ship simulator and bridge teamwork | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.8 | Forecast Weather and Oceanographic Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>1.8.1 SYNOPTIC CHARTS AND WEATHER FORECASTING<br>1.8.2 CHARACTERISTICS OF VARIOUS WEATHER SYSTEMS<br>1.8.3 OCEAN CURRENT SYSTEMS<br>1.8.4 CALCULATION OF TIDAL CONDITIONS<br>1.8.5 APPROPRIATE NAUTICAL PUBLICATIONS ON TIDES AND CURRENTS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.8 | Forecast Weather and Oceanographic Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.8.1 | SYNOPTIC CHARTS AND WEATHER FORECASTING | STCW Code section A-VIII/2 |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T23, T24, B28, B41, B63, B138, B223, B224 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V36, V37, V38, V39, V114 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| *Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the Meteorology content from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content* | | |
| **1.1** | **Synoptic and prognostic charts and forecasts from any source (6 hours)** | R1 |
| | – interprets the isobaric patterns of a synoptic weather chart with interpolation and extrapolation as necessary | |
| | – determines the geostrophic and approximate surface wind speeds from the chart by use of the geostrophic wind scale | |
| | – determines the weather associated with specific places within the plots | |
| | – determines the likely movement of pressure systems, | |
| | – evaluates the use of prognostic charts | |
| | – evaluates the information given in shipping forecasts | |
| | – evaluates the information received from internet and email | |
| **1.2** | **Range of information available (3 hours)** | R1, R2 ch. V, R100 |
| | – lists the information available to the mariner in fax transmissions | |
| | – discusses the source of information relating to radio stations, and their transmissions | |
| | – evaluates the information given in surface synoptic and prognostic fax charts | |
| | – interprets the information given in wave charts | |
| | – evaluates the information given in ice charts | |
| | – evaluates the use of 500 hPa charts in forecasting the progress of depressions | |
| | – evaluates the value of personal observations of weather signs, in evaluating weather trends | |
| | – lists the information available to the mariner via internet and email | |
| | – evaluates the information received from internet and email | |
| **1.3** | **Weather Forecasting (15 hours)** | R1, R2 ch. V, R100 |
| | – forecasts anticipated local weather from synopsis and prognosis information received, the movement of meteorological systems, knowledge of local influences, observation of local conditions and movement of own ship | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.8 | Forecast Weather and Oceanographic Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.8.2 CHARACTERISTICS OF VARIOUS WEATHER SYSTEMS<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T23, T24, B28, B41, B63, B138, B223, B224<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V36, V37, V38, V39<br>Required performance:<br>**2.1 Tropical revolving storms (TRS) (8 hours)**<br>– states the definitions adopted by the WMO with respect to tropical storms<br>– states local nomenclature of TRS<br>– states regions and seasons of greatest frequency of TRS<br>– states the conditions associated with the formation of tropical revolving storms<br>– states the factors that affect the future movement of a TRS<br>– describes with the aid of diagrams typical and possible tracks of TRS<br>– explains the factors associated with the decay of TRS<br>– draws a plan of a TRS showing isobars, wind circulation, path, track, vortex or eye, trough line, dangerous semicircle, dangerous quadrant and navigable semicircle (for north and south hemispheres)<br>– explains the reasons for the naming of the dangerous semicircle<br>– draws a cross-section through a TRS showing areas of cloud and precipitation<br>– describes the characteristics of a TRS, i.e. size, wind, pressure, eye, cloud and precipitation sequence<br>– describes the signs which give warning of the approach for the TRS<br>– explains the methods of determining the approximate bearing of an approaching TRS<br>– explains the method of determining in which sector of a TRS the ship is situated<br>– states the correct avoidance procedure when in the vicinity of a TRS<br>– given the position and direction of travel of a TRS and ship's voyage information, describes appropriate measures to avoid the danger sector of a TRS<br>– describes the messages required to be sent in accordance with the requirements of SOLAS, when a TRS is encountered, or suspected to be in the vicinity<br>– describes the message required to be sent in accordance with the requirement of SOLAS when a wind of or above storm force 10 is encountered which has not previously been reported | | R1, R2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.8 | Forecast Weather and Oceanographic Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **2.2** | **Main types of floating ice, their origins and movements (2 hours)** | R1 |
| | – explains the formation of icebergs from floating glacier tongues and from ice shelves, and the characteristics of each | |
| | – discusses the formation of sea ice | |
| | – defines ice tongue, ice shelf | |
| | – defines pack ice and fast ice | |
| | – discusses the normal seasons and probable tracks of North Atlantic bergs from origin to decay | |
| | – defines the outer limits of the area in which icebergs may be encountered in the North Atlantic | |
| | – discusses the normal and extreme limits of iceberg travel in the southern oceans during summer and winter | |
| | – explains the reasons for the decay of icebergs | |
| | – describes the areas affected by sea ice in regions frequented by shipping | |
| | – discusses the seasonal development and recession of sea ice on the coastlines of the northern oceans, and in the latitude of the normal trade routes | |
| **2.3** | **Guiding principles relating to the safety of navigation in ice (2 hours)** | R1, R2 ch. V |
| | – states the signs which may indicate the proximity of ice on clear days and nights | |
| | – defines the ranges at which observers may expect to detect ice visually in varying conditions of visibility, see T61 | |
| | – discusses the limitations of radar as a means of detecting ice | |
| | – states the precautions to be taken when navigating near ice, and when ice is suspected in the vicinity | |
| **2.4** | **Conditions leading to ice accretion on ship's superstructures, dangers and the remedies available (2 hours)** | R1 |
| | – describes the factors which may give rise to ice accretion | |
| | – describes the use of data in the Mariner's Handbook, for estimating the rate of ice accretion | |
| | – evaluates the methods of avoiding or reducing ice accretion | |
| | – explains the reports to be made under international conventions when ice is encountered | |
| | – lists the information to be given in radio messages reporting dangerous ice | |
| | – states the iceberg nomenclature in use by the International Ice Patrol | |
| | – lists the information to be given in radio messages reporting conditions leading to severe ice accretion on ship's superstructures | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.8 | Forecast Weather and Oceanographic Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

1.8.3 OCEAN CURRENT SYSTEMS

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T23, T24, T30, B28, B41, B63, B223, B224

**Teaching aids:** A1, A12, A19, V36, V37, V38, V39

Required performance:

**3.1 Surface water circulation of the ocean and principal adjoining seas (3 hours)** — R1

- defines qualitatively the effect of geostrophic force on surface currents
- discusses the generation of drift currents by prevailing winds
- discusses the generation of gradient currents from differences in water temperature and salinity
- discusses the generation of gradient currents resulting from the indirect effect of wind causing a piling up of water on windward coasts, as in the case of the Equatorial Counter Currents
- analyses the nature of currents formed by a combination of the above as experienced by western shores of large land masses
- relates the general pattern of surface water circulation to the atmospheric pressure distribution
- constructs a chart showing global surface water circulation applicable to the above
- describes the seasonal changes in the above in areas under the influence of the Asian monsoons
- identifies the principal individual currents by name
- analyses the causes of individual currents where explicitly stated in Meteorology for Mariners
- explains the classification of individual currents as warm or cold where appropriate
- describes the form in which surface current data is presented in current atlases and on routeing charts
- evaluates qualitatively the use of this data in passage planning
- explains the derivation of the current rose
- explains the derivation of the predominant current
- shows the meaning of the term constancy when applied to predominant currents
- explains the derivation of the vector mean current
- compares qualitatively the values of the information given by the current rose, the predominant current and the vector mean current as aids to passage planning

**3.2 Voyage planning principles with respect to weather conditions and wave height (2 hours)** — R1, R2

- selects and uses data from *Ocean Passages for the World*
- describes climatological routeing
- defines significant wave height
- discusses the factors affecting wave height and direction
- describes the methods employed in forecasting wave heights
- describes optimum (least time) routeing
- evaluates the forms of routeing in the above objectives



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.8 | Forecast Weather and Oceanographic Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – describes the methods of constructing a least time track<br>– appraises the relative merits of ship and shore-based routeing, and their limitations<br>– describes the construction of ships' performance curves<br>– demonstrates the use of monthly Routeing Charts<br>– explains the construction and use of a Baillie wind rose<br>– demonstrates familiarity with the forms of climatological, meteorological and current data presented in the Sailing Directions (Pilot Books) and in the Mariner's Handbook | |
| | **3.3 Formation of sea waves and swell waves (2 hours)** | R1 |
| | – selects and uses data from *Ocean Passages for the World*<br>– explains the role of wind in wave formation<br>– explains the importance of wind force in wave formation<br>– explains the importance of duration of wind causing waves<br>– explains the importance of fetch in the growth of waves<br>– uses Dorrenstein's nomogram for forecasting significant wave heights<br>– states the relationship between sea waves and swell waves<br>– explains the decay of swell waves as they travel from the area of origin | |
| | 1.8.4 CALCULATION OF TIDAL CONDITIONS<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T1, B28, B41, B63, B138, B223, B224<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V36, V37, V38, V39<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the tidal calculation content from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content* | |
| | **4.1 Ability to calculate tidal conditions (6 hours)** | R1 |
| | – explains the non-astronomical component of sea level<br>– explains other irregularities of the tide<br>– states that the predicted tide level is not an accurate value<br>– demonstrates the use of tide tables<br>– determines height and time for high and low water in secondary ports<br>– determines the predicted height of water at a given time in a tabulated port<br>– determines the predicted time for a given tide level<br>– demonstrates the use of tidal stream charts<br>– defines the zero level of the charts<br>– evaluates qualitatively the effect of high or low atmospheric pressure on tide levels | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.8 | Forecast Weather and Oceanographic Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – evaluates qualitatively the effect of persistent winds on tide levels and tidal times<br>– evaluates qualitatively the effect of abrupt changes of weather conditions on tidal levels<br>– describes seismic waves, their origin and areas of prevalence<br>– demonstrates use of computer program to obtain tidal information<br>– explains briefly the use of harmonic constant method of tidal prediction<br>– explains the reliability of tidal predictions (awareness of the factors influencing the accuracy and reliability of predictions (e.g. local weather conditions, flooding, local area knowledge, etc.) | |
| | 1.8.5 APPROPRIATE NAUTICAL PUBLICATIONS ON TIDES AND CURRENTS | |
| | **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T1, B28, B41, B63, B138, B223, B224 | |
| | **Teaching aids:** A1, A16, A17 | |
| | Required performance: | |
| | **5.1 Nautical publications and information which can be obtained via internet and email on tides and currents (3 hours)**<br>– uses tidal height calculations in passage planning, with regard to limiting draughts and times of available depth of water<br>– uses tidal stream information in passage planning, with regard to effect on course made good, and effect on speed and timing of events<br>– uses current information in passage planning, with regard to effect on course made good, and effect on speed and timing of events<br>– uses information which can be obtained via internet and email on tides and currents in passage/voyage planning | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.9 | Respond to Navigational Emergencies | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>1.9.1 PRECAUTIONS WHEN BEACHING A SHIP<br>1.9.2 ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN IF GROUNDING IS IMMINENT AND AFTER GROUNDING<br>1.9.3 REFLOATING A GROUNDED SHIP WITH AND WITHOUT ASSISTANCE<br>1.9.4 ACTIONS FOR IMMINENT COLLISION, AFTER COLLISION AND IMPAIRMENT OF THE WATERTIGHT INTEGRITY OF THE HULL BY ANY CAUSE<br>1.9.5 ASSESSMENT OF DAMAGE CONTROL<br>1.9.6 EMERGENCY STEERING<br>1.9.7 EMERGENCY TOWING ARRANGEMENTS AND TOWING PROCEDURES | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.9 | Respond to Navigational Emergencies | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.9.1 PRECAUTIONS WHEN BEACHING A SHIP<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T3, B58, B59, B62<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V24, V25, V28, V29<br>Required performance:<br>**1.1 Precautions when beaching a ship (2 hours)**<br>– describes the circumstances in which a vessel may be beached<br>– states that a gently shelving beach of mud, sand or gravel should be chosen if possible<br>– states that beaching should be at slow speed<br>– states that, when trimmed heavily by the head, beaching stern first may be advantageous<br>– compares the relative advantages of beaching broadside-on and at right-angles to the beach<br>– states that wind or tide along the shore will quickly swing the ship broadside-on to the beach<br>– describes measures which can be taken to prevent the ship driving further ashore and to assist with subsequent refloating<br>– states that ballast should be added or transferred to counteract a tendency to bump on the bottom<br>– states that all tanks and compartments should be sounded and an assessment made of damage to the ship<br>– states that soundings should be taken to establish the depth of water round the ship and the nature of the bottom | | R1 |
| 1.9.2 ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN IF GROUNDING IS IMMINENT AND AFTER GROUNDING<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T10, T3, B58, B59, B62<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V24, V25, V28, V29, V113<br>Required performance:<br>**2.1 Grounding (2 hours)**<br>– states that, on stranding, the engines should be stopped, watertight doors closed, the general alarm sounded and, if on a falling tide, the engines should be put full astern to see if the ship will immediately refloat<br>– states that the engineers should be warned to change to high-level water intakes<br>– states that a distress or urgency signal should be transmitted and survival craft prepared if necessary<br>– states that all tanks and compartments should be sounded and the ship should be inspected for damage<br>– states that any discharge or probable discharge of harmful substances should be reported to the nearest coast radio station<br>– states that soundings should be taken to establish the depth of water round the ship and the nature of the bottom | | R1, R2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.9 | Respond to Navigational Emergencies | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.9.3 REFLOATING A GROUNDED SHIP WITH AND WITHOUT ASSISTANCE | | |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T10, T3, B58, B59, B62 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V24, V25, V28, V29 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **3.1 Refloating (1 hour)** | | R1 |
| – describes measures which can be taken to prevent further damage to the ship and to assist with subsequent refloating | | |
| – explains how ballast or other weights may be moved, taken on or discharged to assist refloating | | |
| – describes the use of ground tackle for hauling off | | |
| – describes ways in which tugs may be used to assist in refloating | | |
| – describes the use of the main engine in attempting to refloat and the danger of building up silt from its use | | |
| 1.9.4 ACTION TO BE TAKEN IF COLLISION IS IMMINENT, AND FOLLOWING A COLLISION OR IMPAIRMENT OF THE WATERTIGHT INTEGRITY OF THE HULL BY ANY CAUSE | | |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T10, T3, B58, B59, B62 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V24, V25, V28, V29 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **4.1 Action to be taken if collision is imminent and following a collision or impairment of the watertight integrity of the hull by any cause (2 hours)** | | |
| – lists the duties of the Master following a collision | | R1 |
| – states that after impact the engines should be stopped, all watertight doors closed, the general alarm sounded and the crew informed of the situation | | R2 |
| – states that in calm weather the colliding ship should generally remain embedded to allow the other ship time to assess the damage or prepare to abandon ship | | |
| – states that survival craft should be made ready for abandoning ship or assisting the crew of the other ship | | |
| – states that a distress or urgency signal should be made, as appropriate | | |
| – states that requests for information may be received from coastal States | | |
| – states that, if not in danger, own ship should stand by to render assistance to the other for as long as necessary | | |
| – states that any discharge or portable discharge of harmful substances should be reported to the nearest coast radio station | | |
| – states that the owners should be informed and all details of the collision and subsequent actions entered in the logbook | | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.9 | Respond to Navigational Emergencies | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.9.5 ASSESSMENT OF DAMAGE CONTROL<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T10, T3, B58, B59, B62<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V24, V25, V28, V29<br>Required performance: | | |
| **5.1** | **Assessment of damage control (1 hour)** | R1 |
| | – states that damage to own ship should be determined | |
| | – describes measures to attempt to limit damage and salve own ship | |
| 1.9.6 EMERGENCY STEERING<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T3, T3, B58, B59, B62<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V24, V25, V28, V29<br>Required performance: | | |
| **6.1** | **Emergency steering (1 hour)** | R1 |
| | – describes typical arrangements of auxiliary steering gear | |
| | – describes how the auxiliary steering gear is brought into action | R14 |
| | – describes how to change from bridge control to local control in the steering gear compartment | |
| | – states that, when appropriate, a disabled ship should report to a coastal State that it is a potential hazard to other ships or to the environment | |
| | – lists possible course of action which may be taken by a disabled ship | |
| | – states the navigational safety message to broadcast and signals to be displayed by a disabled vessel | |
| 1.9.7 EMERGENCY TOWING ARRANGEMENTS AND TOWING PROCEDURES<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T10, T3, B58, B59, B62<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V128<br>Required performance: | | |
| **7.1** | **Emergency towing arrangements (2 hours)** | R1 |
| | – states that permission from the owners or charterers is usually required before towing, except for the purpose of saving life | |
| | – states that a coastal State may intervene when a disabled ship presents a potential risk to the environment | |
| | – states that early communication should be established between the vessels to agree on the method of connecting the tow | |
| | – states that both vessels should have everything prepared and have agreed on communication before the arrival of the towing ship | |
| | – describes how to approach a disabled vessel and pass the first connection by line-throwing apparatus or other methods | |
| | – states that the tow normally passes a messenger followed by a wire messenger to the towing vessel to haul across the towing line | |
| | – describes how to pay out the towing wire under control | |
| | – describes methods of securing the towing wire at the towing ship | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.9 | Respond to Navigational Emergencies | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| – explains why the wire is usually shackled to the anchor cable of the tow<br>– describes the preparations made by the disabled ship<br>– states that the towing wire should be protected from chafing at fairleads<br>– states that wires and cables should be inspected frequently and the nip freshened if any sign of wear or chafe is found<br>– describes how to take the weight of the tow<br>– explains how the towing speed should be decided<br>– describes how to disconnect the tow on arrival at the destination<br>– describes the emergency towing arrangements for all tankers of not less than 20,000dwt | | |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOME:**<br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br><br>1.10.1 MANOEUVRING AND HANDLING A SHIP IN ALL CONDITIONS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 1.10.1 MANOEUVRING AND HANDLING A SHIP IN ALL CONDITIONS | | |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T3, T8, T11, T18, T25, T10, B16, B24, B25, B58, B59, B60, B61, B62, B63, B99, B125, B163, B164, B165, B200, B214 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V3, V4, V5, V6, V7, V8, V9, V10, V11, V12, V13, V14, V15, V16, V17, V18, V19, V30, V31, V32, V33, V98, V140, V142, V152, V168 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| * The STCW Convention requires trainees to be able to demonstrate practical competence in performing the manoeuvres stated under this competence. This competence may be developed and demonstrated in service, in which case the practical elements of actual ship handling may not be included in the training course. The required performances indicated with an asterix are therefore applicable only where the competence is to be developed and assessed as part of a training course using simulators, manned ship models or training ships. | | |
| **1.1** | **Approaching pilot stations and embarking or disembarking pilots, with due regard to weather, tide, headreach and stopping distances (4 hours)** | R1 |
| | – explains the importance and the procedure of making a passage plan from sea to berth | R2, R20 |
| | – describes the preparations for picking up a pilot | R2 |
| | – states that a second steering-gear power unit should be in operation where possible | R1 |
| | – states that steering should be changed to manual in ample time and tested | |
| | – states that anchors should be cleared and ready for letting go | |
| | – explains how to reduce speed when approaching the pilot station, taking account of wind and tidal set | |
| | – explains why the ship's speed should be reduced to a suitable speed for the pilot boat to come alongside | |
| | – describes how to make a lee for the pilot boat | |
| | – states that extra care should be taken after dropping the pilot until clear of inward ships manoeuvring to embark pilots | |
| | – plans manoueuvres for the embarking and disembarking of pilots under varying environmental conditions | |
| | – performs manoeuvres to embark and disembark pilots in varying environmental conditions* | |
| **1.2** | **Handling ship in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters having regard to the effects of current, wind and restricted water on helm response (10 hours)** | R1 |
| | – defines shallow water as a depth of less than 2 times the ship's draught | |
| | – explains that shallow-water effects become more marked as the under-keel clearance decreases | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – lists shallow-water effects as:<br>  – increased directional stability and sluggish response to helm<br>  – the speed falls less during turns<br>  – a large increase in turning radius<br>  – a more pronounced effect from transverse propeller thrust<br>  – a possibility that transverse thrust may act opposite to that expected<br>  – the ship carries her way longer and responds slowly to changes in engine speed<br>  – the trim changes, usually by the head for a full hull form<br>  – an increase in squat<br>– defines squat as the reduction of under-keel clearance resulting from bodily sinkage and change of trim which occurs when a ship moves through the water<br>– calculates the approximate sinkage due to squat in deep water<br>– states that the squat in shallow water (ratio of water depth/draught = 2) may be double that in deep water<br>– states that squat in canals and restricted channels in proximity to other vessels may be significantly greater<br>– uses a squat estimation diagram<br>– explains the meaning of 'blockage factor' in restricted channels<br>– explains how squat and trim effects increase with blockage factor<br>– describes the reduction in keel clearance resulting from rolling and pitching and heel or list<br>– states that speed should be moderate in rivers, estuaries, etc. to reduce shallow-water effects and to provide reserve power for correcting a sheer<br>– describes how to round bends in a channel with a current in either direction, taking account of the effect of wind<br>– describes the use of an anchor to assist in rounding a bend<br>– describes how to turn short round in a narrow channel, with or without a wind<br>– describes the use of an anchor to assist turning in a channel<br>– explains the importance of navigating at reduced speed to avoid damage caused by own ship's bow wave or stern wave<br>– describes how a passing ship affects a moored ship<br>– plans manoeuvres in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters in varying environmental conditions<br>– performs manoeuvres in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters in varying environmental conditions* | |
| **1.3** | **Application of constant rate of turn techniques (3 hour)**<br>– describes the circumstances in which a constant rate turn is appropriate<br>– describes how to plan a constant rate turn<br>– describes how to judge the correct execution of a constant rate turn by visual means<br>– describes how radar can be used to assist in monitoring a constant rate turn<br>– describes how to determine the wheel over position bearing for a constant rate turn | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – describes how a constant rate turn is effective in helping a vessel maintain its planned trail<br>– plans turns using constant rate of turn techniques<br>– performs turns using constant rate of turn techniques* | |
| 1.4 | **Manoeuvring in shallow water including the reduction in under-keel clearance caused by squat, rolling and pitching (2 hours)**<br>– describes the effect of squat on under-keel clearance, trim and vessel manoeuvring characteristics<br>– describes the changes in dynamic under-keel clearance when manoeuvres are conducted in shallow water in conjunction with turning or the effects of sea and swell<br>– describes the use of the kick-ahead to control the speed and direction of the vessel<br>– explains how a ship will respond to helm before increasing speed when using a kick-ahead<br>– identifies the danger of taking a sheer in shallow water and what corrective action can be taken<br>– describes how tugs can be used to assist in maintaining slow speed control<br>– describes how anchors can be used to assist in manoeuvring a vessel in shallow water<br>– plans manoeuvres to be conducted in shallow water with and without the effects of sea and swell<br>– performs manoeuvres in shallow water* | R1 |
| 1.5 | **Interaction between passing ships and between own ship and nearby banks (canal effect) (2 hours)**<br>– explains and describes the interaction between ship and shore<br>– explains and describes the interaction between ships when meeting end-on<br>– explains and describes the interaction between ships in an overtaking situation<br>– explains the particular dangers of interaction when working close by other craft such as tugs<br>– describes the pattern of pressure changes round the hull of a moving ship<br>– explains the interaction between a ship and nearby banks (bank cushion and bank suction)<br>– describes the interaction between passing ships<br>– describes how to pass or overtake another ship safely in a narrow channel<br>– explains that shoal patches may give rise to bank cushion or suction, resulting in an unexpected sheer<br>– explains the possible effects on squat, trim and vessel manoeuvring characteristics with different blockage factors and speeds<br>– plans manoeuvres where ship to ship and ship to topography interaction are anticipated<br>– performs manoeuvres where ship to ship and ship to topography interaction are experienced* | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

**1.6 Berthing and unberthing under various conditions of wind, tide and current with and without tugs (20* hours)** — R1

- describes the effects of right- and left-handed propellers on manoeuvring
- describes the use of twin screws for manoeuvring
- explains the advantages and disadvantages of controllable-pitch propellers with regard to ship handling
- describes the use of lateral thrusters
- states that lateral thrusters cease to be effective above a certain speed, which has to be determined by trial
- describes, with reference to ship type and trim, the likely effect of wind on a ship when moving ahead or astern and when stopped
- explains how an anchor or anchors may be used to assist in manoeuvring
- describes the use of anchors for stopping in an emergency
- describes the different ways in which tugs may be made fast and used
- explains fully how to use engine, helm, tugs, anchors and mooring lines to berth and unberth under various conditions of wind and tide at:
  - river berths
  - piers
  - locks
  - enclosed docks
  - a single buoy
  - two buoys
  - multibuoy berths
  - Mediterranean moorings
- describes the mooring lines to be used, their leads and methods of securing at the berths listed above
- explains that when wind blows against a ship, a force acts almost in the opposite direction to the relative wind direction and the magnitude is proportional to the square of the relative velocity of the wind
- states that knowing the magnitude of the wind force and how it affects the ship is of great importance during berthing/unberthing
- explains that the knowledge of above mentioned magnitude, will assist the Master to:
  - decide whether the available tugs have sufficient power to hold the ship against a crosswind or to move the ship against a crosswind
  - decide whether the thrusters have the necessary power to manoeuvre the ship safely under the prevailing wind conditions
  - determine the effect of a longitudinal wind in respect of its effect on the ship's stopping distance



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that the wind force in tonnes may, with a certain approximation, be expressed by the formula:<br>$K\ (wind) = k \times A \times V^2$<br>where K = wind force in tonnes<br>k = constant depending on the ship and direction of the wind (as an average figure for k, the following constants can be used: $k = 0.52 \times 10^{-4}$ (for a beam wind) and $k = 0.39 \times 10^{-4}$ (for a longitudinal wind)<br>A = windage area in square metres<br>V = relative velocity of the wind in m/sec | |
| | – explains that normally tugs cannot hold a ship against a cross current, as the power, which is necessary for such an operation, is enormous | |
| | – explains that the force (K) required to oppose a cross current in deep waters might be determined approximately by the formula:<br>$K = k_{deep} \times L \times d \times V^2$ (where K = current force in tonnes, k = constant, 0.033 for deep water, L = vessel length in metres, d = vessel draft in metres and V = current speed in m/sec) | |
| | – explains that the force (K) required to oppose a cross current in shallow waters might be determined approximately by the formula:<br>$K = 0.033 \times f \times L \times d \times V^2$ (where K = current force in tonnes, 0.033 is the constant, f = the shallow water constant modifier derived from a graph, L = vessel length in metres, d = vessel draft in metres and V = current speed in m/sec) | |
| | – plans manoeuvres to berth and unberth in varying environmental conditions and with and without tugs | |
| | – performs manoeuvres to berth and unberth in varying environmental conditions and with and without tugs* | |
| **1.7** | **Ship and Tug interaction (3 hours)** | R1 |
| | – describes the type of tug, i.e. conventional single or twin-screw tugs fitted or not fitted with nozzles, tractor type tugs and the ASD (azimuth stern drive) tugs | |
| | – describes the main difference resulting from the location of tug's propulsion and towing point | |
| | – explains the dangers related to ship–tug interaction | |
| | – explains the dangers for relatively small tugs when compared with the size of assisted ships in relation to interaction phenomenon | |
| | – states the special attention to be paid by the Master on the condition of own vessel, i.e. ships in ballast condition or for ships having particular overhanging stern, found generally on large container vessels, the danger of interaction which is created and the danger of damages that can be caused to the tug's hull and superstructure, during the ship–tug cooperation | |
| | – explains the tug bow-cushion effect | |
| | – explains the risk during the ship–tug cooperation of the tug getting sucked under the bow of the ship with risk of capsizing, and the importance of immediate action required by the tug master, by the application of rudder and the use of available power to go full astern, to avoid above | |
| | – explains why tractor type tugs are generally found to be less vulnerable in the above mentioned situation | |
| | – explains 'girting' and the dangers associated with it | |
| | – explains the dangers of ships high speed during ship–tug cooperation | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – describes the meaning of ‘gob rope’, and how its use on conventional tugs can improve the situation of ‘girting’<br>– explains how the use of such ‘gob rope’ limits the manoeuvrability of the towing tug<br>– explains the precaution needed to be exercised for the tug’s safety, while using the tugs, in respect to:<br>– the visibility of ship’s bulbous bow<br>– short towlines<br>– excessive forward speed of the ship or sudden changes in a ship’s heading and speed<br>– experience and the ability of the crew in releasing tug’s towline, when needed<br>– underestimating wind and current forces<br>– information exchange pilot–shipmaster–tug captain<br>– operating bow-to-bow<br>– explains the importance of keeping the ship’s speed and heading constant when passing or taking a towline<br>– explains the knowledge necessary for a Master when ordering the number and total bollard pull of tugs<br>– explains the important criteria of ships’ loading conditions when planning for the number of tugs and the tug position along the hull<br>– describes the effectiveness of tug(s), during ship–tug cooperation, in relation to pivot point, leverage, and tendency of the ship to swing in a particular direction, in the following conditions:<br>– when the ship is stopped and making no way through the water (dead in the water)<br>– when the ship is making headway<br>– when the ship is making sternway<br>– plans manoeuvres involving tugs to minimize adverse interaction effects and optimize tug efficiency<br>– performs manoeuvres involving tugs to minimize adverse interaction effects and optimize tug efficiency* | |
| **1.8** | **Use of propulsion and manoeuvring systems including various types of rudder (4* hours)**<br>– describes various types of rudders, including:<br>– Flap rudder (commonly known as the “Becker rudder”)<br>– Rotor rudder (commonly known as the “Jastram rudder”)<br>– T-shaped rudder (commonly known as the “Single Schilling rudder”)<br>– Twin Schilling rudders and explains their advantages with regard to ship handling<br>– describes how the use of bow-thrust can be used to assist in manoeuvring<br>– describes how the use of stern-thrust can be used to assist in manoeuvring<br>– describes the use of high-lift rudder systems to improve ship manoeuvrability<br>– describes the use of dynamically positioned vessels and their control systems<br>– describes the use of rudder cycling to reduce head reach in an emergency | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – compares the effectiveness of rudder cycling with a crash stop<br>– plans manoeuvres using bow and stern thrusters<br>– performs manoeuvres using rudder cycling to control speed and bow and stern thrusters* | |
| 1.9 | **Choice of anchorage; anchoring with one or two anchors in limited anchorages and factors involved in determining the length of anchor cable to be used (6 hours)**<br>– explains how to choose an anchorage and lists the factors which influence the choice<br>– states that an anchoring plan should be prepared in advance, showing the direction and speed of approach and the dropping position(s), with check bearings<br>– explains how to judge that a ship is stopped ready for letting go<br>– explains that positions should be obtained on letting go and again when brought up<br>– describes the use of anchor buoys<br>– lists the factors to consider in determining the length of anchor cable to be used as:<br>– the nature of the bottom<br>– the strength of current or wind<br>– the strength and direction of the tidal stream<br>– the exposure of the anchorage to bad weather<br>– the amount of room to swing<br>– the expected length of stay at anchor<br>– plans anchorage positions and manoeuvres to anchor the vessel using one and two anchors<br>– performs manoeuvres to anchor the vessel using one and two anchors* | R1 |
| 1.10 | **Procedures for anchoring in deep water and in shallow water (1 hour)**<br>– describes holding powers of different anchors<br>– describes the preparation of anchors, including walking the anchor back for anchoring in deep water<br>– explains that when lowering anchor under power, excessive load on the anchor cable could cause damage or wear of the windlass engine and gearing | |
| 1.11 | **Dragging anchor; clearing fouled anchors (1 hour)**<br>– defines dragging and explains how to detect it<br>– describes the actions to be taken when the anchor starts to drag<br>– explains how excessive yawing may break the anchor out of its holding and describes measures to control yaw<br>– describes how to bring a ship to an open moor<br>– explains what is meant by ‘foul hawse’ and how it occurs<br>– describes how to clear a foul hawse<br>– describes how to clear a fouled anchor<br>– describes how to buoy and slip an anchor | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **1.12** | **Dry-docking (4 hours)** | R1 |
| | – lists the information required by the dry-dock authorities as:<br>  – length, beam and rise of floor, if any<br>  – draughts and trim<br>  – position of bilge keels and appendages such as a bulbous bow<br>  – whether single or twin screw<br>  – the weight and disposition of any cargo on board<br>  – position of any hull damage for inspection or repair | |
| | – states that a plan showing the position of bulkheads, main structural members and drain plugs is required for the preparation of beds and shores when dry-docking in the loaded condition | |
| | – explains why a slight trim by the stern is the ideal condition for dry-docking | |
| | – explains the need for adequate statical stability and states when the most critical condition occurs | |
| | – determines that the vessel has adequate statical stability for docking by calculation | |
| | – plans the distribution of deadweight items to ensure adequate statical stability during docking | |
| | – describes the use of bilge blocks, breast shores and bilge shores and their placement during pumping out | |
| | – states that all tanks should be sounded and the readings recorded when the ship takes the keel blocks | |
| | – explains why, as far as possible, tanks should be full or empty | |
| | – explains that tanks and movable weights should be restored to their original condition before flooding the dock to ensure the same trim and zero list on refloating | |
| | – explains why a ship may be left partially waterborne if damage is accessible | |
| | – explains how an adequate supply of water for firefighting and a telephone for calling emergency services should be arranged | |
| | – lists the precautions to be taken and the preparations to be made before flooding the dock | |
| **1.13** | **Management and handling ships in heavy weather, including assisting a ship or aircraft in distress; towing operations; means of keeping an unmanageable ship out of a sea trough; lessening drift and use of oil (6 hours)** | R1 |
| | – states that the use of weather routeing can reduce the number of occasions on which heavy weather is encountered | |
| | – explains that the most common reason for heavy weather damage is lack of proper route planning taking into consideration the 96 hrs, 72 hrs and 48 hrs forecasts during planning | |
| | – describes the precautions to be taken before the onset of heavy weather | |
| | – explains the importance of understanding the enormous stresses encountered by the ship in heavy weather conditions | |
| | – defines wavelength, period, and period of encounter of waves and swell | |
| | – explains that high wave heights are one of the most common reasons for heavy weather damage | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- describes the methods of observing the frequency of wave beating and the formula with which it can be calculated (for ships less than 250m in length and for ships whose length exceeds 250m)
- defines rolling period and synchronous rolling
- explains how synchronous rolling can be avoided by an alteration of speed or course to change the period of encounter
- describes synchronous pitching and how to prevent it
- explains that parametric rolling is caused due to changes in parameters of stability which are: Displacement W (constant), Righting lever GZ (variable), W x GZ = righting moment
- explains that parametric roll motions with large and dangerous roll amplitudes in waves are due to the variation of stability between the position on the wave crest and the position in the wave trough
- explains that among the measures which the vessel can take to avoid parametric rolling and synchronous rolling are ensuring that the vessel has adequate intact stability and that the course and speed of the ship should be selected in a way to avoid conditions for which the encounter period is
  - close to the ship roll period or
  - the encounter period is close to one half of the ship roll period
- describes how excessive speed into head seas can cause severe panting and slamming stresses
- states that excessive slamming may be almost unnoticed on the bridge of a very large ship
- explains that heavy pitching also gives rise to high longitudinal stresses, racing of the propeller and the shipping of water
- defines ‘pooping’ and describes the conditions in which it may occur
- defines ‘broaching-to’ and describes the conditions in which it may occur
- explains that a reduction in speed combined with an alteration of course can reduce the danger of broaching-to and of being pooped
- describes how to turn a ship in heavy seas
- states that a ship may be hove-to with the wind on the bow or on the quarter or stopped
- describes the circumstances in which each of the methods above may be used
- describes methods of turning a disabled ship’s head to keep it out of a sea trough and of lessening lee drift
- explains that a ship may drift at an angle to the downwind direction and that its direction of drift will depend upon which side it has the wind
- describes how to use oil to reduce breaking seas when hove-to and when manoeuvring in heavy seas
- describes actions to prevent a ship being driven on to a lee shore
- describes how to assist a ship or aircraft in distress
- describes towing operations



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **1.14** | **Precautions in manoeuvring to launch rescue boats and survival craft in bad weather (2 hours)** | R1, section A-VI/2 |
| | – explains how to make a lee for launching/recovering rescue and survival craft | |
| | – describes the effect of speed and the effect of flowlines around the vessel | |
| | – plans manoeuvres to enable launching and recovery of rescue and survival craft | |
| | – performs manoeuvres to enable launching and recovery of rescue and survival craft* | |
| **1.15** | **Methods of taking on board survivors from rescue boats and survival craft (1 hour)** | R1 |
| | – describes the methods of manoeuvring the ship and the precautions needed to take on board survivors from rescue boats and survival craft | |
| **1.16** | **Ability to determine the manoeuvring and propulsion characteristics of common types of ships, with special reference to stopping distances and turning circles at various draughts and speeds (3 hours)** | R1, R2 ch. V reg. 23, R17, R18 |
| | – explains the IMO recommendations for ship manoeuvrability, which are:<br>1. Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability, adopted by resolution MSC.137(76) on 4 December 2002<br>2. explanatory Notes to the Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability, adopted by MSC/Circ.1053 on 16 December 2002<br>3. provision and Display of Manoeuvring Information on Board Ships, adopted by resolution A.601(15) on 19 November 1987 | |
| | – states in particular to IMO's recommendation, with respect to the turning ability of the ship, that the advance should not exceed 4.5 ship lengths and the tactical diameter should not exceed 5 ship lengths in the turning circle manoeuvre | R1 section B-V/a |
| | – states in particular to IMO's recommendation, with respect to the stopping ability of the ship, that the track reach in the full astern stopping test should not exceed 15 ship lengths and also keeping in mind, as guided by the recommendation, that this value may be modified by the Administration where ships of large displacement make this criterion impracticable but in no case exceed 20 ship lengths | |
| | – states that opportunity should be taken to check and supplement the information in the ship's manoeuvring booklet for intermediate draughts and for various weather conditions | |
| | – states that turning circles in shallow water at various manoeuvring speeds should be recorded when possible | |
| | – states that details of an accelerated turn in shallow water should be obtained | |
| | – explains how trials of stopping ability under various conditions should be recorded | |
| | – states that the effect of wind on the behaviour of the ship should be recorded, in particular:<br>– the drifting behaviour when stopped<br>– the speed at which steerage is lost in various conditions of loading and wind<br>– the behaviour of the ship when making sternway | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states why the minimum operating revolutions of the engine and the resulting speed should be checked | |
| | – states that any details of manoeuvring behaviour which would be useful to a pilot or future Master should be recorded | |
| | – states that STCW Code section B-V/a recommends additional training for Masters and Chief Mates of large ships and ships with unusual manoeuvring characteristics | |
| **1.17** | **Importance of navigating at reduced speed to avoid damage caused by own ship's bow and stern waves (1 hour)** | R1 |
| | – explains damage to shore due to excessive bow waves and stern waves | |
| | – explains the effects of passing ships on ships moored alongside | |
| | – states the precautions that should be taken by ships alongside to minimize the effect of passing traffic | |
| **1.18** | **Navigating in or near ice; practical measures to be taken when navigating in or near ice or in conditions of ice accumulation on board (4 hours)** | R1, R9, R19 |
| | – states that all possible information about ice located on or in the vicinity of the intended track should be obtained | |
| | – states that information is available from:<br>– daily bulletins of the International Ice Patrol in the North Atlantic<br>– ice warnings from countries where ice is a regular problem<br>– Hydrographic Office ice charts<br>– pilot books<br>– facsimile ice charts<br>– warnings from other ships in the vicinity | |
| | – defines the following terms used in ice warnings:<br>– solid ice<br>– soft ice<br>– drift ice<br>– pack ice<br>– growler<br>– iceberg | R2 |
| | – states the Master's obligation to report dangerous ice or sub-freezing air temperatures associated with gale-force winds causing severe ice accretion on superstructures | |
| | – states that, when ice is reported on or near the course, the Master of every ship is bound to proceed at a moderate speed or to alter course so as to go well clear of the danger zone | |
| | – explains that radar may not detect small icebergs and growlers | |
| | – states that navigation marks may be removed without warning in coastal areas threatened by ice | |
| | – states that no attempt should be made to enter a region of thick ice in a ship not specially strengthened for navigation in ice | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.10 | Manoeuvre and Handle a Ship in all Conditions | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – lists precautions to take when entering ice as:<br>– estimating the thickness and concentration of ice and assessing whether the ship can safely pass through it<br>– avoiding entry to pressure areas (shown by hummocks and rafting)<br>– following leads used by previous ships, where possible<br>– entering on the lee side of the ice, if practicable<br>– entering at right angles to the ice edge, to avoid damage to hull, propeller and rudder<br>– approaching at as slow a speed as possible, and increasing the power to maintain headway when the bow contacts the ice<br>– explains that leads through the ice show well on radar when set to short range<br>– explains precautions to be taken to avoid damaging the propeller and rudder when manoeuvring in ice<br>– explains how to obtain assistance from an ice-breaker<br>– states that it is important to follow the ice-breaker's instructions regarding speed and manoeuvring<br>– states that fenders should be ready for use when negotiating sharp turns in leads<br>– describes the precautions which should be taken to prevent freezing up of tail-end shafts, deck machinery and services<br>– describes how to heave-to in an ice field<br>– describes the need to keep a lookout, when hove-to at night, for large ice drifting through the pack<br>– states that soft ice may block seawater intakes<br>– describes the conditions in which ice accumulates on decks and superstructures<br>– explains the dangers resulting from heavy accumulation of ice<br>– states that a change of course or speed should be made to reduce the shipping of freezing spray<br>– states that accumulated ice and snow should be cleared away as quickly as possible<br>– describes methods of clearing decks, rigging and superstructure of ice | |
| **1.19** | **Use of, and manoeuvring in and near, traffic separation schemes (TSS) and in vessel traffic service (VTS) (4 hours)**<br>– explains the requirements of the International Regulations for preventing Collisions at Sea with respect to traffic separation schemes and narrow channels<br>– discusses the actions that can be taken to manoeuvre the vessel in case of emergency<br>– describes the information that may be required by VTS officers before entering, leaving or manoeuvring within a VTS controlled area<br>– plans manoeuvres in and near traffic separation schemes<br>– performs manoeuvres in and near traffic separation schemes* | R1, R2 ch. V, R14 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.11 | General Knowledge of Remote Controls of Propulsion Plant and Engineering Systems and Services | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>1.11.1 OPERATING PRINCIPLES OF MARINE POWER PLANTS<br>1.11.2 SHIPS' AUXILIARY MACHINERY<br>1.11.3 GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF MARINE ENGINEERING TERMS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.11 | General Knowledge of Remote Controls of Propulsion Plant and Engineering Systems and Services | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

1.11.1 OPERATING PRINCIPLES OF MARINE POWER PLANTS

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T28, T41, B33, B34, B38

**Teaching aids:** A1, V143

Required performance:

**1.1 Operating principles of marine power plants (25 hours)** — R1

- Diesel engines
  - uses generally accepted engineering terms
  - describes the 2-stroke diesel cycle
  - describes the 4-stroke diesel cycle
  - describes the operating principles of marine diesel engine propulsion plant
  - describes the advantages and disadvantages of a slow-speed diesel engine
  - explains the cause of scavenge fires and how they are dealt with
  - describes methods of supercharging
  - describes the fuel oil system from bunker tank to injection
  - describes the lubrication system
  - describes engine cooling-water systems
  - describes the advantages and disadvantages of a medium-speed diesel
  - explains the need for gearing with medium-speed diesels
  - describes the arrangement of clutch and turning gears
  - describes how a diesel engine is prepared for stand-by
  - describes the method of starting, stopping and reversing of a direct propulsion diesel engine
  - states that the number of starts is limited by the capacity of the starting air reservoir
  - describes the waste heat recovery system of the 2-stroke main propulsion engine
- Steam turbine systems
  - describes the turbine, the feed system and the boiler as a system
  - explains the working of an impulse turbine and a reaction turbine
  - describes a steam turbine installation and its gearing
  - distinguishes between and describes open and closed feed systems
  - states that a steam turbine needs a large water-tube boiler
  - describes the main features of a water-tube boiler
  - describes in outline the procedure for raising steam
  - describes the procedure for warming through a steam turbine ready for manoeuvring
  - describes the procedures for manoeuvring when using a steam turbine
- Gas turbine system
  - describes the gas turbine system
  - describes the compressor part of the gas turbine
  - describes the combustion chamber or combustor part of the gas turbine
  - describes the turbine part of the gas turbine
  - describes the two main types of compressors



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.11 | General Knowledge of Remote Controls of Propulsion Plant and Engineering Systems and Services | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- Propeller and propeller shaft
  - describes the arrangement of thrust shaft, intermediate shafts and tailshaft
  - explains how propeller thrust is transmitted to the hull
  - describes how the propeller shaft is supported between the thrust block and the stern tube
  - sketches and describes an oil-lubricated stern-tube bearing
  - describes how the propeller is secured to the tailshaft
  - defines pitch, slip and efficiency of a propeller
  - calculates the percentage apparent slip from given data
  - calculates the ship's speed, given the engine revolutions per minute, mean pitch and percentage slip
  - describes the arrangement and operation of a controllable-pitch propeller (CPP)
  - states the precautions to take with a CPP before:
    - starting the main engines
    - going to sea
    - entering harbour or confined waters
- states that changing control positions and the use of emergency hand control pitch and engine revolutions should be exercised
- Bridge control[1]
  - describes a control system for the main engine, including control from bridge, machinery control room, engine control local and changeover controls
  - describes bridge control of controllable-pitch propellers
  - describes bridge control of slow speed diesel engines
  - describes bridge control of steam turbines with associated boilers
  - describes bridge control for gas turbines with associated gas generators
  - lists the indicators and alarms provided with bridge control
  - describes the arrangement and operations of lateral thrusters
  - describes the bridge control and indicators for lateral thrusters
  - describes the concept of control systems
  - describes the terminology used in control systems
  - explains when is the control system 'fail-safe'
  - explains when is the control system 'fail-run'
  - explains the meaning of safety interlocks in a control system
  - describes the types of controls (open and closed loop)

[1] Administrations may wish to provide specialized training in bridge control systems for personnel who are to serve on higher technology ships fitted with complex bridge control systems.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.11 | General Knowledge of Remote Controls of Propulsion Plant and Engineering Systems and Services | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

1.11.2 SHIPS' AUXILIARY MACHINERY

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T28, B33, B34, B38

**Teaching aids:** A1, V49, V116, V123, V124, V131, V132, V133, V144, V147, V149

Required performance:

**2.1 Ships' auxiliary machinery (25 hours)** — R1

- distinguishes between water-tube and fire-tube boilers
- describes auxiliary boilers
- describes a waste-heat boiler
- describes exhaust-gas heat exchangers
- describes steam-to-steam generators and explains where and why they are used
- describes a boiler fuel oil supply system
- describes the effect of dissolved salts in the feedwater and how it is treated
- explains what is meant by 'priming'
- states that carry-over of water may cause serious damage to turbine blading and to steam cylinders

Distillation and fresh-water systems

- describes a distillation system
- explains the operation of a flash evaporator
- describes the treatment of fresh water intended for drinking
- describes a domestic water system

Pumps and pumping systems

- classifies pumps as displacement, axial-flow or centrifugal
- describes the operation of a reciprocating pump
- describes rotary displacement pumps and states typical applications
- describes a screw pump and states possible uses
- describes an axial-flow pump and states possible applications
- describes a centrifugal pump and states typical applications
- explains the need to prime a centrifugal pump
- describes the head losses in a pumping system and how they are expressed
- explains net positive suction head and its significance in pump operation
- describes a typical bilge system and ballast system for a dry cargo vessel
- states that the engine-room emergency bilge suction is connected to the main circulating pump in the engine-room

Steering gear

- describes ram-type hydraulic steering gear
- describes rotary-vane steering gear
- explains how hydraulic power is provided by variable-delivery pumps
- describes the IMO requirements for auxiliary steering gear and how they are met by ram-type and rotary-vane steering gear



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.11 | General Knowledge of Remote Controls of Propulsion Plant and Engineering Systems and Services | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– describes a telemotor control system
– describes electric steering control
– explains how the change from remote to local control in the steering-gear compartment is made
– describes the requirement for power supplies to electric and electrohydraulic steering gear
– describes the requirements for emergency control of the steering gear
– states the IMO requirements for testing steering gear and for drills

Generators, alternators and electrical distribution

– describes the operation of a D.C. generator
– explains the functioning of shunt- and compound-wound D.C. motors
– describes the operation of an alternator
– explains the functioning of induction motors
– explains the relative advantages and disadvantages of generation and distribution of D.C. and A.C.
– describes D.C. and A.C. distribution systems
– describes the use of circuit-breakers and fuses
– describes and draws a navigation light circuit with indicators and alarm, showing an alternative power supply
– describes the use of rectifiers
– describes the characteristics of lead-acid batteries and of alkaline batteries
– describes the maintenance of batteries
– describes the safety precautions to be observed for battery compartments – outlines the starting requirements for emergency generating sets
– lists the services to be supplied from the emergency generator
– describes the supplementary emergency lighting for ro-ro passenger ships

Refrigeration, air-conditioning and ventilation

– describes a vapour-compression-cycle refrigeration plant
– states desirable properties of a refrigerant
– states the properties of commonly used refrigerants
– describes the use of secondary refrigerants for cooling compartments
– explains the co-efficient of performance of a refrigeration plant
– describes an air-conditioning plant
– describes a ventilation system for accommodation
– describes a mechanical ventilation system for ships' holds

Stabilizers

– describes the construction and operation of fin stabilizers
– describes the arrangement and operation of a flume stabilizer

Sewage treatment plants

– describes the operation of a chemical sewage treatment plant
– describes the operation of a biological sewage treatment plant



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.11 | General Knowledge of Remote Controls of Propulsion Plant and Engineering Systems and Services | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

Oily water separators and oil filtering equipment

– describes the operation of an oily water separator (producing effluent that contains less than 100 ppm of oil)
– describes the operation of oil filtering equipment (producing effluent that contains not more than 15 ppm of oil)
– explains why oily water separators, even if well maintained and correctly operated, may not function properly
– describes how an oil-content meter functions
– describes an oil discharge monitoring and control system

Incinerators

– describes the functioning of a waste incinerator

Deck machinery

– states that the design and performance of anchor windlasses is subject to approval by a classification society
– sketches and describes a windlass driving two de-clutchable cable lifters and warping drums
– explains the gearing necessary between the prime mover and cable lifters
– states that both winches may be coupled mechanically to provide either a stand-by drive, in case one prime mover should fail, or the power of both prime movers on one windlass, if required
– describes the arrangement of vertical anchor capstans with driving machinery below deck
– describes a spooling device to distribute the wire evenly on the drum of a mooring winch
– explains the working of self-tensioning winches
– briefly explains the advantages and disadvantages of steam, electric and hydraulic drive for mooring winches and capstans
– describes a cargo winch
– sketches and describes a slewing deck crane, its motors and its controls
– describes the lubrication of deck machinery

Hydraulic systems

– states that a hydraulic system consists of an oil tank, pumps, control valves, hydraulic motors and pipework
– distinguishes between open- and closed-loop systems
– describes a live-line circuit supplied by a centralized hydraulic power system
– describes radial-piston and axial-piston variable-stroke pumps
– explains how the variable-stroke pump can act as controller and power supply
– sketches and describes a simple spool valve with shutoff and control of flow direction
– describes ram and rotary-vane actuators
– states that hydraulic systems can provide stepless control of speed for winches, cranes and other lifting devices



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.11 | General Knowledge of Remote Controls of Propulsion Plant and Engineering Systems and Services | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– describes a hydraulic accumulator and explains its purpose
– states that cooling of the hydraulic oil is necessary during operation to maintain the correct viscosity of the oil
– states that the oil may need to be heated before starting from cold
– states that cleanliness of the oil is essential for satisfactory operation and that all systems contain filters
– states that air in a system leads to erratic functioning

1.11.3 GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF MARINE ENGINEERING SYSTEMS

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T28, T41, B33, B34, B38

**Teaching aids:** A1

Required performance:

**3.1 Marine engineering terms and fuel consumption (4 hours)** — R1

– uses the correct engineering terms when describing and explaining the operation of the machinery and equipment mentioned above
– defines mass, force, work, power, energy, pressure, stress, strain and heat and states the units in which each is measured
– explains what is meant by the efficiency of machine
– describes an indicator diagram and the information obtainable from it
– defines indicated power, shaft power, propeller power and thrust
– defines the Admiralty coefficient (AC) as:

$$AC = \frac{(\text{displacement})^{2/3} \times (\text{speed})^3}{\text{engine power}}$$

– defines the fuel coefficient (FC) as:

$$FC = \frac{(\text{displacement})^{2/3} \times (\text{speed})^3}{\text{daily fuel consumption}}$$

– explains that for a given period of time:

$$\frac{\text{fuel consumption}^1}{\text{fuel consumption}^2} = \left(\frac{\text{displacement}^1}{\text{displacement}^2}\right)^{2/3} \times \left(\frac{\text{speed}^1}{\text{speed}^2}\right)^3$$

– explains that for a given distance:

$$\frac{\text{fuel consumption}^1}{\text{fuel consumption}^2} = \left(\frac{\text{displacement}^1}{\text{displacement}^2}\right)^{2/3} \times \left(\frac{\text{speed}^1}{\text{speed}^2}\right)^2$$

– explains that:

$$\frac{\text{Voyage consumption}^1}{\text{Voyage consumption}^2} = \left(\frac{\text{displacement}^1}{\text{displacement}^2}\right)^{2/3} \times \left(\frac{\text{speed}^1}{\text{speed}^2}\right)^2 \times \frac{\text{Voyage distance}^1}{\text{Voyage distance}^2}$$

– given data from the previous performance, calculates:
  – the daily consumption at service speed
  – the bunker fuel required for a voyage
  – the speed for a given daily consumption
  – the reduced speed required to complete a voyage with a given consumption



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 1.11 | General Knowledge of Remote Controls of Propulsion Plant and Engineering Systems and Services | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that, for fuel economy, the actual speed at any stage of a voyage should be as near as practicable to the required average speed<br>– explains how the condition of the hull affects the fuel coefficient and the fuel consumption<br>– explains that keeping the leading edges and tips of propeller blades dressed and polished improves propeller efficiency and reduces fuel consumption | |
| 3.2 | **Arrangements necessary for appropriate and effective engineering watches to be maintained for the purpose of safety under normal circumstances and UMS operations (2 hours)**<br>– explains briefly the general engine room safety that should be observed at all given times<br>– describes the main dangers and sources of risk in an engine room<br>– explains the importance and implementation of risk assessment and risk management in an engine room<br>– describes the safe systems of work and permits to work that should be observed in an engine room<br>– explains the types and importance of wearing personal protective equipment (PPE) while working in an engine room<br>– describes the arrangements necessary for appropriate and effective engineering watches to be maintained for the purpose of safety under normal circumstances and UMS operations | |
| 3.3 | **Arrangements necessary to ensure a safe engineering watch is maintained when carrying dangerous cargo (2 hours)**<br>– describes the arrangements necessary to ensure a safe engineering watch is maintained when carrying dangerous cargo | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part D1: Instructor Manual

The following notes are intended to highlight the main objectives or training outcomes of each part of the function. The notes also contain some material on topics which are not adequately covered in the quoted references.

This function covers the theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency for the safe navigation of a ship in coastal waters and in the open ocean.

## Function 1: Navigation at the Management Level

On completion of training for this function, the officer should possess a thorough understanding and capability in navigation. This together with knowledge gained in other areas, will enable the officer to carry out passages independently in a proper and safe manner and to be able to solve those problems that may arise during a voyage.

The officer will be able to fix positions and analyse in a practical way the quality of the fix, make great circle calculations, read tide tables and predict times and heights of tides at different ports worldwide.

In voyage planning the officer will be able to:

- use appropriate means of navigation in coastal waters
- make use of publications and other information sources for safe voyage planning in coastal waters
- use pilot charts, *Ocean Passages for the World* and other publications to select a safe and economic 'best' route
- organize and manage the bridge team.

Officers will be thoroughly conversant with the content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea (COLREG 1972), as amended.

The interpretations arising from court decisions should be used when teaching these rules. They will be able to apply them correctly in all situations as Master of a ship.

Officers will be able to arrange and monitor the keeping of a safe navigational watch at sea and an effective deck watch in port taking account of the standards regarding watchkeeping in the STCW code, chapter VIII. They will have a knowledge of all modern navigational aids, enabling them to navigate safely in all parts of the world. They will have specific knowledge of operating principles, limitations, sources of error, detection of misrepresentation of information and methods of correction to obtain accurate position fixing. Officers will appreciate the danger of exclusive reliance on information gained from instruments and the necessity for calibration and frequent checking of the instruments.

On completion of the function, officers will be able to identify the various parts of the magnetic compass and explain their functions. They will understand the reasons for the change of compass deviation with time and position and the need for routine checking of the ship's deviation. They will also be able to produce and analyse a deviation table. Officers will have



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

a knowledge and understanding of gyrocompass errors and will be able to evaluate possible errors and appreciate the limitations of the instrument.

On completion of the function, officers will:

- possess a general understanding of the elements and processes which determine the weather;
- be able to draw conclusions on the basis of observations made on board and from information available;
- be able to utilize information from weather and wave charts; and
- have a basic knowledge of the elements of oceanography.

This knowledge will, as part of the training programme as a whole, enable the trainee to take into account climatic conditions, the weather prognosis, ocean currents and information on the presence of ice, for the safe operation of the ship.

The officer will understand and interpret a synoptic chart, predict area weather, have a knowledge of the characteristics of various weather systems and ocean current systems and be able to use all appropriate navigational publications.

Officers will also be aware of all of the factors affecting the manoeuvring and handling of ships. They will be able to plan berthing or anchoring procedures, taking account of prevailing conditions of wind and tide and their own ship's characteristics, and to make use of assisting tugs when necessary. They will, after having gained seagoing experience or training on a ship-handling simulator, also be able to handle a ship so as to minimize the risk of damage or stranding resulting from heavy weather. Officers will be aware of the dangers to be encountered when navigating in ice or conditions of ice accumulation on board and the precautions to take for the safety of the ship and crew.

Officers will know the procedures to use in VHF communications and be able to use radiotelephones, particularly with respect to distress, urgency, safety and navigational messages. They will also know the procedures for emergency distress signals by radiotelegraphy, as prescribed in the Radio Regulations, and will be able to send a distress call by using an automatic keying device and the emergency transmitter.

## 1.1 PLAN A VOYAGE AND CONDUCT NAVIGATION

First of all, the officers should be well acquainted with publications which supply appropriate information for voyage planning. The officers should plan navigation after analysing and evaluating current legislations (if applicable) with regard to Passage and Voyage Planning and as per the requirements of International Maritime Organization resolution A.893. Intelligent use of the information, together with professional ability and watchfulness, leads to a successful voyage. Proper safe working procedures are very important and should be stressed. Instructors will find T12 a valuable source of reference.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 1.1.1 VOYAGE PLANNING AND NAVIGATION FOR ALL CONDITIONS

**Voyage planning and navigation for all conditions by acceptable methods of plotting ocean tracks** **(24 hours)**

*This content builds on the passage planning elements of IMO model course 7.03 and is intended to ensure that management level officers can effectively plan voyages from berth to berth in accordance with guidance on passage planning and that they can manage passage planning tasks performed by operational level officers. Additional learning time may be required for trainees who have not retained competence in the operational level tasks.*

The importance of preparing oneself and the vessel before setting off on a sea passage is irrefutable, especially on a coastal passage where the sheer number and proximity of hazards can quickly spell disaster for the unprepared. Navigation planning should be carried out after utilizing the principles of passage planning to make a complete appraisal of a proposed passage also taking into account restricted waters, while en route, in conjunction and utilizing Navigational charts, Admiralty Routeing charts, *Ocean Passages for the World*, Admiralty Sailing Directions, Tide tables to appraise a proposed ocean passage and a coastal or pilotage passage. Appropriate strategies and contingency plans should also be used in order to deal with various factors, as mentioned in the detailed teaching syllabus.

Navigation Safety recommends that:

1) all of the ship's navigation is planned in adequate detail
2) there is a systematic bridge organization that provides for:
   (a) comprehensive briefing of personnel
   (b) close monitoring of position
   (c) cross-checking.

**Logbooks and voyage records** **(3 hours)**

On board ship, various conditions need to be watched and taken care of. In a nautical context this means navigation, including watchkeeping, weather, ship handling, handling of cargo, condition of ship as to stability, trim, stress, etc., personnel management and communications, which are the most important subjects. Proper and effective keeping of logbooks is important as a record of the various circumstances. Special emphasis should be placed on conditions involving maritime shipping legislation and other regulations and on keeping logbooks in normal circumstances.

## 1.1.2 ROUTEING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE GENERAL PROVISIONS ON SHIP'S ROUTEING

**Routeing** **(12 hours)**

*This content builds on the routeing and passage planning elements of IMO model course 7.03 and is intended to ensure that management level officers can effectively plan voyages from berth to berth in accordance with guidance on passage planning and that they can manage passage planning tasks performed by operational level officers. This knowledge is considered*



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

*so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. Additional learning time may be required for trainees who have not retained competence in the operational level tasks.*

The procedures for weather routeing by a shore-based service should be covered in this topic.

On-board routeing can be carried out by the Master if the ship is equipped with a facsimile receiver and is in a region for which the necessary prognostic charts are available. The internet and email facility can also be used in order to obtain charts from various sources providing these facilities. This topic should be taught in conjunction with the voyage planning.

**Ocean voyage**

Because traffic concentrations are low and navigational hazards are relatively few on an ocean crossing, the main data to be appraised are environmental, such as seasonal prevailing weather, local and actual weather, ocean currents, tides, ice, etc. In addition, data of the ship's characteristics, cargo and navigational/operational data need to be taken into account.

The main reason for selection of alternative routes is one of safety and economics. Route selection is to some extent regulated by insurance restrictions, load line zones, IMO routeings and similar regulations.

A thorough analysis of all of the conditions relevant to passage planning should be covered in this subject area. Such an analysis may start with calculating distances of possible tracks and then evaluating weather conditions, current, characteristics of the ship and of its cargo, regulations, etc. Very often the "best" route is not the shortest.

### 1.1.3 REPORTING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR SHIP REPORTING SYSTEMS AND WITH VTS PROCEDURES

**Ship reporting systems** **(1 hour)**

Instructors should note that reference R3 contains full information on ship's routeing and reporting.

Planning of navigation should be carried in accordance to the ship's routeing as these systems contribute to safety of life at sea, safety and efficiency of navigation and/or protection of the marine environment. The instructor should also refer to MSC/Circ.1060 Guidance Note on the Preparation of Proposals on Ships' Routeing Systems and Ship Reporting Systems, especially while appraising and preparing a coastal Navigation plan while teaching this topic.

They should also note that the measures mentioned on the ship's routeing, that are described or defined in parts A and H of this publication are individually described in parts B (traffic separation schemes), C (deep-water routes), D (areas to be avoided), E (other routeing measures, such as recommended tracks, two-way routes and recommended directions of traffic flow), F (the rules and recommendations on navigation that are associated with



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

particular traffic areas and straits), G (mandatory ship reporting systems, mandatory routeing systems and mandatory no anchoring areas) and H (archipelagic sea lanes).

Routeing measures were adopted on May 2010.

## 1.2 DETERMINE POSITION AND THE ACCURACY OF RESULTANT POSITION FIX BY ANY MEANS

*This content builds on the position determination elements of IMO model course 7.03 and is intended to ensure that management level officers ensure that effective position monitoring occurs during the voyage, watchkeeping officers are encouraged to use the most appropriate position fixing systems available and that the accuracy of the position monitoring is evaluated. The content assumes that trainees have retained their competence in the techniques required for operational level certification. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. Additional learning time may be required for trainees who have not retained competence in the operational level tasks.*

### 1.2.1 POSITION DETERMINATION IN ALL CONDITIONS

The main objective of this subject area is that management level officers retain the ability to use celestial and terrestrial based techniques and to ensure that watchkeeping officers monitor the position effectively at all times.

**Celestial navigation** **(10 hours)**

The main objective of this subject area is that the trainee shall retain the knowledge and ability in position fixing by using all celestial bodies.

To compute the altitude of the celestial body, three methods are available:

- the cosine formula and a pocket calculator
- the haversine formula
- pre-computed altitude and azimuth tables.

Which of these should be chosen is optional. After having introduced these methods, it is recommended to select one of them and specialize on that particular method. These days with universal access to inexpensive pocket calculators, the first method may be preferable.

The Longitude by chronometer method to obtain the longitude (a position line) should be carried out before the body is on the observer's meridian.

The Marcq St. Hilaire method (also known as Intercept method) for obtaining a position line is universal and can be utilized for any celestial body in any direction, the body in the meridian included.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The Latitude by Meridian Altitude method should be used when the body is on the observer's meridian after applying the true zenith distance to the declination of the celestial body in order to obtain the observer's latitude.

The officers should also be able to obtain the corrections from pole star tables in the nautical almanac and apply them to the altitude of Polaris to find the latitude of the observer.

Finally the officers should be able to find the position of the observer at the time of the final observation, given two or more position lines with the courses and distances run between the observations.

Fixing positions might be carried out as geometrical problems, using simultaneous or staggered observations of celestial bodies, preferably on an ocean plotting sheet which can then be transferred onto the navigational chart (if scale permits).

The examination of trainees in celestial navigation should be mainly limited to their demonstrating the ability to explain the most common definitions and, in a written examination, to the ability to carry out the calculations related to the various observations and obtain a fix from celestial bodies.

**Terrestrial navigation including the ability to use appropriate charts, notices to mariners and other publications to assess the accuracy of the resulting fix** **(16 hours)**

This subject area is intended to ensure that the trainee retains appropriate sufficient knowledge and ability in:

1) sailing calculations, using the Mercator formula
2) great circle and composite great circle calculation
3) simple analysis of errors that may occur in position fixing
4) correct usage of appropriate charts, notices to mariners and other publications to assess the accuracy of the resulting fix
5) correct usage of chart catalogue and correcting of charts using information from notices to mariners

The analysis of errors is a very important task. As far as mathematical knowledge permits, statistical methods may be used. A more practical approach to the problem may be more fruitful. The trainees' ability to make critical judgements and to adopt a critical attitude should be encouraged. In particular, the understanding of possible errors, limitations of accuracy and the need for repeated observations must be stressed.

Calculation of the course, distance and intermediate positions should be practised by working a sufficient number of exercises. The choice of formulae and the method of calculation are optional. In the case of a pocket calculator being chosen, which these days is a natural choice, use of the cosine formula for the distance and of the cotangent formula for the course is convenient. The cotangent formula cannot be used close to the equator, where the great circle method is of little or no benefit. Except for this restriction, the formulae can be used in any position.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

Despite great circle sailing having the advantage over Mercator sailing, for a shorter distance, the method has certain disadvantages. In some cases, use of the method may lead to a latitude which is too high, and composite sailing has to be used. The latitude of vertex is important and if there are restrictions pertaining to weather or commercial aspects, composite sailing has to be used. Composite exercises, including various observation methods, dead reckoning and great circle sailing, should be a part of the learning process.

Discussion of routes and the analysis of the optimum track may start in this subject area and continue in the subject area of voyage planning.

**Modern electronic navigational aids** **(20 hours)**

At the level of the training for Chief Mate and Master there are two main areas of emphasis in this subject. First, there should be a review of principles, more thorough consideration of the limitations of the systems, of the instruments and of the presentation of information than for the watchkeeping officer. Secondly, emphasis should be put on procedures for setting up the instruments, on sources of errors, detection of wrong information and on the use of corrections and estimation of accuracy.

In particular, methods of checking and calibration should be thoroughly covered.

New modern electronic aids have been added since the previous edition of the book, as many more are in operational use and the officers should be familiar with these electronic navigational aids.

**Loran C** is covered in IMO model course 7.03, Officer in charge of a navigational watch – Operational level. Now overtaken by enhanced Loran (eLoran), little background knowledge is required to reinforce the knowledge gained previously, especially as it will benefit in understanding eLoran as Integrated GPS/DGPS/eLoran systems are already in use.

**Enhanced Loran (eLoran):** The officers should know that eLoran is an independent, dissimilar, complement to Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS). Its operation limitation should also be covered.

**Differential GPS (DGPS):** The trainees should be able to explain the principle of the DGPS and its use, including the two working methods.

**Global Navigation Satellite System (GLONASS):** The instructors should explain the principle on which GLONASS works and the advantage of the receiver capable of operating both GLONASS and GPS. Combined GPS/GLONASS receiver equipment utilizes a global datum based on the Soviet Geocentric Coordinate System 1990 (SGS 90).

**Galileo:** The instructor should explain that Galileo is the European satellite navigation system, designed as a wholly civil system, operated under public control and is a 2nd generation Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS).

**Integrated Navigation system (INS) and Integrated Bridge system (IBS):** Integrated Navigation system (INS) 'supports safety of navigation by evaluating inputs from several independent and different sensors, combining them to provide information giving timely



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

warnings of potential dangers and degradation of integrity of this information'. The three categories of INS namely (A), (B) and (C) should be explained to the officers.

The Integrated Bridge systems (IBS) is 'a combination of systems which are interconnected in order to allow centralized access to sensor information or command/control workstations, with the aim of increasing safe and efficient ship's management by suitably qualified personnel'. IBS recommendations apply to a system performing two or more operations, namely: passage execution; communication; machinery control; loading, discharging and cargo control; and safety and security. The instructors should explain the limitations of these systems clearly to the officers.

Exercises in the use and calibration of instruments are suitable for group activities.

## 1.3 DETERMINE AND ALLOW FOR COMPASS ERRORS

### 1.3.1 PRINCIPLES OF THE MAGNETIC COMPASS

**Parts of the magnetic compass and their function (30 hours)**

The officers should be able to identify the various parts of the magnetic compass and explain their functions and to explain the principles of the magnetic compass including a knowledge of the cause and correction of errors. Resolution A.382(X) details the performance standards for magnetic compasses and resolution MSC.86(70), annex 2 for Transmitting magnetic heading devices.

The practical correction of the compass should be undertaken during training where Administrations continue to permit Masters to undertake compass adjustment but an understanding only of the process is sufficient where compass correction must only be performed by a licensed compass adjuster.

Although the magnetic compass is mainly used only as a stand-by for the gyrocompass, its errors should be regularly checked and recorded.

### 1.3.2 PRINCIPLES AND ERRORS OF GYROCOMPASSES

**Gyrocompass errors and corrections (10 hours)**

The instructor should remind trainees that the meridian-seeking property and damping both depend upon detection and measurement of the tilt of the spin axis of the gyroscope resulting from the earth's rotation. That applies equally to compasses controlled by liquid-ballistic attachments and those controlled by electrical signals to torque motors. Any tilt, other than that resulting from the earth's rotation, and any apparent tilt resulting from horizontal acceleration of the compass is a source of error.

The errors and the methods of correcting or limiting them should be treated non-mathematically.

The various errors may be referred to the performance standards for gyrocompasses to give trainees an indication of the limits of the accuracy that can be expected.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 1.4 COORDINATE SEARCH AND RESCUE OPERATIONS

*See IMO model course 1.08 Radar navigation – management level and STCW reg. I/12*

Instructors should note that the International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue Manual, R31 published jointly by IMO and the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) in three volumes provides guidelines for a common approach to organizing and providing SAR services.

Volume III, Mobile Facilities, is intended to be carried aboard rescue units, aircraft and vessels to help with performance of a search, rescue or on-scene coordination function, and with aspects of SAR that pertain to their own emergencies.

## 1.5 ESTABLISH WATCHKEEPING ARRANGEMENT AND PROCEDURES

### 1.5.1 INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA

**Thorough knowledge of content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, as amended (30 hours)**

This section will be dealt with mainly by question-and-answer sessions, using models, magnetic boards and computer or simulator based real-time situations. Trainees should already be thoroughly familiar with COLREGS and their application, so these sessions will be for the purposes of revision and consolidation. The response "call the Master" will, of course, no longer be available to them.

The attention of trainees should be drawn to collision cases and court judgements when discussing their answers and the actions they propose.

When dealing with the use of and manoeuvring in traffic separation schemes, particular attention should be drawn to the proper use of inshore traffic zones where they exist.

Exercises should involve planning passages during which it would be necessary to join or to leave lanes, including cases which involve crossing the other lane.

The use of radar for collision avoidance in restricted visibility is covered in IMO model course 1.08, Radar navigation, but some attention should be paid to the posting of lookouts, the proper use of sound signals, and the actions to take on hearing the fog signal of another ship and other matters which do not lend themselves to simulation.

### 1.5.2 PRINCIPLES TO BE OBSERVED IN KEEPING A NAVIGATIONAL WATCH

**Thorough knowledge of the content, application and intent of the principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch (12 hours)**

This is based on ensuring that the requirements of STCW regulations and recommendations are complied with. The regulations are contained in the STCW Code, section A-VIII/2. The emphasis should be on the officer demonstrating that they have the ability to establish and monitor watchkeeping practice that is consistent with the principles in practice rather than a simple recall of the principles.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The references provide examples of stranding which became the subject of official investigations. In most cases, a failure to keep an adequate navigational watch caused or contributed to the accident. A criticism made in a number of cases was the absence of Master's standing or special orders and the lack of any routine regarding effective navigational and watchkeeping procedures, such as the planning of passages in confined waters and the checking of courses and positions on the chart. In other cases there was uncertainty about calling the Master and confusion about who was conning the ship after the Master had come to the bridge.

### 1.5.3 BRIDGE EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS (6 hours)

In recent years, bridge equipment that has become a mandatory requirement and which is not strictly an electronic navigation aid has been introduced. It is important that this equipment is considered within the management of the watchkeeping practice on board ship.

Automatic Identification System (AIS): The international requirement for the carriage AIS as ship-borne navigational equipment on vessels is detailed within chapter V (Safety of Navigation) regulation 19, of the revised SOLAS Convention. The information received from the AIS is displayed on an electronic chart, computer display or compatible radar and the information received can help situational awareness as well as assist in collision avoidance.

The reasons why AIS should not be used as an aid for collision avoidance should be emphasized to the officers.

Long Range Identification and Tracking (LRIT): The purpose of LRIT is to improve maritime safety, security and assist in search and rescue (SAR) operation. The officers should have the knowledge that the data transmitted from the LRIT, which ships are required to transmit LRIT messages. There is no interface between LRIT and AIS. AIS is a broadcast system and data derived through LRIT will be available only to the parties entitled to receive such information; regulatory provisions will include safeguards concerning the confidentiality of data.

SOLAS contracting Governments will be entitled to receive information about ships navigating within a distance not exceeding 1000 nautical miles off their coast.

Voyage Data Recorder (VDR) and Simplified Voyage Data Recorder (S-VDR): The purpose of a voyage data recorder (VDR) and Simplified Voyage Data Recorder (S-VDR) is to maintain and store, in a secure and retrievable form, information concerning the position, movement, physical status, command and control of a vessel over the period leading up to and following an incident having an impact thereon. The officers should know that the information contained in a VDR and S-VDR is made available to both the Administration and the shipowner and this information is for use during any subsequent investigation to identify the cause(s) of the incident. The equipment is so designed that, as far as is practical, it is not possible to tamper with the selection of data being input to the equipment, the data itself nor that which has already been recorded and any attempt to interfere with the integrity of the data or the recording is recorded. The various data items recorded in the VDR and S-VDR should be explained to the officers. The officers should know that the shipowner, in all circumstances and at all times, owns the VDR and its information and in the event of an accident the owner of the ship makes all decoding instructions available as necessary to recover the recorded information and maintains the same.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

Bridge Navigational Watch Alarm System (BNWAS): The carriage requirement of Bridge Navigational Watch Alarm System (BNWAS) is set out by SOLAS chapter V/19 and the requirements will be mandatory for new ships and phased-in for existing ships. The instructors should explain the purpose of BNWAS is to monitor bridge activity and detect operator disability, which could lead to marine accidents and this purpose is achieved by a series of indications and alarms to alert first the OOW and, if he/she is not responding, then to alert the Master or another qualified OOW. The system monitors the awareness of the officer-on-watch (OOW) and automatically alerts the Master or other qualified OOW if for any reason the OOW becomes incapable of performing watch duties. The officers should be able to list and explain the operational sequence of indications and alarms of the system.

Officers should be fully conversant with the limitations of all the equipment.

## 1.6 MAINTAIN SAFE NAVIGATION THROUGH THE USE OF INFORMATION FROM NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS TO ASSIST IN COMMAND DECISION MAKING

*See IMO model courses 1.08, Radar navigation – management level*, *1.22, Ship simulator and bridge teamwork, 1.27, Operational use of electronic chart display and information systems (ECDIS) and STCW reg. 1/12*

This competence requires the trainee to develop the practical ability to use the information from a range of navigation equipment and systems and to make sound command level decisions using this information. Trainees should undertake a range of activities from relatively simple to complex that involve both navigation and anti-collision situations in real time. Appropriate simulators and/or training ships allow realistic situations to be created and the competence of the trainee to be assessed with some validity.

## 1.7 MAINTAIN SAFE NAVIGATION THROUGH THE USE OF ECDIS AND ASSOCIATED NAVIGATION SYSTEMS TO ASSIST COMMAND DECISION MAKING

*See IMO model course 1.27, Operational use of electronic chart display and information systems (ECDIS) and STCW reg. I/12*

The emphasis at management level should be on the trainee utilizing ECDIS and AIS effectively within watchkeeping practice in the typically complex situations where the Master is required to take charge of the bridge watchkeeping. There should also be an emphasis on ensuring that watchkeeping officers set up, maintain and utilize this equipment appropriately and understand the limitations of the systems.

## 1.8 FORECAST WEATHER AND OCEANOGRAPHIC CONDITIONS

### 1.8.1 SYNOPTIC CHARTS AND WEATHER FORECASTING (24 hours)

**Weather forecasting**

The emphasis should be on identifying sources of and obtaining synoptic information and then utilizing this information and the meteorological knowledge gained at operational level



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

to be able to forecast the weather conditions that the vessel is anticipated to experience in the future.

If a facsimile receiver, internet and email facility is available, receiving and interpreting the weather chart of the day should be part of the training process.

**Climatology**

Trainees should have a general idea of the climate of the oceans and the seasonal changes to be expected. The Mariner's Handbook (T30) contains world climatic charts.

1.8.2 CHARACTERISTICS OF VARIOUS WEATHER SYSTEMS (14 hours)

**Tropical revolving storms**

The instructor should make use of drawings of the structure of a tropical storm, graphical representations of temperature, pressure and wind speed, satellite pictures and charts showing actual storm tracks.

Trainees should be fully conversant with the means of avoiding tropical storms, where to find details of radio storm warnings and the information which should be transmitted if the Master has good reason to believe that a tropical storm is developing or exists in the neighbourhood.

**Ice**

There is little coverage of ice in the operational level model course. Trainees therefore need to understand the formation and characteristics of different types of ice and to learn appropriate strategies for navigating the vessel in or near ice. The use of visual aids such as videos and photographs will enhance the ability of trainees to differentiate ice and to relate the learning content to real situations.

Trainees should know where information on ice reports can be found and understand the terms and descriptions used in them. The Marine Observer's Handbook (T23) and The Mariner's Handbook (T30) contain the Ice Nomenclature drawn up by the World Meteorological Organization.

Trainees should also recognize the conditions which may give rise to severe accumulation of ice on the ship.

1.8.3 OCEAN CURRENT SYSTEMS (7 hours)

**Ocean currents**

Trainees should possess sufficient knowledge of ocean currents and sources of information on currents to enable them to select an optimal route for a sea passage and season. As an aid to the instructors, there are: sample Lesson plan for Ocean Current Systems, sample participants handout, sample power point presentation and activities, included in this model course. The instructors may find them useful when preparing for lectures. These samples are given as guidance only to demonstrate the use of extensive research and pedagogy.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Waves**

The dangers of crossing areas of shallow water in heavy weather should be stressed.

If facsimile wave charts of the area are available, trainees should make use of them in weather forecasting.

1.8.4 TIDAL CALCULATIONS (6 hours)

Trainees should review their knowledge of tidal theory and basic calculations from their operational level training and practice. The emphasis at management level should be on more complex secondary port calculations that, where possible, can be integrated into voyage planning tasks.

It is very important that trainees appreciate the meteorological and local conditions that can significantly influence the actual tide level.

## 1.9 RESPOND TO NAVIGATIONAL EMERGENCIES

1.9.1 PRECAUTIONS WHEN BEACHING A SHIP

**Precautions to be taken when beaching a vessel (2 hours)**

Although a gently shelving beach of sand or gravel is ideal, in many cases the urgency of the operation will dictate that the nearest beach is used regardless of the nature of the bottom. Similarly, the state of the tide can seldom be chosen.

A loss of stability similar to that experienced on taking the blocks in dry-dock will occur. If the ship has a large trim or the slope of the bottom is large, a heavy list may develop as the tide falls. The ship will list similarly when one end lifts again on the rising tide. Transfer of ballast or flooding a compartment may be necessary to prevent the list becoming excessive.

Beaching with the ship parallel to the beach may avoid that problem; the ship will settle with a list equal to the slope of the beach. If boats are to be used to transfer passengers or non-essential crew members ashore, the broadside-on position will provide a lee from onshore waves and surf for the boat work.

On the other hand, a ship end-on to the beach with ground tackle laid out to keep, the stern in place would be better able to withstand heavy onshore weather and would be easier to haul off eventually.

1.9.2 ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN IF GROUNDING IS IMMINENT AND AFTER GROUNDING

**Grounding (2 hours)**

Many of the actions to take after beaching a ship apply also to stranding.

When planning an attempt at refloating, consideration should be given to the extent of damage, the height of the tide, the assistance available and whether the ship can be lightened



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

by discharging ballast or cargo. Soundings, taken from a boat, will give an indication of the most favorable direction in which to try to move the ship during refloating.

The release or probable release of oil or other harmful substances should be reported at once to the nearest coast radio station. Where a serious threat of pollution exists, the coastal State involved may intervene in the salvage operations.

### 1.9.4 ACTION TO BE TAKEN IF COLLISION IS IMMINENT, AFTER A COLLISION OR IMPAIRMENT OF THE WATERTIGHT INTEGRITY OF THE HULL

**Collision** **(2 hours)**

The duties of the Master following a collision are set out in the appropriate regulations and annexes.

There may also be national requirements regarding the recording and notification of collision accidents. In any case, full details of the collision, engine and helm orders prior to impact, estimates of the heading and speed at the time of impact and the angle of contact with the other ship should be entered in the logbook for future reference. The trace from the course recorder should be appended to the logbook.

### 1.9.5 ASSESSMENT OF DAMAGE CONTROL (1 hour)

Even a small hole in the shell plating below the waterline will admit water faster than the capacity of bilge pumps to deal with it. A rapid assessment is needed of the tonnage of water in the space, the lost buoyancy and change of trim and the effect of these factors on stability. Cross-flooding may be needed to reduce the list in certain ships, if only to aid abandonment.

The release or probable release of oil or other harmful substances should be reported to the nearest coast radio station at the first opportunity.

### 1.9.6 EMERGENCY STEERING (1 hour)

When a ship in a coastal region or area of high traffic density has become disabled as a result of engine or steering failure which cannot readily be repaired, she should report her situation to the coastal State concerned.

It is unlikely that jury steering can be arranged for a large deeply loaded ship, such as a VLCC or a bulk carrier, which would be effective in conditions of strong wind. Recognizing that, the most prudent course of action would be to call for tug assistance at an early stage, before a dangerous situation has developed.

### 1.9.7 EMERGENCY TOWING ARRANGEMENTS AND TOWING PROCEDURES (2 hours)

Before undertaking a tow, the Master should check that he is permitted to do so by the terms of the charter party or bills of lading. In any case, he should contact the owners for their agreement. They will have to arrange additional insurance.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

Towing for the purpose of saving life is always permitted. For example, towing a disabled vessel away from a lee shore may be the safest way of saving the crew in some circumstances.

The Master should also be satisfied that the towing operation has a reasonable chance of successful completion. He should consider the relative sizes of the ships, the power of the engines, fuel reserves, equipment available and distance to a safe port.

The towing wires used by salvage tugs are much longer than the towing wires carried by merchant ships, which do not have sufficient weight on their own to provide a catenary to absorb shock loadings. To provide the extra weight it is usual to shackle the towing wire to the anchor cable of the towed ship and to walk back the cable sufficiently to keep the towing wire submerged throughout the towing operation.

When starting to tow, the weight should be taken up gradually, the speed being slowly increased until towing speed is reached. Care should be taken to avoid jerking the tow wire on first taking the weight. The towing speed is adjusted so that the tow wire remains submerged. If the tow wire shows signs of clearing the water and straightening, the engine revolutions should be reduced until a catenary has been restored.

A method of slipping the tow in an emergency (such as the foundering of the towed vessel, for example) should be decided and known to all of the watchkeepers.

Disconnecting the tow, particularly in confined waters at a port approach, can be a critical operation and should be planned and agreed between the two vessels. Speed will have to be reduced gradually over a long distance. As the depth of water decreases, the towed ship should shorten the tow by heaving in cable, to prevent the tow line fouling on the bottom. Harbor tugs should be arranged to assist with manoeuvring during disconnection and to take the tow into a berth. Alternatively, both ships may be brought to anchor before disconnecting.

## 1.10 MANOEUVRE AND HANDLE A SHIP IN ALL CONDITIONS

The STCW Convention requires trainees to be able to demonstrate practical competence in performing the manoeuvres stated under this competence in addition to any examination of their knowledge and understanding of principles. This practical competence may be developed and demonstrated in service, in which case the practical elements of actual ship handling may not be included in the training course.

Administrations and training centres need to evaluate whether is is likely that their trainees will get sufficient opportunity to develop their practical ability and to demonstrate competence on board ships in service.

Where this is unlikely, the use of appropriate simulators, manned ship models or training ships will be required. The content below assumes that practical demonstrations will be part of the training course. Under each manoeuvre, trainees should undertake a number of practical exercises ranging from relatively simple to more complex.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 1.10.1 MANOEUVRING AND HANDLING A SHIP IN ALL CONDITIONS

(V3, V4, V5, V6, V7, V8, V9, V10, V11, V12, V13, V14, V15, V16, V17, V18, V19, V30, V31, V32, V33, V98, V140, V142, V152, V168)

**Approaching pilot stations and embarking or disembarking pilots, with due regard to weather, tide, head reach and stopping distances (4 hours)**

This section can be introduced with discussion led by the instructor prior to the trainee undertaking practical exercises. Trainees should be encouraged to contribute, from their own experiences, cases of difficult approaches, problems with embarking a pilot in heavy weather or ice and the slowing of very large ships.

The instructor should impress on trainees that the passage plan should extend to the berth and not finish at the pilot station. The officer in charge of the navigational watch will need the plan to monitor the ship's progress to the berth (T25).

**Handling ship in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters having regard to the effects of current, wind and restricted water on helm response (10 hours)**

The approximate mean squat can be calculated by using formulae. Trainees should be reminded that values obtained from the formula or from squat diagrams are theoretical and that the actual squat and trim of their vessels may differ somewhat (T18, T25, V4, V7).

The variable effect of current, under-keel clearance and bottom topography in restricted waters and the typical effects on vessel handling should be covered in depth before practical exercises are undertaken

**Application of constant rate of turn techniques (3 hours)**

Such techniques may be demonstrated and practised using a radar simulator, ship simulator or training ship. Radar navigation – management level is covered in IMO model course 1.08.

**Manoeuvring in shallow water including the reduction in under-keel clearance caused by squat, rolling and pitching (2 hours)**

Theories on the cause and estimation of squat effects and the impact this may have on ship manoeuvring should be covered. The effect of reduced under-keel clearance on turning ability and on increasing/reducing speed should be introduced.

There continues to be a number of casualties where the dynamic effects of rolling, pitching and changing water levels in high sea and swell lead to grounding. Trainees should be introduced to theories that estimate the static water level that would be required in order to safely transit a shallow where these dynamic effects are anticipated.

**Interaction between passing ships and own ship nearby banks (2 hours)**

Trainees should be able to describe in detail the anticipated effect of interaction with other ships and with the bottom and sides of restricted channels or canals including encounters



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

between ships in restricted channels. They should also be able to explain the causes of these effects.

**Berthing and unberthing under various conditions of wind, tide and current with and without tugs (20 hours)**

Trainees should demonstrate, with the use of models on a large table, how to berth and unberth at given port facilities, under various conditions of wind and current, detailing the helm and engine orders, anchors, mooring lines and instructions to tugs that they would use prior to undertaking practical exercises.

Instructors should also emphasize theory on the magnitude of wind and current force and how it affects the ship during berthing or unberthing. This knowledge will assist a Master, to decide whether the available tugs have to hold the ship against a crosswind or to move the ship against a crosswind. Normally tugs cannot hold a ship against a cross current, as the power, which is necessary for such an operation, is enormous. The class should be asked to evaluate and criticize the actions taken and suggest alternative methods where applicable (V5).

**Ship and tug interaction (3 hours)**

Different types of tugs and the main difference resulting from the location of tug's propulsion and towing point should be pointed out. The dangers related to ship–tug interaction and the precautions that the trainee, when acting as Master, should take is of importance.

**Use of propulsion and manoeuvring systems including various types of rudder (4 hours)**

Various types of rudder and their advantages with regard to ship handling should be pointed out to the trainees. Knowledge on the appropriate use of bow and stern thrusters is also important. Trainees should also have adequate knowledge on the use of rudder cycling and its effectiveness.

**Anchoring (6 hours)**

Exercises in anchoring are particularly suitable for practice with a training vessel where one is available. Trainees should be required to produce a plan for anchoring in a given position and then carry out the plan, acting as a bridge team. Their roles in the bridge team would be rotated in subsequent exercises. Mention should be made of the importance of checking lateral as well as fore-and-aft movement when anchoring very large ships.

**Procedures for anchoring in deep water and in shallow water (1 hour)**

Many ships reportedly have experienced large damage to ships and its ancillary equipment, as the required knowledge on anchoring ships in deep or shallow waters were found inadequate. The procedures and precautions when anchoring in these waters should be explained to the trainees.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Procedures for dry-docking** **(4 hours)**

Managing the stability implications during dry-docking and the practical aspects of both preparing a ship for dry-docking and managing the vessel throughout the dry-dock should be pointed out to trainees.

**Management and handling the ship in heavy weather** **(6 hours)**

Full use should be made of trainees' personal experiences when covering this section. When dealing with methods of keeping a disabled vessel out of a sea trough and lessening lee drift, trainees should be restricted to using materials which are available aboard their ships. The importance of understanding the enormous stresses encountered by the ship in heavy weather conditions is vital. Dangers and precautions to be exercised when the ships experience synchronous rolling/pitching, parametric rolling to be pointed out to the trainees (V5, V8, V9).

**Ability to determine the manoeuvring and propulsion characteristics of common types of ships, with special reference to stopping distances and turning circles at various draughts and speeds** **(3 hours)**

Draw attention to the warning in the manoeuvring booklet and the wheelhouse poster that the performance of the ship may differ from that shown, due to environmental, hull and loading conditions. Also point out that much of the information is estimated; for example, the manoeuvring characteristics in wind. Records of actual behaviour, together with the conditions in which they were observed, form a valuable addition to the manoeuvring booklet. IMO's recommendation, with respect to the turning ability of the ship, that the advance should not exceed 4.5 ship lengths and the tactical diameter should not exceed 5 ship lengths in the turning circle manoeuvre should be pointed out to the trainees. Opportunities for determining characteristics arise, for example, when approaching pilot stations or anchoring to await a tide or berth (R17).

**Practical measures to be taken when navigating in or near ice, or in conditions of ice accumulation on board** **(4 hours)**

The Mariner's Handbook (T30) contains a full treatment of ice conditions, well illustrated with photographs.

## 1.11 OPERATE REMOTE CONTROLS OF PROPULSION PLANT AND ENGINEERING SYSTEMS AND SERVICES

### 1.11.1 OPERATING PRINCIPLES OF MARINE POWER PLANTS (25 hours)

**Marine power plants**

**Diesel engines**

The principles of the working of 2-stroke and 4-stroke diesels should be covered, together with their essential services such as fuel, lubricating and cooling systems. Details of particular makes of engines are not required. Trainees should be aware of the procedures for preparing



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

the engine for use and the change-over from full sea speed to manoeuvring, with the likely times involved. They should also know what is involved in starting and controlling the engine.

The rules regarding the capacity of the starting air reservoir are laid down by the classification societies.

**Steam turbine systems**

The boiler, feed system and turbine should be treated as a single main propulsion system. Trainees should be able to produce schematic drawings of the complete system and explain the purpose of the various parts. Details of particular makes of equipment are not required. Trainees should be aware of those faults which lead to automatic shut-down. The procedures and time taken to raise steam and prepare the engine for manoeuvring and the procedures for controlling a steam turbine engine should be known.

**Propeller and propeller shaft**

The bridge control for controllable-pitch propellers is usually arranged to give about 60 to 70 per cent of engine full speed when set for zero pitch. Movement of the lever forward or aft initially affects the pitch only. Full pitch is usually reached by moving the control lever through half of its travel, further movement increasing the engine revolutions. There may also be a means of adjusting the maximum pitch available. The engine and CPP can be controlled from the machinery control room and facilities may be provided for overriding all remote controls. Standing orders should lay down the procedure for informing the bridge if this has to be done.

Before starting the main engine, the propeller pumps should be running and a check made that control is possible from all control positions. During starting, control will be from the machinery control room. The propeller should be set for zero thrust and a check made that it is all clear to start the propeller turning. After starting, control is transferred to the bridge.

Before letting go or weighing anchor, the officer of the watch should check which position has control, and that it is effective, by making a small movement of the pitch control and observing the result. Before entering harbour or restricted waters, a check should be made on the control of engine speed and propeller pitch while sea room is still available.

Throughout this section instructors should keep in mind that officers should be able to explain the principles of operating and maintaining marine power plants. Officers should be familiar with the correct and commonly used engineering terminology in this context. The officer must have sufficient knowledge to be able to understand and manage the issues – he therefore does not need to have a detailed engineering knowledge. It is important that he understands the consequences of any malfunctioning and the actions to be taken to restore proper operations, or avoid problems if the machinery cannot be restored.

**Bridge control**

Technical details are not required. Trainees should be able to draw block diagrams of the systems, showing the information paths between the various components. The requirements for bridge indicators and alarms and the emergency stop are set out in SOLAS Regulations.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 1.11.2 SHIPS' AUXILIARY MACHINERY (25 hours)

This section deals with machinery and equipment other than the main propulsion, although some of the equipment would be necessary to keep the main engine running; for example, pumps.

Trainees should be able to draw simple line drawings of boilers and heat exchangers. Today, when most ships are equipped with diesel main engines, their use is restricted to providing ship's services. In tankers, the use of steam is important for heating cargo and for the driving of cargo pumps.

Instructors should keep in mind that officers should be able to explain the principles of operating and maintaining auxiliary machinery. Officers should be familiar with the correct and commonly used engineering terminology in this context. The officer must have sufficient knowledge to be able to understand and manage the issues – he therefore does not need a detailed engineering knowledge. It is important that he understands the consequences of any malfunctioning and the actions to be taken to restore proper operations, or avoid problems if the machinery cannot be restored.

**Distillation and fresh-water systems**

The production of fresh water from seawater in sufficient quantities enables a ship to carry a larger deadweight of cargo and ensures a supply of water free from dissolved salts for the boiler feed. The temperature at which flash evaporators work is not high enough to sterilize water for drinking purposes. Evaporators should not be run for the production of drinking water in coastal areas because of the risk of biological contamination. In any case, water from distillers or evaporators must be treated before it is safe to drink.

As an alternative to traditional distillation methods, reverse osmosis process may be used for generating fresh water at sea and should be mentioned.

**Pumps and pumping systems**

Trainees should have a qualitative knowledge of the losses in a pumping system and the characteristic curve for centrifugal pumps. They should also understand net positive suction head and realize that, when it approaches zero, gassing will occur at the pump, leading to cavitation which may cause damage to the impellers of centrifugal pumps.

**Steering gears**

The operation of ram and rotary-vane hydraulic steering gears and how the power required is supplied by variable-delivery pumps should be known. Trainees should also be able to explain how the SOLAS requirements for auxiliary steering and emergency control of steering gear are met. They should also be aware of the requirements for testing the steering gear and having drills in the change-over to auxiliary steering gear. Records of the tests and drills should be entered in the logbook.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Generators, alternators and electrical distribution**

Trainees should have a qualitative understanding of electrical generation and distribution, including the connection between the main and emergency switchboard during normal operation. The treatment of A.C. motors is confined to the induction motor, which is the only type found aboard most ships.

The considerations in loading generators and parallel operations may be covered.

During charging, lead-acid batteries evolve hydrogen, which is easily ignited over a wide range of concentration. The electrolytes of both acid and alkaline batteries are highly corrosive to many materials and to the person. In addition, there is a risk of electric shock from large installations such as the traditional sources of electrical power.

**Refrigeration, air-conditioning and ventilation**

Trainees should be able to sketch a vapour-compression-cycle refrigeration system and explain what happens at the various components. The coefficient of performance is defined as the rate of heat extraction at the evaporator divided by the power used to circulate the refrigerant. It is a measure of the plant efficiency but, since its value is greater than one, the term 'coefficient of performance' is used instead of 'efficiency'. Trainees should deal with refrigerated cargo systems. The arrangements can be considered in three parts: the central primary refrigeration plant, the brine circulating system and the air circulating system for cooling the holds.

Mechanical ventilation systems for ships' holds often incorporate remote-reading dewpoint sensors and drying units for the circulated air to maintain the dewpoint in the hold below the temperature of the cargo and of its steelwork, so as to prevent condensation damage.

**Stabilizers**

The quantity of water and the setting of the control valves of flume stabilizers need to be adjusted to the ship's condition of loading, which determines its natural rolling period.

Adjustment may be necessary after an alteration of course which produces a large change in wave encounter period.

**Sewage treatment plants**

The discharge of untreated sewage into coastal waters is prohibited by some countries and most port authorities. Ships will then either have to retain sewage aboard for subsequent discharge to shore facilities or more than 12 miles from the nearest land, or be equipped with an approved sewage plant producing an effluent which can be discharged anywhere. The latter would require a biological treatment plant. Discharges from an approved chemical treatment plant would be permitted when more than four miles from the nearest land.

**Oily water separators and oil filtering equipment**

The term 'separator', as used in the regulations for preventing pollution by oil, means equipment which reduces the oil content below 100 ppm even if it uses filters to achieve that



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

level. 'Oil filtering equipment' refers to equipment which reduces the oil content to 15 ppm or less.

The approval for an oily water separator includes the pump supplying it. No other pump should be used with it. Even when used correctly, a separator may fail to reduce the oil content to the required limits if the oil is emulsified or the water contains a lot of particulate matter to which the oil adheres.

**Incinerators**

An incinerator can be used to burn residual oil and sludge collected from oil purifiers and the oily water separator. It can also be used for the disposal of sewage sludge and rubbish. Ships fitted with an incinerator may not be dependent on the availability of shore reception facilities.

**Deck machinery**

The requirements for windlasses vary between the classifications societies, but, basically, require that:

- the windlass brakes are able to control the running anchor and cable when letting go;
- the windlass can heave a specified weight of cable and anchor at a specified speed, typically between 4 and 6 times the weight of one anchor at a speed of between 0.12 and 0.2 m/s.

**Hydraulic systems**

The majority of marine hydraulic systems are medium-pressure systems and may be either open- or closed-circuit.

Accumulators damp out fluctuations in pressure which may occur in the pressure line. They may also be used to provide a small store of pressurized fluid which can be used in an emergency. One example is for the closing of watertight doors after power to the hydraulic pump has been lost.

Hydraulic systems also contain non-return valves, to prevent reverse flow, and pressure-control valves, including pressure-relief valves.

Hydraulic steering gear provides an example of a variable-stroke pump acting as controller and power supply.

Dirt or sediment in a system causes abrasion of moving parts and blockage of control valves, leading to a failure of the machinery. Filters are fitted at pump suctions and upstream of control valves. When any part of the system is disconnected for repair or replacement, it is important to cover and seal openings through which dust or water could enter. Hydraulic systems should not be opened up or reassembled when other work in the vicinity is creating dirty conditions.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 1.11.3 GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF MARINE ENGINEERING SYSTEMS (8 hours)

Some of the terms listed in the syllabus may already have been covered in the teaching of Physical Science.

**Marine engineering terms and fuel consumption**

When using the fuel coefficient to estimate fuel requirements for a passage, it should be remembered that the value of the constant depends to some extent on the roughness of the hull.

A ship lying in water of high temperature for some time may attract considerable fouling of the hull and propeller, resulting in increased fuel consumption during the subsequent passages. Generally, performance falls off with time since the previous dry-docking. Clearly, the state of maintenance of the engine also affects fuel consumption.

When it is known that the ship cannot be berthed or is not required before a certain time at the next port, fuel may be saved by reducing speed, to arrive shortly before the required time, rather than proceeding at full speed and waiting at anchor.

**Arrangements necessary for appropriate and effective engineering watches to be maintained for the purpose of safety under normal circumstances and UMS operations.**

Main dangers and sources of risk in an engine room should be pointed out. The importance of and implementation of risk assessment and risk management in an engine room should be highlighted to the trainees.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Master and Chief Mate

# Function 2:
# Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
IMO
PUBLISHING

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Master and Chief Mate

# Function 2: Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level

# INDEX


Page

**Part B2: Course Outline** . . . . . **128**
Timetable
Lectures
Course outline

**Part C2: Detailed Teaching Syllabus** . . . . . **132**
Introduction
Explanation of information contained in the syllabus tables
1.1 Plan and ensure safe loading, stowage, securing, care during the voyage and unloading of cargoes
1.2 Assess reported defects and damage to cargo spaces, hatch covers and ballast tanks and take appropriate action
1.3 Carriage of dangerous goods

**Part D2: Instructor Manual** . . . . . **182**




Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part B2: Course Outline

## Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level

### ■ Timetable

No formal example of a timetable is included in this model course.

Development of a detailed timetable depends on the level of skills of the officers entering the course and the amount of revision work of basic principles that may be required.

Lecturers must develop their own timetable depending on:

- the level of skills of trainees
- the numbers to be trained
- the number of instructors

and normal practices at the training establishment.

Preparation and planning constitute an important factor which makes a major contribution to the effective presentation of any course of instruction.

### ■ Lectures

As far as possible, lectures should be presented within a familiar context and should make use of practical examples. They should be well illustrated with diagrams, photographs and charts where appropriate, and be related to matter learned during seagoing time.

An effective manner of presentation is to develop a technique of giving information and then reinforcing it. For example, first tell the trainees briefly what you are going to present to them; then cover the topic in detail; and, finally, summarize what you have told them. The use of an overhead projector and the distribution of copies of the transparencies as trainees handouts contribute to the learning process.

### ■ Course outline

The tables that follow list the competencies and areas of knowledge, understanding and proficiency, together with the estimated total hours required for lectures and practical exercises. Teaching staff should note that timings are suggestions only and should be adapted to suit individual groups of trainees depending on their experience, ability, equipment and staff available for training.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## Course outline

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|
| **Competence:** | | |
| **2.1 PLAN AND ENSURE SAFE LOADING, STOWAGE, SECURING, CARE DURING VOYAGE AND UNLOADING OF CARGOES** | | |
| 2.1.1 APPLICATION OF INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS CONCERNING THE SAFE HANDLING, STOWAGE, SECURING AND TRANSPORT OF CARGOES | | |
| .1 Plans and actions conform with international regulations | 6 | 6 |
| 2.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY OF CARGOES AND CARGO OPERATIONS | | |
| .1 Draft, trim and stability | 20 | 20 |
| 2.1.3 STABILITY AND TRIM DIAGRAMS AND STRESS-CALCULATING EQUIPMENT | | |
| .1 Shear forces, bending moments and torsional moments | 8 | |
| .2 Compliance with minimum freeboard requirements of the load line regulations | 6 | |
| .3 Use of automatic data-based (ADB) equipment | 2 | |
| .4 Knowledge of loading cargoes and ballasting in order to keep hull stress within acceptable limits | 6 | 22 |
| 2.1.4 STOWAGE AND SECURING OF CARGOES ON-BOARD SHIP, CARGO HANDLING GEAR AND SECURING AND LASHING EQUIPMENT | | |
| .1 Timber deck cargoes | 3 | |
| .2 Procedures for receiving and delivering cargo | 3 | |
| .3 Care of cargo during carriage | 4 | |
| .4 Requirements applicable to cargo handling gear | 4 | |
| .5 Maintenance of cargo gear | 3 | |
| .6 Maintenance of hatch covers | 2 | 19 |
| 2.1.5 LOADING AND UNLOADING OPERATIONS, WITH SPECIAL REGARD TO THE TRANSPORT OF CARGOES IDENTIFIED IN THE CODE OF SAFE PRACTICE FOR CARGO STOWAGE AND SECURING | | |
| .1 Loading, stowage and discharge of heavy weights | 3 | |
| .2 Care of cargo during carriage | 1 | |
| .3 Methods and safeguards when fumigating holds | 2 | 6 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | | | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1.6 | GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF TANKERS AND TANKER OPERATIONS | | | |
| | .1 | Terms and definitions | 1 | |
| | .2 | Contents and application of ISGOTT | 2 | |
| | .3 | Oil tanker operations and related pollution prevention regulations | 3 | |
| | .4 | Chemical tankers | 3 | |
| | .5 | Tank cleaning and control of pollution in chemical tankers | 2 | |
| | .6 | Gas tankers | 3 | |
| | .7 | Cargo operations in gas tankers | 2 | 16 |
| 2.1.7 | KNOWLEDGE OF THE OPERATIONAL AND DESIGN LIMITATIONS OF BULK CARRIERS | | | |
| | .1 | Operational and design limitations of bulk carriers | 3 | |
| | .2 | SOLAS chapter XII Additional safety measures for bulk carriers | 1 | |
| | .3 | CSR Bulk | 1 | 5 |
| 2.1.8 | LOADING, CARE AND UNLOADING OF BULK CARGOES | | | |
| | .1 | Application of all available shipboard data related to loading, care and unloading of bulk cargoes | 5 | |
| | .2 | Code of practice for the safe loading and unloading of bulk carriers (BLU Code) | 1 | 6 |
| 2.1.9 | SAFE CARGO HANDLING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF THE RELEVANT INSTRUMENTS | | | |
| | .1 | Establish procedures for safe cargo handling in accordance with the provisions of the relevant instruments such as:<br>– IMDG Code<br>– IMSBC Code<br>– MARPOL 73/78, Annexes III and V | 3 | 3 |
| 2.1.10 | EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATIONS AND IMPROVING WORKING RELATIONSHIPS | | | |
| | .1 | Basic principles for establishing effective communications and improving working relationships between ship and terminal personnel | 1 | 1 |
| **2.2** | **ASSESS REPORTED DEFECTS AND DAMAGE TO CARGO SPACES, HATCH COVERS AND BALLAST TANKS AND TAKE APPROPRIATE ACTION** | | | |
| 2.2.1 | LIMITATIONS ON STRENGTH OF THE VITAL CONSTRUCTIONAL PARTS OF A STANDARD BULK CARRIER AND INTERPRET GIVEN FIGURES FOR BENDING MOMENTS AND SHEAR FORCES | | 3 | 3 |
| 2.2.2 | METHODS TO AVOID THE DETRIMENTAL EFFECTS ON BULK CARRIERS OF CORROSION, FATIGUE AND INADEQUATE CARGO HANDLING | | 3 | 3 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|
| **2.3 CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS GOODS** | | |
| 2.3.1 INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS, STANDARDS, CODES AND RECOMMENDATIONS ON CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS CARGOES | | |
| .1 International regulations and codes including the International Maritime Dangerous Goods (IMDG) Code and the International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC) Code | 3 | 3 |
| 2.3.2 CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS, HAZARDOUS AND HARMFUL CARGOES; PRECAUTIONS DURING LOADING AND UNLOADING AND CARE DURING THE VOYAGE OF DANGEROUS, HAZARDOUS AND HARMFUL CARGOES | | |
| .1 Dangerous goods in packages | 10 | |
| .2 Solid bulk cargoes | 9 | |
| .3 International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk (International Grain Code) | 7 | 26 |
| **Total for Function 2: Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level** | | **139 hours** |

Teaching staff and Administrations should note that the hours for lectures and exercises are suggestions only as regards sequence and length of time allocated to each objective. These factors may be adapted by lecturers to suit individual groups of trainees depending on their experience, ability, equipment and staff available for teaching.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part C2: Detailed Teaching Syllabus

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>2.1.1 APPLICATION OF INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS CONCERNING SAFE HANDLING, STOWAGE, SECURING AND TRANSPORT OF CARGOES<br>2.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY OF CARGOES AND CARGO OPERATIONS<br>2.1.3 USE OF STABILITY AND TRIM DIAGRAMS AND STRESS-CALCULATING EQUIPMENT INCLUDING AUTOMATIC DATA-BASED EQUIPMENT AND KNOWLEDGE OF LOADING CARGOES AND BALLASTING IN ORDER TO KEEP HULL STRESS WITHIN ACCEPTABLE LIMITS<br>2.1.4 STOWAGE AND SECURING OF CARGOES ON BOARD SHIP, CARGO HANDLING GEAR AND SECURING AND LASHING EQUIPMENT<br>2.1.5 LOADING AND UNLOADING OPERATIONS, WITH SPECIAL REGARD TO THE TRANSPORT OF CARGOES IDENTIFIED IN THE CODE OF SAFE PRACTICE FOR CARGO STOWAGE AND SECURING<br>2.1.6 GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF TANKERS AND TANKER OPERATIONS<br>2.1.7 KNOWLEDGE OF THE OPERATIONAL AND DESIGN LIMITATIONS OF BULK CARRIER<br>2.1.8 LOADING, CARE AND UNLOADING OF BULK CARGOES<br>2.1.9 SAFE CARGO HANDLING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF THE RELEVANT INSTRUMENTS<br>2.1.10 EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATIONS AND IMPROVING WORKING RELATIONSHIPS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 2.1.1 APPLICATION OF INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS CONCERNING SAFE HANDLING, STOWAGE, SECURING AND TRANSPORT OF CARGOES | | R2, R55, R56, R57, R58, R59, R60, R61, R62, R64, R66, R67, R68, R69, R82, R83 |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T15 | | |
| **Teaching aids: A1** | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **1.1 Plans and actions conform with international regulations (6 hours)** | | R1 |
| – plans loading to comply with the Load Line Convention in terms of:<br>– freeboard<br>– seasonal restrictions<br>– zones<br>– statical and dynamic stability requirements<br>– bunker requirements, and considers<br>– expected weather patterns | | |
| – plans loading to comply with the IMO Intact Stability Code | | |
| – plans cargo stowage and carriage in compliance with the Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing | | R2<br>Res. A.714(17) |
| – states that an approved cargo securing manual is required to be carried on board all ships except those engaged solely in the carriage of bulk cargoes | | |
| – lists the information provided in the cargo securing manual | | |
| – uses data from the cargo securing manual to plan securing a range of cargo types | | |
| – lists the certificates required for inspection by port state control officers | | |
| – plans loading and securing to comply with the Code of Practice for the Carriage of Timber Deck Cargoes | | |
| 2.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY OF CARGOES AND CARGO OPERATIONS | | |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T4, T14, T15, T21, T34, B3, B198 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| *Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the stability and trim calculations from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content* | | |
| **2.1 Draught, trim and stability (20 hours)** | | |
| – given the draughts forward, aft and amidships, calculates the draught to use with the deadweight scale, making allowance for trim, deflection and density of the water | | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – given a ship's hydrostatic data, the weight and the intended disposition of cargo, stores, fuel and water, calculates the draughts, allowing for trim, deflection and water density<br>– calculates changes of draught resulting from change in distribution of masses<br>– calculates changes of draught resulting from change in water density<br>– calculates the quantity of cargo to move between given locations to produce a required trim or maximum draught<br>– calculates how to divide a given mass between two given locations to produce a required trim or maximum draught after loading<br>– calculates the locations at which to load a given mass so as to leave the after draught unchanged<br>– given a ship's hydrostatic data and the disposition of cargo, fuel and water, calculates the metacentric height (GM)<br>– calculates the arrival GM from the conditions at departure and the consumption of fuel and water<br>– identifies when the ship will have the worst stability conditions during the passage<br>– calculates the maximum weight which can be loaded at a given height above the keel to ensure a given minimum GM<br>– constructs a GZ curve for a given displacement and KG and checks that the ship meets the minimum intact stability requirements<br>– determines the list resulting from a change in distribution of masses<br>– determines the expected maximum heel during the loading or discharging of a heavy lift with the ship's gear<br>– calculates the increased draught resulting from the heel<br>– plans the loading and movement of cargo and other deadweight items to achieve specified draughts and/or stability conditions in terms of required statical and dynamic stability | |
| 2.1.3 | USE OF STABILITY AND TRIM DIAGRAMS AND STRESS-CALCULATING EQUIPMENT INCLUDING AUTOMATIC DATA-BASED EQUIPMENT AND KNOWLEDGE OF LOADING CARGOES AND BALLASTING IN ORDER TO KEEP HULL STRESS WITHIN ACCEPTABLE LIMITS | |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T4, T14, T15, T21, T34, B3, B198 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **3.1** | **Shear forces, bending moments and torsional moments (8 hours)**<br>– states that the carriage of loading calculators in large ships carrying dry or liquid cargo in bulk is a requirement of the classification societies<br>– states that the maximum permissible values of shear force and bending moment in harbour and at sea are laid down by the classification societies<br>– states that maximum torsional moments are also laid down for some container ships | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – describes the use of typical cargo loading instruments and lists the information obtainable from them<br>– interprets the information regarding stress limits provided to the ship<br>– explains that harbour stress limits should not be exceeded during loading, discharging or ballasting operations and that it is not sufficient just to finish within the limits<br>– explains that sufficient information to arrange for the loading and ballasting of the ship in such a way as to avoid the creation of unacceptable stresses should be on board, unless the Administration considers it unnecessary for that ship<br>– plans the loading and discharge of a ship to ensure that maximum allowable stress limits are not exceeded | |
| **3.2** | **Compliance with the minimum freeboard requirements of the Load Line Regulations (6 hours)**<br>– uses the chart of zones and seasonal areas to determine the load lines which apply for all stages of a particular passage<br>– plans the loading, discharge and consumption of deadweight items to determine the minimum departure freeboards and maximum quantities to load in one or more loading ports to ensure that the vessel is not overloaded at any stage of a voyage through multiple load line zones and seasonal zones | R1, R4, R5 |
| **3.3** | **Use of automatic data-based (ADB) equipment (2 hours)**<br>– provides an understanding of information obtained from ship stress indicators and loading programmes<br>– uses stress indicators and loading programmes in planning for the safe carriage of dry and liquid cargoes<br>– advantages and limitations of analogue and digital stability and loading programmes | |
| **3.4** | **Knowledge of loading cargoes and ballasting in order to keep hull stress within acceptable limits (6 hours)**<br>– explains the importance of devising a cargo stowage plan and loading/unloading plan<br>– states that the officer in charge should always refer to the loading manual to ascertain an appropriate cargo load distribution, satisfying the imposed limits on structural loading<br>– explains the stages of development of a safe cargo loading or unloading plan<br>– explains that in any event if the cargo needs to be distributed differently from that described in the loading manual, calculations must always be made to determine, for any part of the voyage, that still water shear force (SWSF), still water bending moments (SWBM) and local loading limits are not exceeded<br>– explains the reason to keep the hull stress levels below the permissible limits by the greatest possible margin<br>– explains that when making a plan for cargo operations, the officer in charge must consider the ballasting operation, to ensure:<br>– correct synchronization is maintained with the cargo operations<br>– that the de-ballasting/ballasting rate is specially considered against the loading rate and the imposed structural and operational limits<br>– that ballasting and de-ballasting of each pair of symmetrical port and starboard tanks is carried out simultaneously | R64, R65 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains the importance to know the exact pumping rates achieved on board their ship to ascertain and ensure the plans are devised and modified accordingly<br>– plans loading/de-ballasting operations within acceptable stress parameters<br>– plans discharging/ballasting operations within acceptable stress parameters | |
| 2.1.4 | STOWAGE AND SECURING OF CARGOES ON BOARD SHIP, CARGO HANDLING GEAR AND SECURING AND LASHING EQUIPMENT | |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T36, B21, B71, B72, B73, B74, B75, B76, B77, B78, B80, B81, B82, B83, B88, B89, B90, B91, B92, B93, B94, B95, B97, B98, B101, B102, B104, B106, B109, B110, B113, B117, B128, B129, B130, B146, B152, B153, B156, B158, B159, B161, B162, B167, B182, B189, B190, B191, B192, B193, B196, B197, B198, B215, B216, B217 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V60, V86, V170, V172, V173, V174, V175 | | |
| Required performances: | | |
| **4.1** | **Timber deck cargoes (3 hours)** | R57 |
| | – outlines the contents of the Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes with respect to:<br>– stowage of sawn timber, logs, cants and wood pulp<br>– fitting of uprights<br>– lashings and the arrangements for tightening them, including the use of a wiggle wire<br>– states that vibration and movement of the ship in a seaway compacts the stow and slackens the lashings<br>– states that lashings should be inspected regularly and tightened as necessary<br>– states that inspections of lashings should be entered in the log book<br>– explains the dangers of heavy seas breaking aboard and how to minimize that risk<br>– states the action to take if cargo is lost overboard or jettisoned<br>– states the maximum height of cargo permitted on deck in a seasonal winter zone in winter<br>– describes the controlling factors for height of cargo at other times<br>– describes the requirements for fencing, for provision of walk-ways and for access to the top of the cargo<br>– describes the requirements when loading to timber load lines<br>– lists the stability information that should be available to the Master<br>– explains when the worst stability conditions during a voyage are likely to occur<br>– describes the rolling period test for the approximate determination of a ship's stability and the limitations of the method<br>– explains the actions to take in the event of the ship developing an angle of loll<br>– plans the loading and securing of a timber deck cargo | |
| **4.2** | **Procedures for receiving, and delivering cargo (3 hours)** | R1 |
| | – states the period for which the ship is deemed responsible for the cargo under conventions for the carriage of goods and under typical carriage contracts evidenced by bills of lading or charter parties | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that damaged cargo should be rejected or steps taken to ensure that the damage is recorded and endorsed where appropriate on the bill of lading<br>– explains that bills of lading may sometimes still be drawn up from mate's receipts and the importance of endorsing mate's receipts for the condition of goods and packages<br>– describes the endorsement of mate's receipts and/or bills of lading for goods in dispute<br>– describes the endorsement of mate's receipts and/or bills of lading for cargoes where the weight and quality are not known to the ship<br>– explains the actions to take when a clean mate's receipt or bill of lading is demanded for cargo which is not in apparent good condition<br>– explains why letters of indemnity offered in return for clean bills of lading should be refused<br>– describes the documentation which should accompany dangerous goods and is required before loading<br>– states that containers should have their seals and locks in place when loaded<br>– states that, if damage to cargo is suspected, protest should be noted before commencing discharging<br>– explains the procedure for noting protest and extending protest<br>– states that an independent cargo survey should be arranged when cargo damage is suspected or found on opening hatches<br>– states that broken or broached packages should be placed in a locker until the contents can be checked and agreed with a representative of the receiver and a receipt obtained for them<br>– explains how to deal with empty bags or packages, sweepings and other loose goods<br>– states that cargo spaces should be searched at the completion of discharging to prevent the over carriage of cargo<br>– describes the procedure for claiming for damage done to the ship during loading or discharging<br>– explains to whom cargo should be delivered<br>– explains the potential consequences of delivering cargo to the incorrect party or under a letter of indemnity<br>– explains the procedure that should be adopted when requested to deliver cargo against a letter of indemnity | |
| **4.3** | **Care of cargo during carriage (4 hours)**<br>– plans the loading and stowage of a hold or holds using a cargo list and reference books to take into account the carriage requirements of the various cargoes<br>– describes the precautions to avoid crushing and chafing damage and states which cargoes are most liable to be affected<br>– explains how cargo may be damaged by residues of previous cargo, dirty dunnage or leaking fuel oil tanks<br>– describes how cargo can be damaged by dust and the precautions to take when carrying commodities giving rise to dust | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states which cargoes are particularly liable to damage by ship or cargo sweat and explains how to minimize the risk of sweat damage
- explains that any goods containing liquids are liable to leak and describes the stowage required to prevent any leakage damaging other goods
- states that many goods can be spoiled by extremes of temperature
- explains that overheating may occur in cargo stowed against engine-room bulkheads, heated double-bottom tanks and deep tanks carrying heated cargoes
- states that high temperatures also occur on the underside of steel decks exposed to tropical sunshine
- describes how to protect cargoes which must be kept from freezing
- describes the measures to take to prevent pilferage of cargo during loading, discharging and carriage
- describes the damage to cargo which can result from the use of fork-lift trucks and similar machinery in cargo spaces and methods of preventing it

**4.4 Requirements applicable to cargo handling gear (4 hours)**

- outlines the requirements of ILO Convention 152, the Occupational Safety and Health (Dock Work) Convention, 1979, which apply to ships
- defines the terms:
  - competent person
  - responsible person
  - authorized person
  - lifting appliance loose gear
- states that national laws or regulations should prescribe measures to cover, amongst others:
  - safe means of access to ships, holds, staging, equipment and lifting appliances
  - opening and closing of hatches, protection of hatchways and work in holds
  - construction, maintenance and use of lifting and other cargo handling appliances
  - rigging and use of ship's derricks
  - testing, examination, inspection and certification, as appropriate, of lifting appliances, of loose gear (including chains and ropes) and of slings and other lifting devices which form an integral part of the load
  - marking of cargo gear
  - handling different types of cargo
  - dangerous substances and other hazards in the working environment
- describes the requirements for guarding dangerous parts of machinery
- states that machinery includes mechanized hatch covers and lifting appliances
- states the requirements for the marking of beams and portable hatch covers
- states that only an authorized person, preferably a member of the ship's crew, should be permitted to open or close power-operated hatch covers and equipment such as doors in hull, ramps and car decks



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – describes the requirements for fencing of openings<br>– describes the requirements for the testing of lifting appliances and loose gear before they are used for the first time<br>– describes the requirements for periodic thorough examination and inspection of lifting appliances and loose gear<br>– explains what is meant by a thorough examination<br>– describes the records and certificates which should be kept in respect of tests, thorough examinations and inspections of lifting appliances and loose gear<br>– describes the marking of safe working loads required on lifting appliances and loose gear<br>– states that every ship must have a rigging plan and relevant information necessary for the safe rigging of derricks, cranes and accessory gear | |
| **4.5** | **Maintenance of cargo gear (3 hours)**<br>– prepares plans for the inspection of cargo gear<br>– undertakes inspections of cargo gear so that any safety issues associated with machinery, structure, running and standing rigging and associated equipment is identified and addressed before use<br>– maintains the records and plans required for the cargo gear<br>– develops maintenance plans and procedures for the maintenance of machinery, structure, running and standing rigging and associated equipment of cargo gear, including blocks, shackles, wire and fibre ropes<br>– provides instruction to crew and manages the maintenance of cargo gear<br>– states the requirements for the annealing of wrought iron loose gear<br>– describes the precautions to be taken when working aloft for the overhaul of cargo gear | R1 |
| **4.6** | **Maintenance of hatch covers (2 hours)**<br>– states that track ways should be cleaned of loose material before closing hatches<br>– states that the tension of draw chains should be adjusted as required<br>– states that wheels, gears, racks and pinions and other moving parts should be kept lubricated<br>– states that side cleats and cross-joint wedge mechanisms should be kept greased<br>– explains that hydraulic systems should be checked for leakage, especially in tween-decks where leaked fluid may damage cargo<br>– states that drainage channels should be cleaned out and drainage holes checked on weather-deck hatches<br>– describes how to check that compression bars are making complete contact with sealing gaskets<br>– explains that weathertightness may be checked by hose-testing the covers before loading<br>– prepares plans and procedures for the inspection and maintenance of hatch covers | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 2.1.5 | LOADING AND UNLOADING OPERATIONS, WITH SPECIAL REGARD TO THE TRANSPORT OF CARGOES IDENTIFIED IN THE CODE OF SAFE PRACTICE FOR CARGO STOWAGE AND SECURING | R61 |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** B21, B71, B72, B73, B74, B75, B76, B77, B78, B80, B81, B82, B83, B88, B89, B90, B91, B92, B93, B94, B95, B97, B98, B101, B102, B104, B106, B109, B110, B113, B117, B128, B129, B130, B146, B152, B153, B156, B158, B159, B161, B162, B167, B182, B189, B190, B191, B192, B193, B196, B197, B198, B215, B216, B217 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V53, V57, V58, V59, V69, V70, V71, V72, V74, V75, V76 | | |
| Required performances: | | |
| **5.1** | **Loading, stowage and discharge of heavy weights (3 hours)** | |
| | – explains how a load should be spread over an area of deck or tank top by the use of dunnage to avoid heavy point loading between beams and floors | |
| | – states that special supports or cradles will need to be built for awkwardly shaped lifts | |
| | – explains the use of shoring in a tween-deck to spread the load over a larger part of the ship's structure | |
| | – states that the ship's stability should be checked to ensure that the resulting list will be acceptable | |
| | – states that the weight of the lifting gear should be included in the weight of the lift, both for stability calculations and during consideration of safe working loads | |
| | – explains why double-bottom tanks should be full or empty and the ship upright before starting to load or to discharge | |
| | – states that additional stays may need setting up to a mast or kingpost | |
| | – states that only experienced winch drivers should be allowed to handle heavy lifts | |
| | – states that all movements should be controlled and steady, avoiding rapid stops and starts | |
| | – describes methods of securing heavy lifts in the hold or on deck | |
| **5.2** | **Care of cargo during carriage (1 hour)** | R1 |
| | – outlines the content of the Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing | R66, R69, R60, R61 |
| | – describes how to stow and secure containers on deck on vessels which are not specially designed and fitted for the purpose of carrying containers | |
| | – describes the stowage and securing of containers and other cargo units in ships other than cellular container ships | |
| | – describes the contents of the cargo securing manual and its use | |
| | – lists the elements to be considered by the Master when accepting cargo units or vehicles for shipment | |
| | – states that cargo spaces should be regularly inspected to ensure that the cargo, cargo units and vehicles remain safely secured throughout the voyage | |
| | – describes the stowage and securing of road vehicles on ro-ro ships | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – describes recommended methods for the safe stowage and securing of:<br>– portable tanks<br>– portable receptacles<br>– wheel-based (rolling) cargoes<br>– coiled sheet steel<br>– heavy metal products<br>– anchor chains<br>– metal scrap in bulk<br>– flexible intermediate bulk containers<br>– unit loads<br>– summarizes the guidelines for the under-deck stowage of logs<br>– describes actions which may be taken in heavy weather to reduce stresses on securing arrangements induced by excessive accelerations<br>– describes actions which may be taken once cargo has shifted | |
| **5.3** | **Methods and safeguards when Fumigating Holds (2 hours)**<br>– explains recommendations given in MSC.1/Circ.1264 – Recommendations on the Safe Use of Pesticides in Ships Applicable to the Fumigation of Cargo Holds, contained in the added supplement of the IMSBC Code<br>– explains the reasons for the control of pests<br>– states that the control of rodents is required by the International Health Regulations<br>– describes the methods for the prevention of insect infestation and states the areas to which particular attention should be given<br>– explains how contact insecticides in the form of sprays, smokes or lacquers may be used by the crew for dealing with local infestation<br>– states that all persons not directly involved in the application should be evacuated from the areas being treated for a period not less than that recommended by the manufacturer of the pesticide<br>– states that extensive or hazardous treatments, including fumigation and spraying near human or animal food, should only be undertaken by expert operators<br>– states that a fumigator-in-charge should be designated by the fumigation company or appropriate authority<br>– lists the information about the fumigation which should be supplied to the Master<br>– states that fumigation of empty cargo spaces should always be carried out in port<br>– states that crew should remain ashore until the ship is certified gas-free, in writing, by the fumigator-in-charge<br>– states that a watchman should be posted to prevent unauthorized boarding and warning notices should be displayed<br>– lists the precautions to be taken if essential crew members are permitted to return before aeration (ventilation) of the ship | R1, R56, R19 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that entry to spaces under fumigation should never take place except in case of extreme urgency and lists the precautions to be taken if entry is imperative
- states that fumigation in transit should only be carried out in ships approved for such process by the flag State Administration and that the application should be with the agreement of the port State Administration
- states that fumigation in transit may be:
  - treatment continued during the voyage in a sealed space in which no aeration has taken place before sailing
  - continuation of in-port fumigation where some aeration has taken place but clearance cannot be issued because of residual gas and the cargo space has been re-sealed before sailing
- states that precautions are the same in both cases
- states that at least two members of the crew, including one officer, who have received appropriate training, should be designated as the trained representative of the Master responsible for ensuring safe conditions after the fumigator-in-charge has handed over that responsibility to the Master
- states that the trained representative should brief the crew before a fumigation
- lists the training which the designated representatives should have
- lists the items which the ship should carry
- describes the procedures for the fumigation and the handing over of responsibility from the fumigator in-charge to the Master
- describes the safety checks on gas concentration that should be made throughout the voyage and states that the readings should be entered in the logbook
- describes the procedures to follow prior to and on arrival at the discharging port
- describes the precautions to be taken during the discharge of cargo until the ship is certified free of fumigants
- describes the procedures for the carriage of fumigated freight containers, barges and transport units that are loaded after fumigation without ventilation
- states that the Master should be informed prior to loading such freight containers, barges and transport units and that they should be identified with suitable warning labels showing the identity of the fumigant and the date and time of fumigation
- describes the methods which may be used for the control of rodents
- describes the use of baits by the ship's crew and the precautions to observe
- explains that the use of pesticides is regulated by Governments, and their use may be limited by the regulations and requirements of:
  - the country where the cargo is loaded or treated
  - the country of destination
  - the country of registration of the ship
- describes the use of pesticides by the ship's crew and the precautions to observe
- describes the measures to be taken if clothing becomes contaminated



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that, if contact insecticides are to be applied to grain during loading, the Master should be provided with written instructions on the type and amount of insecticide to be used and on the precautions to be taken<br>– states the actions to be taken in the event of exposure to insecticides resulting in illness | |
| | 2.1.6 GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF TANKERS AND TANKER OPERATIONS<br>*Note that this section is retained in this model course as it relates more to tanker operations than the safety aspects of tankers covered in STCW 2010 chapter V. This may need to be reviewed after the revision of the model courses for basic and advanced tanker operations is completed.*<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T14, T19, B81, B82, B83, B90, B91, B92, B93, B94, B97, B98, B100, B101, B102, B104, B106, B109, B110, B113, B117, B152, B153, B156, B157, B158, B159, B161, B162, B167, B189, B190, B191, B192, B196, B197, B198, B203, B215, B216, B217<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V50, V51, V52, V54, V55, V56, V61, V62, V63, V64, V65, V66, V68, V73, V78, V83, V84, V129, V137, V138, V174, V175<br>*Required performances: Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the basic knowledge of tankers and tanker operations from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*<br>**6.1 Terms and definitions (1 hour)**<br>– defines petroleum as crude oil and liquid hydrocarbon products derived from it<br>– states that petroleum gases, principally methane, are extracted from crude oils before shipment<br>– explains that ‘spiked crude’ has additional petroleum gas, usually butane, dissolved in it before shipment<br>– states that ‘sour crude’ contains appreciable amounts of hydrogen sulphide or organic sulphur compounds<br>– states that products derived from crude oil include naphtha (gasolines), kerosene, gas oil, diesel oils, lubricating oils, waxes and residual oils such as fuel oil and bitumen<br>– explains that vapour pressure of any liquid increases with increasing temperature<br>– defines Reid Vapour Pressure (RVP)<br>– explains why the pressure in a tank is not necessarily the same as the RVP of the oil it contains, even at the standard temperature<br>– states that the flashpoint of a liquid is the lowest temperature at which it gives off sufficient gas to form a flammable mixture in a flashpoint apparatus<br>– explains why flashpoint cannot be used as an absolute measure of safety<br>– states that ‘flammable’ means ‘capable of being ignited and of burning’ | R70 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – defines 'upper flammable limit', 'lower flammable limit' and 'flammable range' and states approximate values for petroleum products<br>– defines the auto-ignition temperature as the temperature at which a flammable material will ignite without initiation by a spark or flame and will continue to burn<br>– describes the viscosity of a fluid as a measure of its resistance to flow<br>– states that viscosity increases as the temperature decreases<br>– defines 'pour point' as the lowest temperature at which an oil is observed to flow<br>– appreciates that crude carriers in particular have significant residues in tanks which must be accounted for in order to calculate the cargo loaded<br>– calculates the volume of dry residue as a uniform layer on the tank bottom<br>– calculates the volume of liquid residues as a wedge on the tank bottom<br>– knows the limitation of application of wedge calculation | |
| **6.2** | **Contents and application of the International Safety Guide for Oil Tankers and Terminals (ISGOTT) (2 hours)**<br>– explains that ISGOTT provides operational advice to directly assist personnel involved in tanker and terminal operations, including guidance on, and examples of, certain aspects of tanker and terminal operations and how they may be managed<br>– identifies the contents of ISGOTT<br>– states that terminal, local or national regulations may also be applicable and should be known by those concerned<br>– outlines the general precautions to be taken on tankers regarding:<br>– smoking, matches and cigarette lighters<br>– naked lights<br>– the galley<br>– electrical equipment<br>– use of tools<br>– entry to enclosed spaces and pump-rooms<br>– lists the information which should be exchanged between the ship and the terminal before arrival<br>– states that safety procedures are agreed between the tanker and the terminal and include:<br>– means of summoning emergency services<br>– availability and use of firefighting and other emergency equipment<br>– actions to be taken in case of fire or other emergency<br>– emergency evacuation of the berth<br>– states that firefighting equipment should be ready for immediate use<br>– states that main engines and other equipment essential for manoeuvring should be ready for use at short notice and the written agreement of the terminal and port authority should be obtained for any work or repairs which would immobilize the ship<br>– states that detailed loading or discharging plans are agreed between the ship and the terminal | R1, R28 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that safety measures against pollution and actions to take in case of an accident are agreed before transfer of cargo commences<br>– states that, before starting cargo transfer, the responsible officer and the terminal representative must formally agree that they are ready to do so safely<br>– states that the terminal should be notified of the intention to use crude oil washing (COW) at least 24 hours in advance<br>– explains that tanks should be maintained in an inert condition throughout all operations except when entry to tanks for inspection or repair is necessary<br>– explains that the inert gas should have an oxygen content not exceeding 5% by volume<br>– states that the oxygen content of cargo tanks should not exceed 8% by volume<br>– explains that the inert-gas plant will be used to:<br>  – inert empty cargo tanks<br>  – supply inert gas during cargo discharging, deballasting, crude oil washing and tank cleaning<br>  – purge tanks prior to gas-freeing<br>  – top-up the pressure when necessary during a voyage<br>– explains that, in the event of a failure of the inert gas system, discharge of cargo or ballast or tank cleaning should be stopped, to prevent air being drawn into the tanks, and operations should only be resumed when a supply of inert gas has been restored<br>– describes the hold and tank arrangements of combination carriers<br>– describes the safety aspects relating to the operation of double hull tankers<br>– outlines the change-over from oil to dry bulk cargo and from dry bulk cargo to oil | |
| **6.3** | **Oil tanker operations and related pollution prevention regulations (3 hours)**<br>– defines ‘segregated ballast’, ‘clean ballast, ‘dirty ballast’, ‘slop tank’<br>– briefly describes an inert gas system (IGS) and sketches the distribution of inert gas to tanks<br>– explains the reasons for ballasting<br>– states that the capacity and arrangement of segregated ballast tanks is intended to provide sufficient weight, to provide a satisfactory trim and to ensure full immersion of the propeller for normal conditions of sea passages<br>– states that on rare occasions weather conditions may be so severe that additional ballast is needed for the safety of the ship<br>– states that in crude oil tankers equipped with COW the additional ballast would be carried in tanks that have been washed with crude oil<br>– states that the additional ballast must be treated as dirty ballast<br>– explains why a ship may have only clean or segregated ballast on board upon arrival at a loading port<br>– states the criteria for the discharge of oil from cargo-tank areas of oil tankers<br>– outlines the procedures for changing ballast at sea<br>– states that, before loading clean ballast, cargo pumps and lines to be used are flushed with clean water into a dirty ballast or slop tank | R1, R28 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- describes how to dispose of dirty ballast
- describes how to decant the water contents of the slop tank
- states that a final flushing of cargo pumps and lines to be used for discharge of clean ballast is made to the sea through the oil monitoring and control system
- explains that the operation of discharging dirty ballast, decanting the slop tanks and flushing lines must be done when more than 50 nautical miles from the nearest land and outside a special area
- states that only segregated or clean ballast may be discharged within 50 nautical miles of land or inside a special area
- explains the reasons for tank cleaning
- briefly describes the use of fixed and portable machines for tank cleaning
- describes the use of slop tanks during tank cleaning
- states that an inert atmosphere should be maintained in tanks during tank cleaning in ships fitted with IGS
- briefly describes crude oil washing and the reasons for requiring it in crude oil tankers of 20000 dwt and above
- states that crude oil washing can only be carried out with fixed washing machines in inerted tanks
- states that the oil residues in the slop tank resulting from tank cleaning and disposal of dirty ballast may be:
  - pumped ashore at the loading terminal
  - retained on board and segregated from the next cargo
  - retained on board and the new cargo loaded on top of them
- states that the process of tank cleaning, changing ballast, decanting the water from slop tanks and loading the next cargo over the retained oil is known as the load-on-top procedure
- states that details of cargo operations, ballasting and deballasting, tank cleaning, discharge of water from slop tanks and disposal of residues are entered in the ship's Oil Record Book
- defines gas-freeing as the replacement of hydrocarbon vapours or inert gas by air
- lists the reasons for gas-freeing
- explains why inert gas is used to purge the tanks of hydrocarbon vapours before introducing air on suitably equipped ships
- states that a mechanical fixed system is used or portable fans are used
- states that checks are made during gas-freeing with combustible-gas indicators, oxygen meters and toxic-gas detectors
- states that the supply of inert gas to the tank is shut off
- explains the need to maintain ventilation and to check the atmosphere frequently when persons are working in a tank
- appreciates that the change of volume with temperature of oils is not linear
- states that cargo calculation is carried out as if the oil were at a standard temperature
- understands that the volume of the oil must be corrected from its actual temperature when measured to the standard temperature



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that the cargo calculation is carried out as if the density of the oil was that at the standard temperature
- explains that the density of oil must be corrected from its actual density to that at the standard temperature
- appreciates that different types of oils have different coefficients of expansion and that there are separate Petroleum Measurement Tables for Crude Oils, Products and Lubricating Oils
- understands the difference between mass and weight in air and that one or the other may be required by different administrations

**6.4 Chemical tankers (3 hours)**

- states that modern chemical tankers have evolved from oil product tankers to take account of special carriage requirements and associated hazards
- explains that dedicated service usually means that the tanker is designed for the carriage of a particular type of chemical and transports the same type of cargo on each voyage
- explains that a chemical tanker engaged in parcel trade moves a variety of relatively small lots of chemicals between a number of ports
- lists the most important of the rules governing chemical tankers as:
  - international rules and regulations
  - national rules and regulations
  - classification society rules
- states that the sea transport of liquid chemicals in bulk is internationally regulated, as regards safety and pollution aspects, through Conventions adopted by the International Maritime Organization (IMO)
- explains that the Convention requirements are supplemented by recommendations, specifications and Codes adopted by IMO
- states that the IMO Conventions covering the carriage of chemicals in bulk are:
  - the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended, Chapter VII
  - the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the 1978 Protocol (MARPOL 73/78), as amended, Annex II
- states that the most important Codes and standards covering the transport of liquid chemicals are:
  - the Bulk Chemical Codes
  - Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (BCH Code)
  - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC) Code
  - Standards for Procedures and Arrangements for the discharge of Noxious Liquid Substances (P and A Standards)
- defines a chemical tanker as a cargo ship constructed or adapted and used for the carriage in bulk of any liquid product listed in Chapter 17 of the IBC Code
- explains that products are included in the list in Chapter 17 because of their safety hazards or because of their pollution hazards or both



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that safety hazards may be one or more of the following:
  - fire hazard in excess of that of petroleum products
  - toxicity
  - corrosivity
  - reactivity with water, air or other chemicals or self-reaction (polymerization, decomposition)
- states that, in addition to the survey requirements for any ship, chemical tankers must undergo surveys of the cargo-containment and handling arrangements for the issue of an International Certificate Fitness for the Carriage of Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk
- explains that the Bulk Chemical Codes divide tankers into three ship types, Type 1, Type 2 and Type 3, which reflect the hazard ratings of the cargoes which may be carried
- states that a Type 1 ship is intended for the transportation of products considered to present the greatest overall hazards and Type 2 or Type 3 for products of progressively lesser hazards
- states that the division into ship types is based on the ship's capability to survive specified damage caused by collision or stranding and the location of the cargo tanks in relation to such damage
- illustrates, by means of sketches, the location of tanks for each type of ship
- explains the following descriptions of tanks:
  - independent
  - integral
  - gravity
  - pressure
- states that all materials used for tank construction and associated piping, valves and pumps must be resistant to the cargo carried
- states that some ships have stainless-steel tanks for the carriage of cargoes which cannot be contained in mild steel
- explains that mild-steel tanks are normally coated, to protect cargoes from contamination by steel and to make cleaning, gas-freeing and inspection easier
- states that no single coating is suitable for all cargoes and that the coating manufacturers compatibility data must be used when planning a cargo
- explains that cofferdams and other void spaces may be included in the cargo-tank area to provide segregation of groups of tanks
- illustrates typical tank arrangements by means of simple sketches
- states that the heating medium may be steam, water or thermal oils
- explains that the heating system may use coils fitted inside the tank or a heat exchanger placed outside the tank
- describes, with the aid of a drawing, a cargo heating system that uses a heat exchanger placed outside the tank
- states that there is suitable protective clothing on board which must be worn by all personnel engaged in loading or discharging operations
- states that, for certain cargoes, there must be respiratory and eye-protection equipment for every person on board for emergency escape



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that equipment for evaluation of atmospheres in tanks and other enclosed spaces is provided for
  - detection of flammable gases
  - measurement of oxygen content
  - measurement of concentration of toxic gas
- describes how to use an absorption tube gas detector for measuring the concentration of a gas
- explains what is meant by:
  - the threshold limit value (TLV) of a product
  - the odour threshold
- states that the atmosphere in tanks and enclosed spaces must be considered dangerous unless appropriate checks prove otherwise
- states that information about cargoes to be handled is essential to the safety of the vessel and crew
- states that information for each product may be found on cargo data sheets contained in safety guides or provided by the manufacturer or shipper
- states that, if sufficient information necessary for the safe handling and carriage of a cargo is not available, the cargo must not be loaded
- states that information necessary for the safe carriage of a cargo includes:
  - a full description of the physical and chemical properties, including reactivity
  - necessary for its safe containment
  - action to take in the event of spills or leaks
  - countermeasures against accidental personal contact
  - firefighting procedures and firefighting media
  - procedures for cargo transfer, tank cleaning, gas-freeing and ballasting
  - details of the stabilizer or inhibitor added to those cargoes, that require one (on the manufacturer's certificate, in the absence of which the cargo should be refused)
  - First Aid procedures, including the use of specific antidotes for poisons
- states that tanks are normally subject to thorough inspection and testing for cleanliness before loading
- explains, with the aid of a simple drawing, how cargo is routed from the manifold to tanks on a chemical tanker with separate lines for each tank
- explains, with the aid of a simple drawing, a 'closed circuit' loading operation using a vapour-return line
- states that samples are taken from the lines and tanks during loading for purposes of quality control
- states that visual and audible high-level alarms and a tank overflow control system are required for many chemicals
- states that personnel involved in unloading should check the information in the relevant data sheets and take all necessary precautions, including the wearing of appropriate protective clothing
- states that, prior to discharging, samples from tanks and lines are analysed to check if the product has been contaminated on board during the passage



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– explains, with the aid of a simple drawing, how cargo is routed from tank to the manifold on a tanker with deepwell pumps and separate lines from each tank
– states that, in tanks containing cargoes that present a major fire hazard, inert gas or nitrogen is used to maintain a small positive pressure during unloading, to prevent air from entering the tanks

**6.5 Tank cleaning and control of pollution in chemical tankers (2 hours)**

– states that different cargoes require different tank-cleaning procedures
– states that most tank cleaning can be done with hot or cold seawater or fresh water, or by ventilation alone, although a few cargoes require special solvents
– states that fixed or portable tank-washing machines are used
– lists phases in a tank-cleaning operation as:
  – prewash
  – main wash
  – fresh water rinse
  – gas-freeing
  – drying
  – inspection and testing
– explains the use of slop tanks to hold cargo residues and tank washings
– explains, with the aid of a simple drawing, the cycle of a tank-washing system from the seawater inlet to the slop tank
– states that Annex II of the MARPOL 73/78 Convention contains regulations for the control of pollution by noxious liquid cargoes carried in bulk or tank washings from such cargoes
– states that as per the amendments of Annex II of MARPOL, which entered into force on 1 January 2007, a revised annex a new four-category pollution category system for noxious liquid substances; the previous A, B, C and D category system has become X,Y, Z and OS.
– states that every chemical tanker is required to have a Certificate of Fitness (CoF) indicating that it is certified to carry certain products. The issuance of a CoF will also require a revised Procedures and Arrangements (P and A) Manual.
– states that each ship which is certified for the carriage of noxious liquid substances in bulk must be provided with a Procedures and Arrangements (P and A) Manual that has been approved by the Administration and a Cargo Record Book
– states that the Master must ensure that no discharges into the sea of cargo residues or residue/water mixtures containing substances of Category X, Y, Z or OS take place unless they are made in full compliance with the P and A Manual
– states that carrying out operations in accordance with the ship's P and A Manual ensures that the pollution regulations are complied with



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that pollution prevention procedures during cargo transfer, ballasting and tank cleaning should include keeping a watch on:
  - levels in cargo, slop or ballast tanks
  - hoses or loading arms
  - pumps, valves, gaskets, connections and hatches
  - spill pans and scuppers
  - alarms and instrumentation
  - coordination of operational signals
  - water around vessel
- states that personnel on watch should be present at all times during operations and regularly carry out the inspections mentioned in the above
- states that entries should be made in the Cargo Record Book, on a tank-to-tank basis, of:
  - loading
  - internal transfer of cargo
  - unloading
  - mandatory prewash in accordance with P and A Manual
  - cleaning of cargo tanks
  - discharge into the sea of tank washings
  - ballasting of cargo tanks
  - discharge of ballast water from cargo tanks
  - accidental or other exceptional discharge control by authorized surveyors

**6.6 Gas tankers (3 hours)**

- states that the transport by sea of liquid gases in bulk is internationally regulated with regard to safety, through standards laid down by IMO
- states that chapter VII of the IMO International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended, makes the provisions of the International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Liquefied Gases in Bulk (IGC Code) mandatory
- states that a liquefied gas is the liquid form of a substance that at normal atmospheric temperatures and pressures would be a gas
- states that liquefied gas products transported by gas tankers are listed in chapter 19 of the IGC Code
- states that some of those substances are also covered by the IBC Code
- divides gas cargoes into four groups as:
  - liquefied natural gas (LNG)
  - liquefied petroleum gas (LPG)
  - liquefied ethylene gas (LEG)
  - chemical gases
- states that LNG is natural gas from which impurities have been removed, and consists mainly of methane
- states that LPG is the common name for petroleum gases consisting mainly of butane and propane



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- lists chlorine, ammonia and vinyl chloride monomer as examples of chemical gases
- states that, in addition to the surveys required for all ships, gas tankers must undergo surveys of the cargo containment equipment and cargo handling arrangements for the issue of an International Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk
- states that the Certificate of Fitness lists the cargoes which may be carried by the ship and may also stipulate conditions for carriage
- explains the following terms used in the IGC Code:
  - boiling point
  - cargo area
  - cargo containment system
  - gas carrier
  - gas-dangerous space or zone
  - gas-safe space
  - hold space
  - interbarrier space
  - MAR VS
  - primary barrier
  - secondary barrier tank dome
- explains that the IGC divides ships into four types, 1G, 2G, 2PG and 3G
- states that a Type 1G ship is intended for the transportation of products considered to present the greatest overall hazard and Types 2G, 2PG and 3G for products of progressively lesser hazards
- states that the division into ship types is based on the ship's capability to survive specified damage caused by collision or stranding and the location of the cargo tanks in relation to such damage
- describes, in simple terms:
  - integral tank
  - membrane tank
  - semi-membrane tank
  - independent tank
  - internally insulated tank
- explains, in simple terms, the division of independent tanks into:
  - Type A, generally a self-supporting prismatic tank
  - Type B, generally a self-supporting spherical tank
  - Type C, generally a self-supporting cylindrical pressure tank
- states that a cargo tank has shut off valves located as close to the tank as possible for all liquid and vapour connections except for safety relief valves
- states that regulations require remotely operated emergency shutdown (ESD) valves in the cargo piping system
- states that the operation of the ESD system also stops pumps and compressors
- states that all cargo tanks must be provided with a pressure-relief system



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that all equipment and piping which can be isolated when full of liquid must be provided with a pressure-relief system
- states that cargo pumps are usually centrifugal, either deepwell pumps or submerged electric pumps, in the tanks with deck-mounted booster pumps, if required
- describes the uses of cargo heaters and vaporizers
- explains the effect of transfer of heat to the cargo on cargo temperature and tank pressure
- states that, except for fully pressurized vessels, means for controlling the pressure must be provided
- states that pressure in cargo tanks may be controlled by:
  - insulation of tanks, to reduce heat transfer
  - leading cargo boil-off to the ship's boilers or main engine as fuel (ONLY with LNG)
  - leading cargo boil-off to the ship's reliquefaction plant, where vapour is liquefied and returned to the tank
  - cooling the liquid in a heat exchanger (indirect system)
- describes the single-stage direct liquefaction cycle
- states that the indirect system is only used for those products which cannot be compressed for safety reasons
- states that inert gas is used to inert hold spaces and inter barrier spaces and to purge tanks
- states that most gas tankers are fined with an inert-gas generator
- states that the liquid level in cargo tanks is commonly measured by means of float gauges
- states that each cargo tank is fitted with a high-level alarm and automatic shutoff valves to prevent overflow
- states that each cargo tank is fitted with means for indicating the temperature and pressure
- explains how cargo leakage through the primary barrier can be detected
- states that gas tankers have a fixed gas-detection system that gives audible and visual alarms of the accumulation of gas in enclosed spaces such as cargo pump-rooms, compressor rooms, hold spaces and interbarrier spaces
- describes briefly the arrangements for firefighting on deck in the cargo area
- describes the water-spray system for ships carrying flammable or toxic products

**6.7 Cargo operations in gas tankers (2 hours)**

- states that information for each product may be found on cargo data sheets contained in safety guides or obtained from the shipper



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that information needed before loading includes:
  - a full description of the physical and chemical properties that are necessary for the safe containment of the cargo
  - action to be taken in the event of spills or leaks
  - counter-measures against accidental personal contact
  - firefighting procedures and firefighting media
  - procedures for cargo transfer, gas-freeing, ballasting, tank cleaning and changing cargoes
  - special equipment for particular cargoes
  - minimum temperatures of the inner hull steel
  - emergency procedures
- states that products that react when mixed should only be loaded if the complete cargo systems are separated
- states that personnel should be made aware of the hazards and be required to use the appropriate protective equipment provided
- states that the Master should ensure proper liaison between the ship and the terminal before and throughout cargo-transfer operations
- describes briefly the following cargo operations:
  - drying
  - inerting
  - purging
  - cooling down
  - loading
  - cargo conditioning on passage
  - discharging
  - changing cargoes
  - gas-freeing
  - preparing for tank inspection
- states that all operations involving cargo, ballast and bunkers should be carried out in accordance with the applicable international and local pollution regulations
- states that some gas cargoes are subject to the regulations of Annex II of MARPOL 73/78
- explains that a gas tanker requires an International Pollution Prevention Certificate for the Carriage of Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk (NLS Certificate) to carry such products
- states that such cargoes must be handled in accordance with the Procedures and Arrangements Manual
- understands that the mass of vapour present in the ullage space is included in the calculation of liquefied gases
- calculates the vapour mass



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

2.1.7 KNOWLEDGE OF THE OPERATIONAL AND DESIGN LIMITATIONS OF BULK CARRIERS

R56, R64

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T35, B71, B72, B73, B74, B76, B77, B78, B88, B89, B95, B104, B106, B109, B110, B113, B117, B128, B129, B130, B146, B182, B193, B198

**Teaching aids:** A1, V59, V172

Required performances:

**7.1 Operational and design limitations of bulk carriers (3 hours)**

- explains that the problems that are generally considered to be associated with bulk carriers includes, but is not limited to:
  - high density cargoes, leading to loss of buoyancy or structural failure, if holds are flooded in the loaded condition
  - high loading rate, leading to possible loss of control of load condition, with consequent high stresses
  - vulnerability to internal damage during cargo loading and discharging operations, leading to protective coating damage, accelerated corrosion, and local structural failure
  - low freeboard, leading to high green sea loads on deck structures
  - vulnerability to flooding of forward holds
  - rapid corrosion caused by corrosive cargo
  - minor damage to single sided ship structures or hatch covers can lead to hold flooding
- explains that the nature of bulk cargoes can give rise to a number of problems
- explains that cargoes such as coal produces gas and acidic conditions, high density cargoes produce large void spaces, and other cargoes can produce stability problems due to shifting or liquefaction
- explains that loaded bulk carriers tend to have a low freeboard making forward hatches vulnerable to heavy seas
- explains that a single hold flooding on a bulk carrier, particularly when loaded with high density cargoes, can have a severe adverse effect on stability and hull stresses
- explains that the corrosive effects of some cargoes accelerate the rate of deterioration of internal structures
- describes that ships can be more heavily stressed during ballast passage compared to loaded passage because the use of one or two ballast tanks leads to uneven weight distribution along the hull
- states that hold cleaning, ballasting at sea and ballast exchange carried out at sea are vulnerable aspects of a ballast voyage for a bulk carrier
- describes that improper cleaning during hold cleaning leads to accelerated corrosion and structural faults going unnoticed
- states that additional hull stresses due to redistribution of ballast are imposed on the ship carrying out ballasting at sea and ballast water exchange which is required for operational and environmental reasons
- explains that there is also a possibility of hull damage from ‘sloshing’ when ballasting at sea
- states that this is also one of the reasons why some ships have been fitted with hull stress monitoring systems



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains why at shallow drafts ships in ballast are vulnerable to slamming with the consequent risk of bottom damage<br>– explains why loading operation of a bulk carrier has been identified as an area of operations that can have immediate and long term effects on the structural integrity of the ship<br>– describes that loading of bulk carriers requires the careful consideration of the loads imparted to the ship structure<br>– explains that high density cargoes bring high local stresses, particularly in shear, if the vessel is block loaded and can also cause local damage and fatigue when being loaded<br>– explains that loading at excessive speeds can cause high local stresses<br>– describes that high loading rates make it difficult to monitor the amount of cargo being loaded<br>– explains that continued over stressing has a cumulative effect with respect to fatigue<br>– explains that discharging the cargoes causes similar problems to that of loading<br>– describes that in addition to the problems associated with discharging, mechanical grabs, bulldozers, hydraulic hammers, and other machinery produce local damage and loading that can weaken the ship's structure<br>– explains that ballasting operations during discharge can also add to the stresses on the ship if not planned and executed properly<br>– explains as with loading, the need of good coordination at the time of discharge and ballasting of the ship<br>– explains the reason why maintenance and inspection play an important part in the safety of bulk carriers<br>– explains that all ships are designed with limits deliberately imposed on their operations to ensure that structural integrity is maintained<br>– explains that exceeding these limits may over-stress the structure and lead to catastrophic failure<br>– explains that the ship's hull structure is designed to withstand the static loads of the ship's weight and sea water pressure on the hull and the dynamic loads on the hull due to waves and ship's motion<br>– explains that overloading in any one cargo hold space will increase static stress in the hull structure and reduce the capability of the hull structure to withstand dynamic loads when the ship is at sea<br>– explains that many bulk carriers are fitted with very large hatch openings to facilitate cargo loading and unloading and these openings may represent points of weakness in the hull since they reduce the torsional resistance of the hull<br>– explains that when bulk carriers are loaded with dense and heavy cargoes such as iron, dense ores or steel products they rely on large empty spaces in holds, ballast tanks, voids and forward tanks as reserve buoyancy to stay afloat and if seawater enters any of these spaces due to damaged hull, hatches, accesses, ventilators or air pipes, the vessel can lose buoyancy and sink very quickly | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains the need for all crew on the ship to be aware that any loss of buoyancy in forward spaces due to flooding will reduce the freeboard forward and dramatically increase the forces of extreme weather on hull structures and hatches
- explains why there is an urgent need for action if a ship takes on an unusual trim or heel, or if her motions become changed
- explains the vulnerability of the bulkhead in bulk carriers between number 1 and 2 holds identified by IACS and IMO and the potential consequences of this failing

**7.2 SOLAS, chapter XII Additional safety measures for bulk carriers (1 hour)**

- explains the regulations provided as additional safety measures for bulk carriers in chapter XII of the SOLAS Convention which apply to bulk carriers of 150m in length and upwards, carrying high density dry bulk cargoes, including:
  - damage stability and flotation
  - structure of bulkheads and double bottoms
  - overall longitudinal strength in the flooded state
  - strength and flooding requirements for carrying cargoes with densities of 1,000 kg/m$^3$ or greater
  - the bulkhead strength requirements for carrying cargoes of 1,780 kg/m$^3$ or greater
  - hold loading
  - cargo density declarations
  - provision of a loading instrument
  - hold, ballast and dry space water ingress alarms
  - availability of pumping systems
  - restrictions from sailing with any hold empty
  - the imposition of restrictions on loading higher density cargoes and homogenous loading in adjacent holds, including the endorsement of loading information and marking of the ship
- explains that no bulk carrier over ten years old can carry a high density bulk cargo unless she has undergone either a periodical survey or a survey of her cargo holds to an equivalent extent, as required by regulation XII/7

**7.3 CSR Bulk (1 hour)**

- explains that the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR) are classification society rules covering structural requirements for bulk carriers and tankers
- states that IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR) Bulk which contains structural requirements are applicable for bulk carriers with L > 90 m signed for construction after 1 April 2006
- explains that vessels built to CSR shall have overall safety of the hull structure equivalent to or better than that currently achieved by present rules



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that the reasons for implementing these rules are:
  - to eliminate competition between class societies with respect to structural requirements and standards
  - to employ the combined experience and recourses of all IACS societies to develop a single standard, or set of rules
  - to fully embrace the intentions of the anticipated IMO requirements for goal based new construction standards
  - to ensure that a vessel meeting this new standard will be recognized by the industry as being at least as safe and robust as would have been required by any of the existing rules
- explains the general benefits of these rules
- discusses the critical areas of weakness identified in bulk carrier and tanker structure and the requirements for enhanced inspection identified in these rules

2.1.8 LOADING, CARE AND UNLOADING OF BULK CARGOES

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** B71, B72, B73, B74, B76, B77, B78, B88, B89, B95, B104, B106, B109, B110, B113, B117, B128, B129, B130, B146, B182, B193, B198

**Teaching aids:** A1, V59, V172

Required performances:

**8.1 Application of all available shipboard data related to loading, care and unloading of bulk cargoes (5 hours)**

- outlines and describes all relevant information to be appraised prior planning of loading a bulk cargo
- outlines the relevant publications, IMO codes and recommendations that should be referred to prior loading a bulk cargo:
  - SOLAS regulation VI/7 and the related Code of Practice for the Safe Loading and Unloading of Bulk Carriers (BLU Code)
  - International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC)
  - International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk
  - Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing
- explains the procedure for loading a bulk cargo in detail
- prepares cargo stowage plans after carefully considering and assessing information such as seasonal load line zones, port restrictions, shipboard limits, e.g. draft, cargo capacity, stability, stresses and loading rates
- explains that prior to loading bulk cargo, the shipper should declare characteristics and density, stowage factor, angle of repose, amounts and special properties of the cargo
- explains that in preparing the vessel for a safe planning and cargo stowage, the loading and unloading sequences and other operational matters should be informed well in advance by the charterers/terminal
- explains the content of the loading manual



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that the consumption of ship's bunkers, consumption/generation of fresh water, during the voyage should be taken into account when carrying out the stress and displacement calculations<br>– explains that loading and unloading sequences must consider the loading rate, the de-ballasting capacity and the applicable strength and draught limitations<br>– plans the loading, care and unloading of bulk cargoes using the ship's approved loading manual and the typical information provided<br>– describes the action that should be taken if the Master does not believe they have been provided with the required or correct information relating to the cargo to be loaded<br>– describes the requirements for the carriage of loading instruments<br>– describes the typical information that can be obtained from a loading instrument<br>– explains the certification, testing and use of a loading instrument<br>– utilizes a typical loading instrument to plan and monitor bulk carrier loading, ballast exchange and discharge operations<br><br>**8.2 Code of practice for the safe loading and unloading of bulk carriers (BLU Code) (1 hour)**<br>– outlines the contents of the Code of Practice for the Safe Loading and Unloading of Bulk Carriers (BLU Code) in relation to:<br>– planning the sequence of operations<br>– communications and coordination between ship and terminal<br>– allocation of ships to appropriate terminals<br>– condition of ships and terminal equipment<br>– training of ship and terminal personnel<br>– requirement to be familiar with and comply with local regulations<br>– use of safety checklists<br>– responsibility of the Master<br>– additional considerations in relation to dangerous cargoes<br>– the use of the BLU Manual by terminal staff<br>– the impact of arrival and departure conditions on manoeuvrability<br>– actions to minimize hull and local stress<br>– actions to take where acceptable hull and local stress levels may be exceeded | |
| 2.1.9 | SAFE CARGO HANDLING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF THE RELEVANT INSTRUMENTS | R56, R64 |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** B21, B71, B72, B73, B74, B75, B76, B77, B78, B79, B80, B81, B82, B83, B88, B89, B90, B91, B92, B93, B94, B95, B97, B98, B011, B101, B102, B104, B106, B109, B110, B113, B117, B128, B129, B130, B146, B152, B153, B156, B157, B158, B159, B161, B162, B167, B182, B189, B190, B191, B192, B193, B196, B197, B198, B203, B215, B216, B217<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V47, V48, V67 | | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

Required performances:

*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the IMDG Code, Intact Stability Code, IMSBC Code and MARPOL in relation to cargo handling from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*

**9.1 Establish procedures for safe cargo handling in accordance with the provisions of the relevant instruments such as:**

- **IMDG Code**
- **IMSBC Code**
- **MARPOL 73/78, Annexes III and V (3 hours)**

*Note that this section aligns closely with competence 2.3 relating to the carriage of dangerous goods and that the content of competence 2.3 would normally be delivered prior to or in conjunction with this content*

- explains the procedures that should be followed for accepting solid bulk cargoes, packaged dangerous goods and marine pollutants for shipment in terms of:
  - the required documentation
  - ensuring that the condition and labelling of the goods are fit for carriage
  - ensuring that the vessel is able to safely stow the cargo in terms of vessel certification, the ability to achieve separation and segregation requirements and the availability of any particular safety equipment that might be required
- develops stowage plans for cargoes that contain multiple packaged dangerous goods and ensure that separation and segregation requirements of IMDG, IMSBC and MARPOL are achieved
- prepares dangerous goods manifests and stowage plans in accordance with IMDG requirements
- discusses the preparations and precautions that should be taken prior to the handling of bulk cargoes, packaged dangerous goods and marine pollutants in terms of:
  - preparation of spaces
  - mooring of the ship
  - information exchange and communication with port and regulatory authorities
  - flag and light signals
  - provision of emergency, fire and protective equipment
- identifies the appropriate action to take in case of general and medical emergencies involving packaged dangerous goods using the EMS and MFAG guidance of the IMDG Code
- discusses the risks that might be created by undeclared dangerous goods or goods that are not packaged or separated/segregated in accordance with the IMDG Code



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that the loading and discharge of dangerous goods, bulk cargoes and marine pollutants may be subject to port and national regulations in loading and discharge ports in addition to the requirements of the IMO codes<br>– explains that there are procedures also given in the safety management system for the reporting of incidents involving the loss, or likely loss of harmful substances<br>– states that the ship carrying marine pollutants should have a special list or manifest or detailed plan showing the location of these goods as per MARPOL Annex III/4(3)<br>– states that the Master and chief mate should ensure that marine pollutants are stowed in the location specified in the special list or manifest or detailed plan<br>– states that the information provided on the special list or manifest should be compliant with section 5.4.3 of the IMDG Code as per MARPOL Annex III/4(3)<br>– states that the Master and chief mate should ensure that when marine pollutants or any other dangerous goods are loaded on their ship, they must be stowed as required by chapter 7.1, section 7.1.4 of the IMDG Code in order to comply with MARPOL Annex III/5<br>– states that to avoid accident which may lead to marine pollution, the Master and chief mate should take note that marine pollutants should not be placed on the outer row or out board stow at the side of the ship. In addition, if they are stowed on deck, they should be located in such a way that any leakage will not escape into the sea and containers are not in exposed location where they may be damaged by the action of the sea or weather<br>– states that as given in MARPOL Annex III/5, the Master and chief officer should ensure that when marine pollutants or any other dangerous goods are carried on their ship, the stowage and securing must be in accordance with the requirements of the Document of Compliance (DOC) and approved Cargo Securing Manual (CSM)<br>– states that the disposal of dry bulk cargo residues is regulated by the requirements of MARPOL Annex V which governs garbage disposal at sea<br>– states that as per the guidelines given in MARPOL Annex V, cargo-associated waste means all materials which have become wastes as a result of use on board a ship for cargo stowage and handling and this includes but is not limited to dunnage, shoring, pallets, lining and packing materials, plywood, paper, cardboard, wire, and steel strapping<br>– states that as per the guidelines given in MARPOL Annex V, operational wastes means all cargo-associated waste and maintenance waste, and cargo residues<br>– states that as per the guidelines given in MARPOL Annex V, cargo residues, expected to be in small quantities, are defined as the remnants of any cargo material on board that cannot be placed in proper cargo holds (loading excess and spillage) or which remain in cargo holds and elsewhere after unloading procedures are completed (unloading residual and spillage)<br>– states that this means that under the terms of MARPOL 73/78, discharge of cargo residues, except in limited safety circumstances, is prohibited until the ship is more than twelve nautical miles from the nearest land<br>– states that minimization of cargo residue wash down and discharge should form part of the ship's Garbage Management Plan and all residue discharges should be recorded as garbage category 4 | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.1 | Plan and Ensure Safe Loading, Stowage, Securing, Care During the Voyage and Unloading of Cargoes | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that discharges of cargo residues also require start and stop positions to be recorded in the Garbage record book<br>– states that cargo materials contained in the cargo hold bilge water is not treated as cargo residues provided that the cargo material is not classified as a marine pollutant in the IMDG Code and the bilge water is discharged from a loaded hold through the vessel's fixed piping bilge drainage system<br>– explains that cargo residues are created through inefficiencies in loading, unloading and on-board handling<br>– states that as cargo residues fall under the scope of these guidelines provided by MARPOL Annex V, it may, in certain cases, be difficult for port reception facilities to handle such residues and is therefore recommended that cargo be unloaded as efficiently as possible in order to avoid or minimize cargo residues<br>– states that spillage of the cargo during transfer operations should be carefully controlled, both on board and from dockside and since this spillage typically occurs in port, it should be completely cleaned up prior to sailing and either delivered into the intended cargo space or into the port reception facility<br>– states that areas on the ship where spillage is most common should be protected such that the residues are easily recovered | |
| 2.1.10 EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATIONS AND IMPROVING WORKING RELATIONSHIPS<br>Required performances:<br>**10.1 Basic principles for establishing effective communications and improving working relationships between ship and terminal personnel (1 hour)**<br>– explains the necessity for effective communication and working relationships between ship and terminal<br>– outlines and describes the information that should be exchanged between the ship and terminal:<br>– prior to ship's arrival<br>– when arriving in a part loaded condition or with residues<br>– for combination carriers (OBO or O/O)<br>– in relation to the readiness of holds to load cargo<br>– in ensuring that the plan and understanding of the operation is up to date and shared by both the ship and terminal<br>– ensuring that the cargo declaration as required by chapter VI of SOLAS 1974 is completed<br>– provisions for changing loading or unloading plans<br>– states that the loading plans should be kept by the ship and terminal for a period of six months | | R56, R64 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| **COMPETENCE 2.2** | **Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action** | **IMO Reference** |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>2.2.1 LIMITATIONS ON STRENGTH OF THE VITAL CONSTRUCTIONAL PARTS OF A STANDARD BULK CARRIER AND INTERPRET GIVEN FIGURES FOR BENDING MOMENTS AND SHEAR FORCES<br>2.2.2 METHODS TO AVOID THE DETRIMENTAL EFFECTS ON BULK CARRIERS OF CORROSION, FATIGUE AND INADEQUATE CARGO HANDLING | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.2 | Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

2.2.1 LIMITATIONS ON STRENGTH OF THE VITAL CONSTRUCTIONAL PARTS OF A STANDARD BULK CARRIER AND INTERPRET GIVEN FIGURES FOR BENDING MOMENTS AND SHEAR FORCES — R63

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T35, B71, B72, B73, B74, B76, B77, B78, B88, B89, B95, B104, B106, B109, B110, B113, B117, B128, B129, B130, B146, B182, B193, B198

**Teaching aids:** A1, V60, V120, V121, V122, V155

Required performance:

**1.1 Limitations on strength of the vital constructional parts of a standard bulk carrier and interpret given figures for bending moments and shear forces (3 hours)**

- states that the longitudinally continuous upper deck of a bulk carrier suffers hull girder stress
- explains that the longitudinal bending causes an axial force on the upper deck that may cause cracking of the deck plate at the locations where the stress is concentrated
- states that bulk carriers have cargo hatchways for the convenience of cargo handling facilities
- explains that these hatchways reduce the ship's torsional strength and invite concentrated stress at the hatchway corners which may be evident by cracking of the deck plates in these areas
- states in this regard upper deck plating at hatchway corners is one of the focal points for cracking
- explains that cross-deck strips come under stress by transverse bending
- explains that the transverse bulkheads provide transverse strength to a bulk carrier and the cross-deck strips provide the strength to withstand the resultant axial forces in a transverse direction
- explains that there are various types of cracking in the upper deck
- states that those propagating from the cargo hatchways are generally considered serious to the ship's safety
- explains that various metal fittings are welded to the upper deck plating and these installations may cause stress concentrations at the welded joints or have defects in the welds
- states that deck platings in the vicinity of manholes, hatchside coaming end brackets, bulwark stays, crane post foundations and deck houses, etc. are to be carefully watched for cracking
- states that hatch coamings are subjected to hull girder stress
- explains that although they are not critical longitudinal strength members, they should be watched carefully to ensure that these cracks do not spread
- states that the area around the corners of a main cargo hatch can be subjected to high cyclical stress due to the combined effect of hull girder bending moments, transverse and torsional loading
- explains that discontinuous cargo hatch side coamings can be subjected to significant longitudinal bending stress
- explains that this introduces additional stresses at the mid-length of hatches and stress concentrations at the termination of the side coaming extensions



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.2 | Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that hatch cover operations, in combination with poor maintenance, can result in damage to cleats and gasket, leading to the loss of weathertight integrity of the hold spaces
- states that damage to hatch covers can also be sustained by mishandling and overloading of deck cargoes
- states that the marine environment, the humid atmosphere due to the water vapour from the cargo in cargo holds, and the high temperature on deck and hatch cover plating due to heating from the sun may result in accelerated corrosion of plating and stiffeners making the structure more vulnerable to the exposures described above
- states that when carrying out visual inspection, special attention should be paid to areas where pipes, e.g. fire main pipes, hydraulic pipes and pipes for compressed air, are fitted close to the plating, making proper maintenance of the protective coating difficult to carry out
- states that cracking may be initiated at defects in welded joints and metal fittings to the coamings that will invite stress concentration
- states that such cracking is considered serious to the ship's safety because it may be the initiation of a fracture on a large scale
- states that on typical bulk carriers, the topside and bilge hopper tanks compose a double hull surrounding the cargo space, which together with the double bottom provides hull strength and rigidity
- states that if corrosion and waste become excessive, failure of hold frames invites additional loads to the adjacent ones, which may lead to failure throughout the side shell structure
- explains that the transverse bulkheads may also be susceptible to accelerated corrosion, particularly at the mid height and at the bottom
- states that particular care should be exercised when inspecting hold frames
- states that the transverse bulkheads, in that these members may appear in deceptively good condition
- states that the tank top and side shell plating generally corrodes from the steel surface facing the cargo hold, and corrosion from inside the double bottom is usually less than that from the cargo hold side
- states that cargo hold frames should also be carefully inspected for mechanical damage, corrosion and waste, because many cargoes will damage hold frames through direct contact
- states that this damage will invite corrosion from seawater brought on board in loading operations
- states that the most important aspects of cargo hold inspections are the condition of side shell structures and their reinforcements
- states that special attention should be paid to the condition of hold frames and their connection to the shell plating
- outlines and describes the common damage/defects that may occur on watertight transverse bulkheads situated at the ends of dry cargo holds of a bulk carrier
- states that cracks may often be found at or near the connection of the stool of the transverse bulkhead and the tanktop in bulk carriers having combination cargo/ballast holds



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.2 | Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that wastage/corrosion may affect the integrity of steel hatch covers and the associated moving parts, e.g. cleats, pot-lifts, roller wheels, etc.
- explains that deformation/twisting of exposed structure above deck, such as side-coaming brackets and bulwarks, may result from impact due to improper handling of cargo and cargo handling machinery
- explains that such damages may also be caused by shipping of green sea water on deck in heavy weather
- outlines and describes other fractures that may occur in the deck plating at hatches and in connected coamings
- outlines and describes the damages caused by cargoes in cargo holds, especially to tank top plating and side:
  - at loading and unloading ports for coal or iron ore, large grab buckets, high-capacity cargo
  - loaders, bulldozers and pneumatic hammers may be employed for cargo handling operations
  - large grab buckets may cause considerable damage to tank top plating when being dropped to grab cargo
  - use of bulldozers and pneumatic hammers may also be harmful to cargo hold structures and may result in damage to tank tops, bilge hoppers, hold frames and end brackets
  - lumber cargoes may also cause damage to the cargo hold structures of smaller bulkers that are employed in the carriage of light bulk cargoes and lumbers
- states that side stringers and/or side shells in way of No. 1 cargo hold along the collision bulkhead are often found cracked
- explains that this kind of damage is considered to be caused by insufficient continuity between forepeak construction and cargo hold structure
- explains that on large bulk carriers such as capsize and panamax bulkers, bilge hopper plating around the knuckle line may be cracked along the bilge hopper transverse webs
- states that this is considered to be caused by insufficient local reinforcement
- states that though the water ballast tanks of newer bulk carriers are well protected against corrosion, the upper portion is susceptible to corrosion because the protective coating will easily deteriorate due to heat from the upper deck and the cyclic wet/dry effect of seawater
- states that cracks may be found at the intersections of longitudinal and transverse members
- states that cracks may be found in the side, bottom and/or tank top longitudinal at intersections with solid floors or bilge hopper transverses
- states that cracks also may be found in the floors or transverses occurring at the corners of the slots cut for longitudinal
- states that longitudinal may be cracked at the ends of additional (partial) side girders provided in the double bottom below cargo hold bulkheads or at the side walls of bilge wells for cargo holds, due to additional stress concentration caused by the structural discontinuity at those connections



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.2 | Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that cracks may be observed in transverse webs in bilge hoppers initiating from the slot openings for longitudinal and at the knuckled corners of the lower ends of the hoppers
- states that corrosion accelerated by heat has been observed in double-bottom water ballast tanks adjacent to fuel oil tanks
- states that in recent years, the grade of bunker oil being used requires the temperature in the tank to be 80°C or more and such a temperature can accelerate corrosion of the steel in the tanks, particularly in the vicinity of the boundaries of the fuel oil tanks
- states that bottom plates are often eroded under the suction bellmouths in tank
- states that a sounding pipe has a pad plate at its bottom end for protection of the tank bottom against the strike of the sounding scale's lead and extent of diminution of the protection plate should be examined during inspections
- states that connection trunks provided between topside and bilge hopper spaces are to be carefully watched for signs of corrosion and waste of the steelworks inside
- explains that on some bulk carriers, bilge hopper tanks and topside tanks form one integral tank connected with trunk spaces
- states that the inside surface of a connection trunk is liable to corrosion and should be examined carefully

INTERPRET GIVEN FIGURES FOR BENDING MOMENTS AND SHEAR FORCES

- states that the bulk carriers are assigned 2 sets of permissible still water shear forces (SWSF) and still water bending moment (SWBM) limit to each ship, namely:
  - seagoing (at sea) SWSF and SWBM limits
  - harbour (in port) SWSF and SWBM limits
- states that the seagoing SWSF and SWBM limits should not be exceeded when the ship is put to sea or during any part of a seagoing voyage
- explains that in harbour, where the ship is in sheltered water and is subjected to reduced dynamic loads, the hull girder is permitted to carry a higher level of stress imposed by the static loads
- states that the harbour SWSF and SWBM limits should not be exceeded during any stage of harbour cargo operations
- explains that when a ship is floating in still water, the ship's lightweight (the weight of the ship's structure and its machinery) and deadweight (all other weights, such as the weight of the bunkers, ballast, provisions and cargo) are supported by the global buoyancy up thrust acting on the exterior of the hull
- explains that along the ship's length there will be local differences in the vertical forces of buoyancy and the ship's weight and these unbalanced net vertical forces acting along the length of the ship causes the hull girder to shear and to bend, inducing a vertical still water shear force (SWSF) and still water bending moment (SWBM) at each section of the hull
- explains that at sea, the ship is subjected to cyclical shearing and bending actions induced by continuously changing wave pressures acting on the hull
- explains that these cyclical shearing and bending actions give rise to an additional component of dynamic, wave induced, shear force and bending moment in the hull girder



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.2 | Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that at any one time, the hull girder is subjected to a combination of still water and wave induced shear forces and bending moments
- explains that the stresses in the hull section caused by these shearing forces and bending moments are carried by continuous longitudinal structural members
- explains that these structural members are the strength deck, side shell and bottom shell plating and longitudinals, inner bottom plating and longitudinals, double bottom girders and topside and hopper tank sloping plating and longitudinals, which are generally defined as the hull girder
- states that over-loading will induce greater stresses in the double bottom, transverse bulkheads, hatch coamings, hatch corners, main frames and associated brackets of individual cargo holds, and it can be observed as:
  - increased stress at hatch corners and coamings
  - increased stress in main frames and brackets
  - increased stress in double bottom structure
  - increased stress in transverse bulkhead
  - increased stress in cross deck strip
  - greater distortion of topside tank
- states that exceeding the permissible limits specified in the ship's approved loading manual will lead to over-stressing of the ship's structure and may result in catastrophic failure of the hull structure
- states that when deviating from the cargo load conditions contained in the ship's approved loading manual, it is necessary to ensure that both the global and local structural limits are not exceeded
- explains that all officers should be aware over-stressing of local structural members can occur even when the hull girder still water shear forces (SWSF) and bending moments (SWBM) are within their permissible limits
- analyses and interprets the causes and effects of shearing forces and bending moments on ship's structures
- demonstrates the knowledge gained on the fore mentioned topics by interpreting given figures for bending moments and shear forces

2.2.2 METHODS TO AVOID THE DETRIMENTAL EFFECTS ON BULK CARRIERS OF CORROSION, FATIGUE AND INADEQUATE CARGO HANDLING (3 hours)

- states that deterioration of structure through corrosion, fatigue and damage is identified as a principal factor in the loss of many bulk carriers
- states that failing to identify such deterioration may lead to sudden and unexpected failure
- states that it is critical to inspect the cargo holds, ballast tanks and vital constructional parts of the bulk carriers, after every operation to ensure rapid action can be taken if the inspection reveals any cracks, fracture or other damages
- states that internal degradation through corrosion may be accelerated through chemical action from certain cargoes
- states that certain cargoes, including coal, phosphates and sulphur, transported by bulk carriers can rapidly corrode the hold side frames and promote fractures



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.2 | Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that the scouring effect of abrasive cargoes may cause hold coatings to deteriorate rapidly
- explains that corrosive effects of some cargoes like coal which produces acidic conditions, accelerates the rate of deterioration of internal structures in cargo holds and welds in particular
- explains that since bulk carriers tend to have low freeboard the uppermost continuous deck and other fittings including hatch covers are prone to exposure to green seas, which may again cause accelerated corrosion, and in some cases even structural damages which may again lead to catastrophic result, if not detected early and appropriate action taken
- states that since improper cleaning during hold cleaning leads to accelerated corrosion all crew should be well trained for hold cleaning, and proper checks to be made after the holds have been cleaned, to ensure no remnants of previous cargo is left behind
- states that in ballast holds, sloshing forces due to partially filled spaces during ballast exchange at sea may result in damage to the structure and this damage may go unnoticed if it is in inaccessible positions; this has to be borne in mind while carrying out inspections
- states that coatings are the first barriers to protect metal surfaces against corrosion
- states that ballast exchange, especially for cargo hold, can also cause accelerated corrosion, if the hold has any exposed, unprotected steel surface
- states that intact coatings prevent corrosion of the steel surface, however a local absence of coating (due to coating depletion, deterioration, damage, etc.) can result in corrosion rates similar or greater than those of unprotected steel
- states that periodic inspections at appropriate intervals and repair of coating as required are effective in minimizing corrosion damage
- states that to ensure that such exposures are not neglected, all officers should be well trained in identifying and reporting to the chief officer or the Master
- states that care should be taken to tend any unprotected surfaces in cargo holds caused due to any reasons, after carefully examining the structure for any signs of fatigue or fracture
- states that hold cleaning, ballasting at sea and ballast exchange carried out at sea are vulnerable aspects of a bulk carrier operation, and thus to avoid any kind of undue stress, proper, careful procedures, specified in loading manual, ballast water management plan, among others should be followed
- explains that bulkheads, trunks and ballast tank boundaries in single side-skin bulk carriers can present “hard spots” that concentrate forces where the change in construction occurs (e.g. longitudinal to transverse framing) that may lead to undetected fractures, hence careful examination at periodic intervals is necessary
- states that damage to bow plating is possible through impacts associated with swinging or loosely stowed anchors and may cause an initiating fracture or fatigue in bow shell plating that could lead to failure and subsequent flooding
- states that internal integrity of forward spaces (that are usually used for ballast and/or stores) is therefore of vital importance



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.2 | Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that to prevent this from happening, the anchor must be fully hauled-in, stowed and retained in position by the lashing arrangement provided, ensuring there is three-point contact of anchor with the ship side at all given times
- states that corrosion degradation will seriously reduce the ability of plating and stiffening to withstand the forces to which it will be subjected
- states that any external forces – horizontal and/or vertical – may cause hatch cover dislodgement
- states that the cargo hatchway, if it loses its protection in this way, is a major access for water ingress and a serious threat to the integrity of the hull
- states that to ensure such thing does not happen, the hatch covers must be stowed, secured, battened down at all given times
- states that metal fatigue is the progressive failure of metal under cyclic loading and as the name “fatigue” implies, it is a mode of degradation in which the steel is worked until it simply gets tired
- states that bulk carriers are susceptible to many modes of cyclic forces that combine with other forces acting upon the vessel’s structure and over time these cyclic stresses can seriously weaken the vessel’s structural capacity
- states that fatigue failure may result due to loss of cross-sectional area in the plating joints
- states the areas that are prone to fatigue cracks in the cargo holds, which have to be carefully examined during routine, periodic, scheduled inspections, are:
  - corrugated bulkhead
  - shedder plate
  - inner bottom longitudinal (tank top)
  - side frames
  - side longitudinals
  - hopper tank
  - lower stool
  - toes of the hatch coaming termination brackets
- states that carriage of high density cargoes can cause buckling, structural deformities over a period of years, which can result in acceleration of corrosion and fatigue
- states that many terminals have the practice of dislodging cargo from side shell, frames, hoppers using mechanical grabs, bulldozers, hydraulic hammers, and other machineries
- states that these machineries produce local damage and loading that can weaken the ship’s structure
- states that precaution must be taken to ensure the terminals are instructed not to use any machinery which may cause damage, clearly, during the formal filling and agreeing as per the ship/shore checklist, contained in the BLU Code, and duty officers to be instructed to stop any such activities that may endanger the ship’s structure, also bringing it to the notice of Master
- states that buckling of plating caused due to high density cargoes, found generally on cargo hold tank tops, can lead to fractures or accelerated corrosion, if not inspected thoroughly



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.2 | Assess Reported Defects and Damage to Cargo Spaces, Hatch Covers and Ballast Tanks and take appropriate action | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| – states that damage to side shell caused externally through contact with docksides or tugs and internally from impact by cargo dislodging equipment during discharge can result in initiating fractures and/or fatigue of the structure<br>– states that careful examination is of prime importance after any such incidents, to assess the extent of damage and action required. | | |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of<br>2.3.1 INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS, STANDARDS, CODES INCLUDING THE INTERNATIONAL MARITIME DANGEROUS GOODS (IMDG) CODE AND THE INTERNATIONAL MARITIME SOLID BULK CARGOES (IMSBC) CODE AND RECOMMENDATIONS ON CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS CARGOES<br>2.3.2 CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS, HAZARDOUS AND HARMFUL CARGOES**;** PRECAUTIONS DURING LOADING AND UNLOADING AND CARE DURING THE VOYAGE OF DANGEROUS, HAZARDOUS AND HARMFUL CARGOES | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 2.3.1 | INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS, STANDARDS, CODES INCLUDING THE INTERNATIONAL MARITIME DANGEROUS GOODS (IMDG) CODE AND THE INTERNATIONAL MARITIME SOLID BULK CARGOES (IMSBC) CODE AND RECOMMENDATIONS ON CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS CARGOES | R54, R55, R56 |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** B21, B71, B89, B104, B113, B128, B146, B182<br>**Teaching aids:** A1<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the basic knowledge of packaged dangerous goods, solid bulk and grain cargoes from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of this content before undertaking this management level content*<br>**1.1 International regulations and codes (3 hours)**<br>– understands and applies the content of international regulations standards, codes and recommendations on the carriage of dangerous cargoes, including the International Maritime Dangerous Goods (IMDG) Code, the International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC) Code, International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Liquefied Gases in Bulk (IGC Code), International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC Code) | | |
| 2.3.2 | CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS, HAZARDOUS AND HARMFUL CARGOES; PRECAUTIONS DURING LOADING AND UNLOADING AND CARE DURING THE VOYAGE OF DANGEROUS, HAZARDOUS AND HARMFUL CARGOES | R54, R55 |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography**: T15, B21, B71, B89, B104, B113, B128, B146, B182<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V136, V154, V170, V173<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the basic knowledge of packaged dangerous goods, solid bulk and grain cargoes from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of this content before undertaking this management level content*<br>**2.1 Dangerous goods in packages (10 hours)**<br>– states that the IMDG Code is an evolving document and is updated every two years to take account of:<br>– new dangerous goods which have to be included<br>– new technology and methods of working with or handling dangerous goods<br>– safety concerns which arise as a result of experience<br>– lists the explosives which may be carried on a passenger ship<br>– describes the contents of the shipper's declaration of dangerous goods<br>– identifies the marking and labelling required on packages or cargo units | | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states why additional labelling may be necessary to meet the requirements for through transport
- verifies that the documentation provided to the ship and the packaging and labelling of packaged dangerous cargo complies with the requirements of the IMDG Code
- explains the actions to take when documentation, packaging, labelling or the condition of packages does not meet the requirements of the IMDG Code
- plans the stowage and segregation of a cargo containing dangerous goods when provided with the loading list, the copies of the shipper's declarations and the IMDG Code to plan a stow and segregation and
- prepares the dangerous goods manifest and stowage plan for a cargo containing multiple dangerous goods
- extracts the relevant references to EmS and MFAG
- identifies the appropriate action to take in emergency and medical first aid situations involving dangerous goods
- describes the requirements of SOLAS chapter VII on the carriage of dangerous goods
- explains that the IMDG Code should be followed to ensure compliance with the requirements of SOLAS for the carriage of dangerous goods in packaged form
- explains that the Code ensures safety mainly by stipulating the packaging required and the segregation from other cargoes with which there could be an adverse reaction
- states that the Code comprises 7 parts, which is presented in two books: Volume 1 and Volume 2
- states that it is necessary to use both books to obtain the required information when shipping dangerous goods by sea
- states that the Code also contains a supplement
- lists the contents of Volume 1 (Parts 1-2 & 4-7 of the Code) which comprises:
  - part 1, general provisions, definitions and training
  - part 2, classifications
  - part 4, packing and tank provisions
  - part 5, consignment procedures
  - part 6, construction and testing of packagings, intermediate bulk containers (IBCs), large packagings, portable tanks, multi-element gas containers (MEGCS) and road tank vehicles
  - part 7, requirements concerning transport operations
- lists the contents of Volume 2 (Part 3 and the Appendices of the Code) which comprises:
  - part 3, dangerous goods list (DGL) and limited quantities exceptions
  - appendix a, list of generic and n.o.s. (not otherwise specified) proper shipping names
  - appendix b, glossary of terms
  - alphabetical index
- states that the dangerous goods list (DGL) is the central core of the IMDG Code and presents information on transport requirements in a coded form



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that the supplement contains the following texts related to the Code:
  - emergency response procedures for ships carrying dangerous goods
  - medical first aid guide
  - reporting procedures
  - IMO/ILO/ECE guidelines for packing cargo transport units
  - safe use of pesticides in ships
  - international code for the carriage of packaged irradiated nuclear fuel, plutonium and high-level radioactive wastes on board ships
- states that the purpose of the IMDG Code's classification system is:
  - to distinguish between goods which are considered to be dangerous for transport and those which are not
  - to identify the dangers which are presented by dangerous goods in transport
  - to ensure that the correct measures are taken to enable these goods to be transported safely without risk to persons or property (both within the port and on the ship)
- states that dangerous goods are classified into 9 classes according to properties
- states that the way in which different classes of dangerous goods are handled in transport will depend upon these properties and hazards, for example:
  - the type of packaging that can be used
  - what classes of dangerous goods can be transported together in freight containers
  - where the goods can be stored within the port and on the ship
- lists the 9 classes of dangerous goods in the IMDG Code, which are:
  - class 1 explosives
  - class 2 gases
  - class 3 flammable liquids
  - class 4 flammable solids
  - class 5 oxidizing substances and organic peroxides
  - class 6 toxic and infectious substances
  - class 7 radioactive material
  - class 8 corrosive substances
  - class 9 miscellaneous dangerous substances and articles
- states that the 9 hazard classes have been established internationally by a United Nations (UN) committee to ensure that all modes of transport (road, rail, air and sea) classify dangerous goods in the same way
- states that by testing the dangerous goods according to UN test procedures, a shipper is able to classify dangerous goods according to the 9 hazard classes
- explains that the hazard presented by each class is identified by an internationally accepted hazard warning label (diamond)
- states that this hazard warning label appears on the outer packaging of the dangerous goods when they are being transported as a warning to all those working within the transport chain or coming into contact with them
- states that these hazard warning labels are pictured inside the front cover of Volume 1 of the IMDG Code



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that the dangerous goods, within each of the 9 hazard classes, are uniquely identified by two pieces of information:
  - a four-digit number known as the UN number which is preceded by the letters UN
  - the corresponding proper shipping name (PSN)
  - for example, kerosene is identified in the IMDG Code by its UN number UN 1223 and the PSN Kerosene
- states that together the UN Number and PSN uniquely identifies dangerous goods to:
  - enable rapid and precise identification during transport
  - ensure the correct handling, stowage, segregation etc.,
  - in the event of an emergency, ensure that the correct procedures are followed
- explains that the purpose of using a four-digit number to identify dangerous goods is to enhance safety by:
  - overcoming language barriers – the four-digit number is easily understood in all languages
  - avoiding confusing similar names – e.g. TITANIUM POWDER, WETTED UN 1352 which is a flammable solid in class 4.1 and has very different transport requirements to TITANIUM POWDER, DRY UN 2546 which is spontaneously combustible in class 4.2
- states that the PSN must be used for transport purposes on documentation/ labelling etc.
- states that no alternatives or variations are permitted unless specifically stated
- states that the PSN is that part of the name which appears in the Dangerous Goods List or the Alphabetical Index in capital letters only
- states that any text in lower case is only descriptive and is not part of the PSN
- states that the Dangerous goods list (DGL) is presented across 2 pages of the IMDG Code and is divided into 18 columns for each individual dangerous good listed
- states that much of the information contained in the DGL is coded to make it easier to present in a table
- states that the DGL is arranged in UN Number order; column 1 and column 18 contains the UN Number
- states that to look up an entry only the UN Number is required
- states that dangerous goods can also be searched using the PSN
- explains that if the UN Number is not given but the dangerous good has the PSN, its associated UN Number can be located by looking at the alphabetical index at the back of Volume 2 of the IMDG Code
- explains that the IMDG Code contains clearly defined recommendations for the training of all staff who handle or process dangerous goods shipments for transportation by sea. The full training requirements can be found in the IMDG Code Volume 1, Chapter 1.3 states that a packing certificate is also required, certifying that a container or vehicle has been properly packed and secured, if loaded with dangerous goods
- describes the information given for individual substances
- states that an index of dangerous goods is included in Volume 1 of the IMDG Code



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains how to obtain the references to the relevant Emergency Schedule (EmS) and the entry in the Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods (MFAG)<br>– describes the information given for individual substances<br>– states the requirement for a dangerous goods manifest or stowage plan and describes how they should be prepared<br>– lists, by headings, the information given in an emergency schedule<br>– defines 'dangerous substances', 'port authority', 'regulatory authority', 'designated port office' and 'responsible person' as used in the Recommendations on the Safe Transport, Handling and Storage of Dangerous Substances in Port Areas<br>– explains that a port authority may be empowered to refuse dangerous substances if it is considered that their presence would endanger life or property because of:<br>  – their condition<br>  – the condition of their containment<br>  – the condition of their mode of conveyance<br>  – conditions in the port area<br>– states that, if any dangerous substance constitutes an unacceptable hazard, the port authority should be able to order the removal of such substance or any ship, package, container, portable tank or vehicle containing it<br>– states that a port authority will normally require notification at least 24 hours in advance of the transport or handling of dangerous substances, including those which are not for discharge at that port<br>– describes the inspections which may be made by a port authority<br>– states that the designated port officer should be empowered to:<br>  – direct when and where a ship having any dangerous substances on board may anchor, moor or berth<br>  – direct a ship to be moved within or to leave the port area<br>  – attach conditions appropriate to local circumstances and the quantity and nature of the dangerous substances<br>– states that the regulatory authority may require signals to be shown while transporting or handling dangerous substances<br>– describes the signals as:<br>  – by day, flag 'B' of the International Code of Signals<br>  – by night, an all-round fixed red light<br>– explains how effective communications with the port authority can be maintained<br>– describes the requirements regarding mooring a ship carrying dangerous substances<br>– states that at all times there should be sufficient crew on board to maintain a proper watch and operate appliances in the case of an emergency, taking into account the nature and quantity of dangerous substances on board<br>– states that a responsible person should be designated to supervise the handling of dangerous goods | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – lists the measures that should be taken by the responsible person in connection with:<br>– the weather<br>– lighting<br>– protective clothing and equipment<br>– intoxicated persons<br>– fire and other emergency procedures<br>– reporting of incidents and safety precautions<br>– explains that the port authority should be informed of the intention to carry out repair work when dangerous substances are on board<br>– explains the handling precautions which should be observed regarding:<br>– avoidance of damage to packages<br>– access to handling areas<br>– lifting goods over dangerous goods stowed on deck<br>– escape of a dangerous substance from a package entry into enclosed spaces<br>– describes the special precautions for loading or unloading explosives | |
| **2.2** | **Solid bulk cargoes (9 hours)**<br>– outlines the contents of the International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC Code)<br>– states that the main hazards associated with the shipment of bulk solids are:<br>– structural damage due to improper distribution of the cargo<br>– loss or reduction of stability during a voyage<br>– chemical reactions<br>– lists the information which should be supplied by the shipper to the Master before loading<br>– states that a certificate stating the relevant characteristics of the material should be provided to the Master at the loading point<br>– explains that certificates stating transportable moisture limits should be accompanied by a statement that the moisture content is the average moisture content at the time of presenting the certificate<br>– explains how to distribute a high-density cargo between holds when detailed information is not available<br>– states that the loading instrument, loading information and the ship's stability information book should be used to check the suitability of a proposed stow for stresses and stability<br>– describes how to prevent shifting of bulk cargo by reducing an excessively high GM<br>– describes precautions to take before, during and after loading of bulk cargo<br>– describes the precautions to take to minimize the effect of dust on deck machinery, navigational aids and living quarters<br>– describes the health hazards which may be associated with bulk materials<br>– states that safety precautions and any appropriate national regulations should be complied with during the handling and carriage of bulk materials<br>– states that a copy of the Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods should be on board | R56 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| – describes how to trim cargoes having an angle of repose:<br>  – less than or equal to 35 degrees<br>  – greater than 35 degrees<br>– describes how to stow material which flows freely like grain<br>– explains the IMSBC Code method for determining the approximate angle of repose on board ship<br>– describes the types of cargo which may liquefy during carriage<br>– states that cargoes which may liquefy should not be carried with a moisture content above that of the transportable moisture limit<br>– explains that such cargoes may look relatively dry when loaded but liquefy as a result of compaction and vibration during the passage<br>– states that such cargoes should be trimmed reasonably level, regardless of the angle of repose stated<br>– explains the precautions to be taken to keep liquids out of holds where such cargoes are carried and the danger of using water to cool a shipment of these materials<br>– states that specially fined or constructed cargo ships may carry materials with a moisture content above the transportable moisture limit if approved by their Administrations<br>– describes the test for approximately determining the possibility of flow which may be carried out on board ship<br>– states that some materials transported in bulk present hazards because of their chemical properties<br>– explains that some materials are classified as dangerous goods in the IMDG Code while others are Materials Hazardous only in Bulk (MHB)<br>– states that the IMSBC Code categorizes cargoes into three groups – A, B and C:<br>  – Group A consists of the cargoes which may liquefy if shipped with moisture content in excess of their transportable moisture limit<br>  – Group B consists of cargoes which possess a chemical hazard which could give rise to a dangerous situation on a ship<br>  – Group C consists of cargoes which are not liable to liquefy (Group A) and do not possess chemical hazards (Group B) | | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains the content and use of the following: that in the added supplement of the IMSBC Code, the IMO documents contained are:
  - the BLU Code
  - the BLU Manual
  - MSC/Circ.908 – Uniform Method of Measurement of the Density of Bulk Cargoes
  - MSC/Circ.1146 – Lists of Solid Bulk Cargoes for which a Fixed Gas Fire-extinguishing System may be Exempted or for which a Fixed Gas Fire-extinguishing System is Ineffective
  - Res. A.864(20) – Recommendations for Entering Enclosed Spaces Aboard Ships
  - MSC.1/Circ.1264 – Recommendations on the Safe Use of Pesticides in Ships Applicable to the Fumigation of Cargo Holds
  - BC.1/Circ.66 – Contact Names and Addresses of the Offices of Designated National Competent Authorities Responsible for the Safe Carriage of Grain and Solid Bulk Cargoes
- explains the list of materials possessing chemical hazards is not exhaustive, that the properties listed are for guidance only and that it is essential to obtain currently valid information about bulk materials before loading
- explains the use of the tables for segregation between incompatible bulk materials and between bulk materials and dangerous goods in packaged form
- states that the IMDG Code should also be consulted for additional requirements regarding the stowage and segregation of packaged dangerous goods
- states that particular care should be taken with the segregation of toxic substances and foodstuffs
- uses the IMSBC Code to extract all necessary information for the safe carriage in bulk of a stated cargo, describes how it should be loaded and lists any special precautions or requirements to be observed during loading, carriage and discharge

**2.3 International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk (International Grain Code) (7 hours)**

- states that the International Grain Code applies to all ships to which the SOLAS regulations apply and to cargo ships of less than 500 gross tons
- explains that the International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk (International Grain Code) is based on the recognition that grain-like cargoes have a propensity to shift and that even fully loaded cargo spaces may contain voids that allow dangerous cargo shifts
- defines the following terms as used in chapter VI of SOLAS:
  - grain
  - filled compartment
  - partly filled compartment
  - angle of flooding
- explains that the Code requires demonstration, by calculation, that at all times during a voyage the ship will have sufficient intact stability to provide adequate dynamic stability after taking into account an assumed shift of cargo



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 2.3 | Carriage of Dangerous Goods | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states the Code requirements for minimum stability in terms of initial metacentric height, angle of heel due to assumed grain shift and residual dynamic stability<br>– explains that vessels with appropriate design features may be able to meet the required minimum stability criteria after the assumed movement of cargo without taking further physical precautions to reduce the shift of cargo<br>– explains the stability and grain loading information that is required to be provided for such vessels if they are to receive a Document of Authorization<br>– explains the method of verifying that the loading of a vessel supplied with a Document of Authorization meets stability requirements using volumetric heeling moments, cargo details and maximum deadweight heeling moments<br>– explains that the grain loading stability booklet and associated plans contain all of the information necessary to check that a proposed loading plan complies with the stability requirements of the Regulations at all stages of the voyage<br>– states that in some countries a certificate of loading, certifying that the cargo has been loaded in compliance with the Regulations, is required before sailing<br>– explains the importance of trimming to fill all of the spaces under decks and hatch covers to the maximum extent possible<br>– states that the ability to comply with the stability criteria should be demonstrated before loading<br>– states that the Master should ensure that the ship is upright before proceeding to sea<br>– explains the use of physical precautions to reduce cargo movement:<br>– describes the use and fitting of longitudinal divisions in both filled and partly filled compartments<br>– demonstrates the use of Part C of the Code to determine the scantlings for uprights and shifting boards<br>– describes the construction of a saucer as an alternative to a longitudinal division in a hatchway<br>– describes the use of bagged grain or other suitable cargo stowed in the wings and ends of a compartment to reduce the heeling effects of a grain shift<br>– describes methods of securing the free grain surface in partly filled compartments<br>– states that the hatch covers of filled compartments which have no cargo stowed over them should be secured as laid down in the document of authorization<br>– explains the conditions which must be met before a ship without a document of authorization may load grain<br>– given a ship's data and details of consumption of fuel and of fresh water for an intended voyage, prepares a stowage plan for a cargo of bulk grain and performs the calculations to check that the proposed stowage complies, at all stages of the voyage, with the stability criteria set out in chapter VI of SOLAS 1974 | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part D2: Instructor Manual

The following notes are intended to highlight the main objectives or training outcomes of each part of the function. The notes also contain some material on topics which are not adequately covered in the quoted references.

On completion of training for this function, officers will be able to use cargo plans and tables or diagrams of stability and trim data to calculate the ship's initial stability, draughts and trim for any given description of cargo and other weights. They will also be able to determine whether stresses on the ship are within permitted limits by the use of stress data or calculation equipment, or software.

Officers will be able to plan and supervise the stowage of cargo, taking account of all relevant regulations and safety codes. They will also be able to make the necessary calculations to ensure adequate stability and to check that shear forces and bending moments are within permitted limits.

The safety precautions before entering enclosed or potentially contaminated spaces will be understood and applied.

Officers will be able to supervise the preparation and dunnaging of holds and the operation of ships' cargo gear and will be aware of the importance of adequately securing cargo to prevent damage to the ship of cargo. They will identify dangerous goods and use the IMDG Code (R54 and R55) to ensure such cargoes are stowed and separated correctly. They will know the hazards related to some bulk cargoes and the precautions to take during their loading, carriage and discharge. They will also have a basic knowledge of the piping and pumping arrangements of oil tankers.

## Function 2: Cargo Handling and Stowage at the Management Level

### 2.1 PLAN AND ENSURE SAFE LOADING, STOWAGE, SECURING, CARE DURING THE VOYAGE AND UNLOADING OF CARGOES

2.1.1 APPLICATION OF INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS CONCERNING THE SAFE HANDLING, STOWAGE, SECURING AND TRANSPORT OF CARGOES (6 hours)

Instructors should refer to the many IMO references concerning this topic and design exercises to let officers practise using information contained in the Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing and in a typical cargo securing manual.

2.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY OF CARGOES AND CARGO OPERATIONS (20 hours)

The time allotted to cargo calculations is based on the assumption that trainees have covered the necessary theoretical work in ship stability and strength to enable them to make calculations based on ship's data.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

When calculating draughts and trim, solutions are simplified, especially when using calculators or computers, by the consistent use of signs. The convention signs used are:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| loading | + | discharging | - |
| by the head | + | by the stern | - |
| forward of | + | abaft | - |
| starboard | + | port | - |
| hogging | + | sagging | - |

If a loading instrument is available, trainees should be given the opportunity to use it to familiarize themselves with the type of input required and the output provided by it. Manufacturers' illustrations and descriptions can be used in addition to or in place of the instrument if trainees do not have access to one.

### 2.1.3 STABILITY AND TRIM DIAGRAMS AND STRESS-CALCULATING EQUIPMENT (22 hours)

**Shear force, bending moments and torsional moments (8 hours)**

The load curve is given by the difference between the weight and buoyancy curves. Conventions on the sign of the load and hence on which side of the axis to plot the value vary between authors. The convention chosen is not important, but it is recommended that the chosen one is used consistently to avoid confusing trainees.

During the instruction the following properties of the curves should be pointed out to trainees:

- the total area under the weight curve equals the total area under the buoyancy curve;
- the area under the load curve above the axis equals the area below the axis;
- the maximum values of shear force occur where the load curve crosses the axis;
- the maximum values of bending moment occur where the shear-force curve crosses the axis; and
- the shear force and bending moment are zero at each end.

The classification society requirement for the carriage of a loading instrument for calculating shear forces and bending moments is commonly satisfied by the provision of a personal computer with approved programs on discs. In addition to calculating shear forces and bending moment, programs normally include the calculation of transverse stability, draught and trim. Other facilities to assist with cargo planning are also provided.

The program is arranged to perform a self-check on starting up, with a warning being given to the user if data corruption has occurred. A new copy of the master disc can be made and run to rectify that fault. If a printer is connected, a hard copy of results can be obtained.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## Torsion

Torsional stresses tend to produce twisting of the ship's hull about the longitudinal centreline, All ships experience torsional stresses when subject to oblique sea waves. At a particular instant, the sea may be attempting to roll the forward end to starboard while the after end is trying to roll to port. The ship's structure is designed to withstand this wave-induced torsion.

For most ships, normal cargo operations do not induce torsional stresses but in container ships it is possible that an excess of weight to one side at one bay is balanced by an excess to the other side at another bay, thus setting up a torsional stress.

Because of their very large hatch openings, container ships are particularly liable to structural damage, such as cracking at hatch corners, resulting from torsional stress. The classification societies state maximum permissible cargo torsion values. They also recommend that uneven transverse distributions of weights should be avoided and that excess torsion should be monitored for each load condition by means of calculation sheets and graphical representation. If the torsional moments exceed the permissible level, water ballast can be added at appropriate positions to reduce them.

An example of part of a calculation sheet is shown in Figure 1.

The levers for each row are printed on the sheet, the weights are entered and the products are calculated. The resulting moment for each bay is found and recorded, with the correct sign.

An example of loading is shown in Figure 2 (below).

The accumulated moment for each group of bays is plotted on a graph, as Figure 3.

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Twin Bays | Torsion moment | Accumulated moments | Torsion moment | Accumulated moments |
| 01/03 | +150 | +150 | +150 | +150 |
| 05/07 | –200 | –50 | –200 | –50 |
| 09/11 | –1000 | –1050 | –1000 | –1050 |
| 13/15 | –100 | –1150 | –100 | –1150 |
| 17/19 | +50 | –1100 | +50 | –1100 |
| 21/23 | –600 | –1700 | +850 | –250 |
| 25/27 | –200 | –1900 | –200 | –450 |
| 29/31 | –300 | –2200 | –300 | –750 |
| 33/35 | +800 | –1400 | +800 | +50 |
| 37/39 | –50 | –1450 | –50 | 0 |

**Figure 2: Example of loading**

Column 2 shows a total listing moment of 1450 metre-tonnes to starboard and an excessive torsional moment at bays 25 to 31.

Water ballast is added or the anti-heeling tanks are adjusted to reduce the listing moment to zero and at the same time to reduce the excessive torsional moment. In this case, a moment of 1450 metre-tonnes to port has been introduced at bays 21/23.

Columns 1 and 2 are amended to take account of the ballast and are shown as columns 3 and 4. The graph is then re-drawn.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

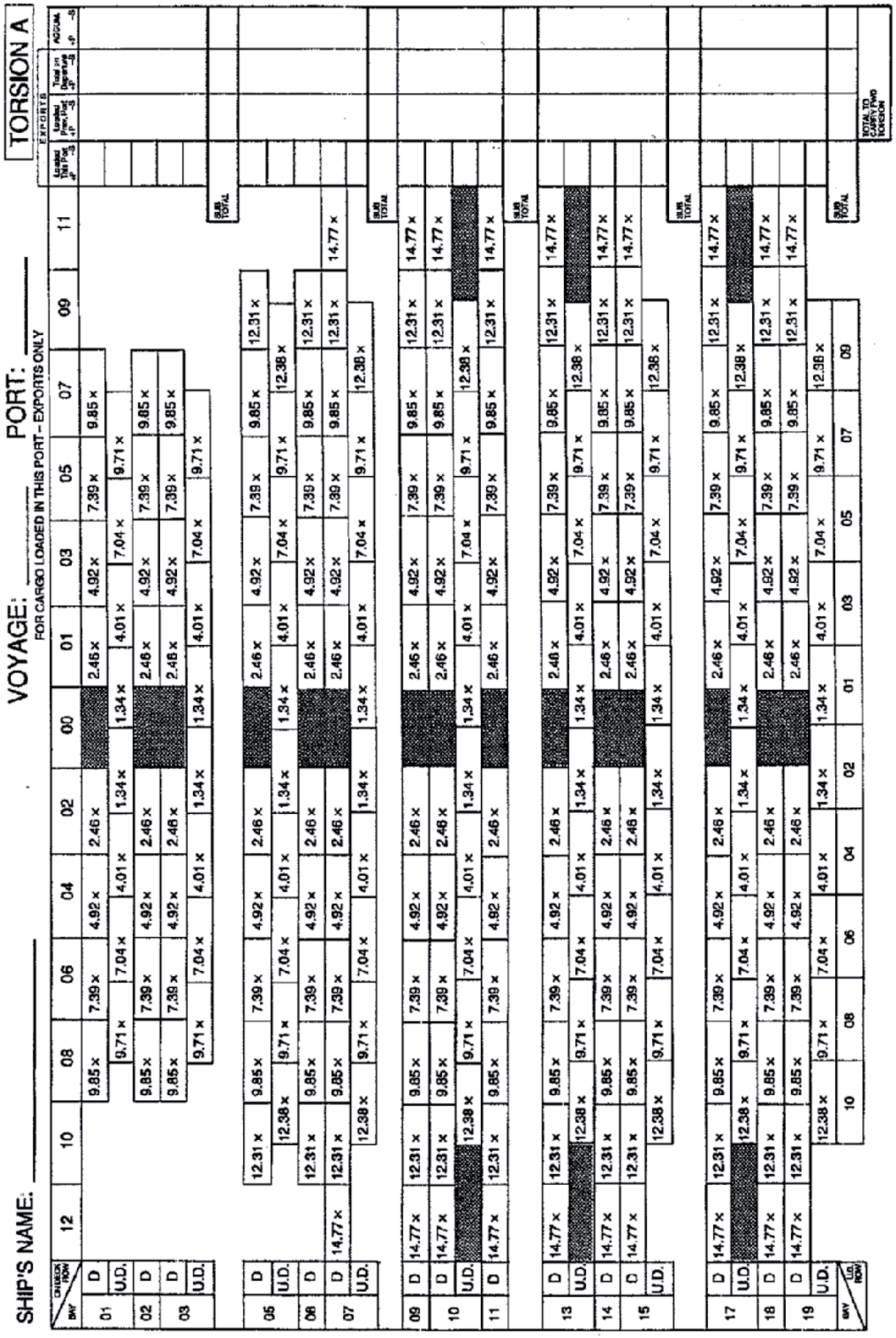



**Figure 1: Example of part of a calculation sheet**



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

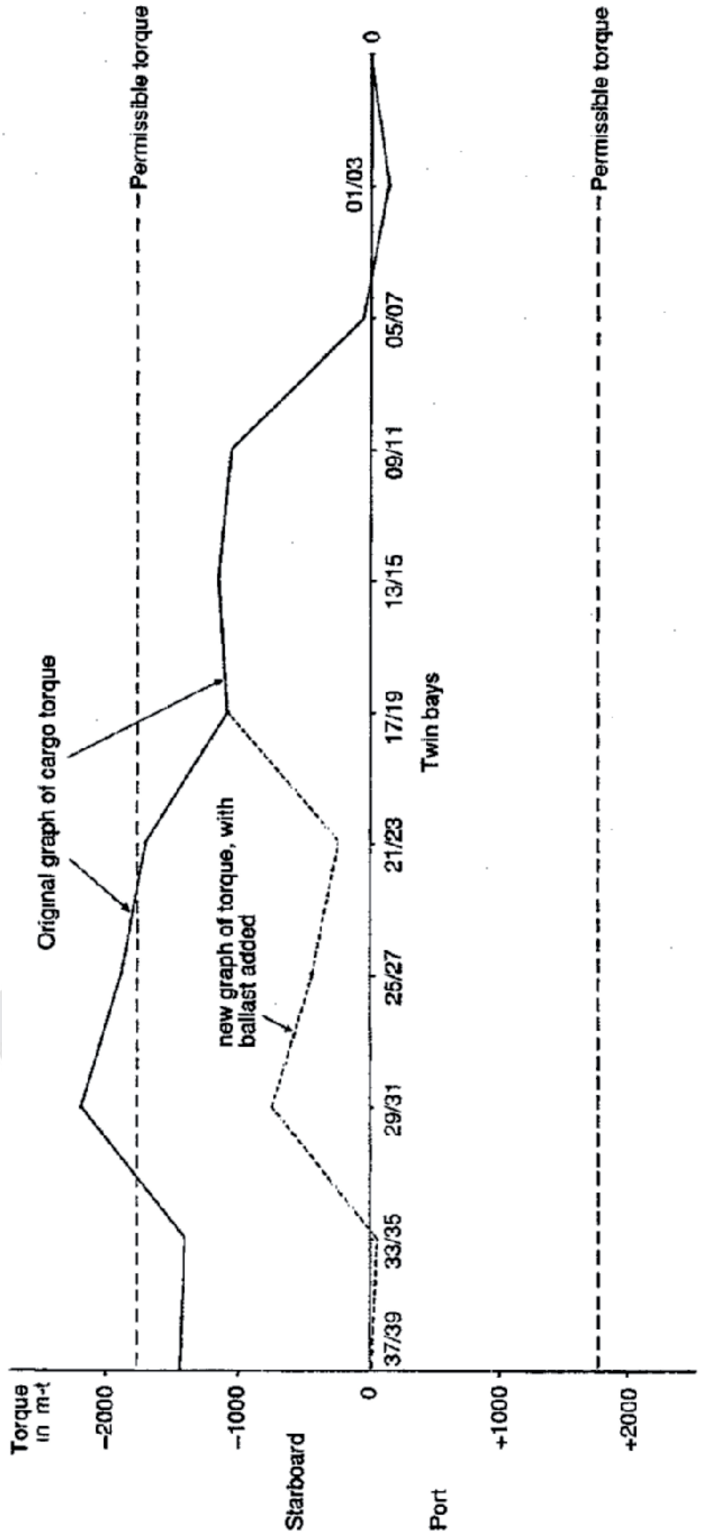



**Figure 3: Graph of cargo torque**

## Knowledge of loading cargoes and ballasting in order to keep hull stress within acceptable limits (6 hours)

The importance of devising a cargo stowage plan and loading/unloading plan referring to the loading manual to ascertain an appropriate cargo load distribution, satisfying the imposed limits on structural loading should be pointed out to the trainees. The ship can undergo



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

excessive stresses during loading/deballasting and unloading/ballasting operations and these need to be emphasized by the instructor. Recent cases involving complete structural failure during these operations can be discussed in the class, for better understanding, with the assistance of pictures and animations, wherever applicable.

### 2.1.4 STOWAGE AND SECURING OF CARGOES ON BOARD SHIP, CARGO HANDLING GEAR AND SECURING AND LASHING EQUIPMENT (19 hours)

**Timber deck cargoes (3 hours)**

The Code of Safe Practice for Ships carrying Timber Deck Cargoes (R9) should be fully covered. The emergency actions of the Master for dealing with incidents such as the partial loss of the deck load or problems with stability resulting from water absorption or ice accretion should be included.

**Procedures for receiving and delivering cargo (3 hours)**

Trainees should realize that bills of lading are negotiable documents and provide title to ownership of the goods described in them. A cargo may be bought and sold on the evidence of the bill of lading and it is therefore essential that it provides a true and accurate description of the goods. Any damage or evidence of poor condition should be noted on the mate's receipts from which the bills of lading will be drawn up. The acceptance of letters of indemnity in return for clean bills for goods which are not in apparent good condition could be construed as compounding a fraud. When bills of lading contain descriptions which cannot be verified by the ship's officers, e.g. the quality of wheat in a grain cargo, they should be qualified by the inclusion of "said to be….", "contents unknown, said to contain …" and similar expressions.

Where boat notes are signed as mate's receipts, care should be taken not to sign a duplicate note for the same consignment. That could lead to eventual claims for the complete loss of the consignment.

Containers are frequently shipped on through bills of lading which have been issued prior to their arrival at the ship. A check should be made that seals and locks are in place at shipment.

Trainees should be reminded that empty bags or other packages found during discharging should be landed and a receipt obtained for them to ensure that the freight earned on their carriage is obtained. Sweepings should be collected separately, put into bags and discharged as such, V74.

**Care of cargo during carriage (4 hours)**

The general principles of stowage and care of cargoes should be covered. The requirements for particular commodities can be found in reference books such as T31.

Measures taken for the care of cargo during the voyage, such as the use of ventilation systems or inspections of lashings, should be entered in the logbook. Entries should also be made if ventilation is suspended due to heavy weather or any other circumstances which may have an adverse effect on the cargo. The Master will include such entries in the log extracts to support the noting of protest.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Requirements applicable to cargo handling gear (4 hours)**

Where a national register and certificates are applicable, trainees should be made familiar with the requirements of those and the details of tests and examinations which should be entered.

In some ports, the trades union representative of the dock labour force may insist on inspecting the register and rigging plan before work commences. It is important that changes in items such as blocks and shackles attached to a derrick are noted on the rigging plan.

**Maintenance of cargo gear (3 hours)**

This section deals with the practical maintenance and inspection of cargo gear. Attention should be drawn to the requirement that no new item of loose gear should be made of wrought iron. Any existing items of wrought iron are subject to the requirements for periodic heat treatment, unless exempted.

**Maintenance of hatch covers (2 hours)**

The water tightness of hatch covers is vital, both for the safety of the ship and for the protection of cargo from water damage. Before loading a bulk cargo that has a tendency to liquefy or which produces dangerous fumes in contact with water, the hatch covers should be hose-tested for watertightness (V60).

In combination carriers, the proper sealing of hatches is essential to prevent the release of flammable vapour at deck level and for the maintenance of a small positive pressure by the inert gas system.

2.1.5 LOADING AND UNLOADING OPERATIONS, WITH SPECIAL REGARD TO THE TRANSPORT OF CARGOES IDENTIFIED IN THE CODE OF SAFE PRACTICE FOR CARGO STOWAGE AND SECURING (6 hours)

**Loading, stowage and discharge of heavy weights (3 hours)**

Heavy lifts require careful planning before loading. The position in which they are to be stowed must be prepared to accept the lift, possibly requiring the construction of special cradles to support the load. Adequate means of securing must be provided, which often necessitates the welding of additional eye-bolts to the deck. The stability of the ship must be sufficient to limit the list to a reasonable angle both when loading and discharging with the ship's gear. All heavy-lift operations should be supervised by a senior officer (V69).

**Methods and safeguards when fumigating holds (2 hours)**

A thorough knowledge and understanding of the Recommendations on the Safe Use of Pesticides in Ships and its supplement is required.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 2.1.6 GENERAL KNOWLEDGE OF TANKERS AND TANKER OPERATIONS (16 hours)

**Terms and definitions (1 hour)**

Instructors will find much of the material for the basis of lectures in T14.

**Contents and application of the International Safety Guide for Oil Tankers and Terminals (ISGOTT) (2 hours)**

This section is intended to provide a general introduction to tanker operations and the guidance available in the ISGOTT. The instructor should point out the 4 parts of ISGOTT, and brief explanation of each chapter should be discussed with trainees.

**Oil tanker operations and related pollution prevention regulations (3 hours)**

Trainees should be aware of the procedures for ballasting, tank cleaning and gas-freeing and how these are performed within the requirements of MARPOL. A detailed treatment of the operations is not required (V64, V78).

**Chemical tankers (3 hours)**

This section provides a general introduction to the construction and equipment of chemical tankers as set out in the IBC Code. Only a simple treatment of operations is intended since officers who will serve in such ships are required to undertake additional specialized training. Further information on cargoes and operations may be found in reference Textbook Ref. R82 and video V61, V62, V63.

**Tank cleaning and control of pollution in chemical tankers (2 hours)**

The emphasis should be on how tank cleaning and ballasting operations are carried out in compliance with Annex II of the MARPOL Convention and, in particular, on the use of the Procedures and Arrangements Manual to ensure compliance with the regulations.

**Gas tankers (3 hours)**

This section provides a general overview of the different types of gas tanker, their construction and their equipment as set out in the IGC Code. The treatment should take account of the fact that officers who will serve in gas tankers will undertake further specialized training (V56, V129).

**Cargo operations in gas tankers (2 hours)**

The objective of this section is to provide a general insight into the sequence of cargo operations carried out aboard gas tankers without going into detail. Further information will be found in references.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 2.1.7 KNOWLEDGE OF THE OPERATIONAL AND DESIGN LIMITATIONS OF BULK CARRIERS (5 hours)

**Operational and design limitations of bulk carriers (3 hours)**

Trainees should be able to identify the problems generally considered to be associated with bulk carriers, such as high density cargoes, leading to loss of buoyancy or structural failure, if holds are flooded in the loaded condition, high loading rate, leading to possible loss of control of load condition; with consequent high stresses, vulnerability to internal damage during cargo loading and discharging operations, leading to protective coating damage, accelerated corrosion, and local structural failure, low freeboard, leading to high green sea loads on deck structures, vulnerability to flooding of forward holds, rapid corrosion caused by corrosive cargo. Many points have been included in the detailed teaching, which the Instructors should point out to trainees.

**SOLAS chapter XII Additional safety measures for bulk carriers (1 hour)**

Instructors should explain chapter XII of the SOLAS Convention which contains regulations of Additional safety measures for bulk carriers with the trainees including, but not limited to, restrictions in carriage of high density dry bulk cargoes, document of compliance, permanent marking on the side shell, damage stability requirements, loading instruments, hold, ballast and dry space water ingress alarms requirements, availability of pumping systems requirements and restrictions from sailing with any hold empty.

**CSR Bulk (1 hour)**

Instructors should point out the reasons, intention and benefit of the Common Structural rules for bulk carriers.

## 2.1.8 LOADING, CARE AND UNLOADING OF BULK CARGOES (6 hours)

**Application of all available shipboard data related to loading, care and unloading of bulk cargoes (5 hours)**

Procedure for loading a bulk cargo should be explained in detail. The use of ship's approved loading manual, including its content should be discussed thoroughly with the trainees. The trainee's knowledge in respect of planning and loading/unloading should be assessed from a loading computer.

**Code of practice for the safe loading and unloading of bulk carriers (BLU Code) (1 hour)**

The contents of the BLU Code should be discussed in detail with the trainees. Instructors should also point out the consequences of failure to apply BLU Code to the trainees.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

2.1.9 SAFE CARGO HANDLING IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF THE RELEVANT INSTRUMENTS (3 hours)

**Establish procedures for safe cargo handling in accordance with the provisions of the relevant instruments such as:**

- **IMDG Code**
- **IMSBC Code**
- **MARPOL 73/78, Annexes III and V**

The safe cargo handling in accordance with these codes and conventions should be discussed with the trainees. The points are covered in the detailed teaching syllabus, which the instructors should find useful.

2.1.10 EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATIONS AND IMPROVING WORKING RELATIONSHIPS

**Basic principles for establishing effective communications and improving working relationships between ship and terminal personnel (1 hour)**

The information that needs to be exchanged with shore should be discussed in detail with the trainees.

## 2.2 ASSESS REPORTED DEFECTS AND DAMAGE TO CARGO SPACES, HATCH COVERS AND BALLAST TANKS AND TAKE APPROPRIATE ACTION

2.2.1 LIMITATIONS ON STRENGTH OF THE VITAL CONSTRUCTIONAL PARTS OF A STANDARD BULK CARRIER AND INTERPRET GIVEN FIGURES FOR BENDING MOMENTS AND SHEAR FORCES (3 hours)

Instructors should make use of the points explained in the detailed teaching syllabus, and discuss them in detail with the trainees

2.2.2 METHODS TO AVOID THE DETRIMENTAL EFFECTS ON BULK CARRIERS OF CORROSION, FATIGUE AND INADEQUATE CARGO HANDLING (3 hours)

Instructors should make use of the points explained in the detailed teaching syllabus, and discuss them in detail with the trainees

## 2.3 CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS GOODS

2.3.1 INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS, STANDARDS, CODES INCLUDING THE INTERNATIONAL MARITIME DANGEROUS GOODS (IMDG) CODE AND THE INTERNATIONAL MARITIME SOLID BULK CARGOES (IMSBC) CODE AND RECOMMENDATIONS ON CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS CARGOES (3 hours)

Instructors should refer to the IMO references concerning this topic and design exercises to let officers practise using information contained in the IMDG Code, the **International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC) Code**, which replaces the **Code of Safe Practice for Solid Bulk Cargoes (BC Code)**, which aims primarily to facilitate the safe stowage and



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

shipment of solid bulk cargoes by providing information on the dangers associated with the shipment of certain types of solid bulk cargoes and instructions on the procedures to be adopted when the shipment of solid bulk cargoes is contemplated and the IBC Code.

2.3.2 CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS, HAZARDOUS AND HARMFUL CARGOES; PRECAUTIONS DURING LOADING AND UNLOADING AND CARE DURING THE VOYAGE OF DANGEROUS, HAZARDOUS AND HARMFUL CARGOES

**Dangerous goods in packages** **(10 hours)**

Trainees should be able to use the IMDG Code to find the information, stowage requirements and precautions to take for a given substance. They should also find the correct emergency schedule and the relevant entry in the MFAG for that substance. Given several substances, they should be able to determine the required segregation between them, including applications to containers and ro-ro units.

It should be pointed out to trainees that safety in the handling and carriage of dangerous goods is primarily ensured by the specification of stringent packaging requirements. Damaged packages should not be accepted for loading. The new requirements as per IMDG Code, for the training of all staff (shore and sea) at both operational and management level, who handle or process dangerous goods shipments for transportation by sea should be pointed out.

**Solid bulk cargoes** **(9 hours)**

This section deals with the International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC Code). A ship may be required to carry a substance not included in the Code. The Master should obtain all relevant information about its properties before loading it. The type of information included in the Code should be used as a guide to what questions should be asked.

Previous loading practices and maintenance activity appear to be important factors in the safety of dry bulk carriers. Instructors should explain the problems suffered by some single skin dry bulkers in the early 1990s. The majority were over 15 years of age and were carrying iron ore at the time of the loss. Masters and chief officers should be able to identify potential weak points and carry out routine inspections to detect unsafe conditions and take appropriate actions. Focus should be on the structural arrangements and hull integrity with emphasis on the critical areas of the structure: hatch corners, coamings; main frames and brackets; topside tanks; transverse bulkheads and any damage caused during cargo handling.

IACS classification societies introduced an enhanced survey programme (ESP) for bulkers and tankers in 1993 covering the preparation and planning of hull surveys, harmonized bottom survey in dry dock with class renewal survey, maintenance of a survey documents file on board and corrosion prevention measures (T35, V59). This was adopted in chapter XI of SOLAS as regulation 2 Enhanced surveys, applicable to oil tankers and bulk carriers from July 1998.

**International Code for the Safe Carriage of Grain in Bulk (International Grain Code)** **(7 hours)**

An example of a grain loading calculation should be made by trainees.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Master and Chief Mate

# Function 3:
# Controlling the Operation of the Ship and Care for Persons on Board at the Management Level

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
IMO
PUBLISHING

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Master and Chief Mate

# Function 3: Controlling the Operation of the Ship and Care for Persons on Board at the Management Level

## INDEX


Page

**Part B3: Course Outline** . . . . . **196**
Timetable
Lectures
Course outline

**Part C3: Detailed Teaching Syllabus** . . . . . **200**
Introduction
Explanation of information contained in the syllabus tables
1.1 Control trim, stability and stress
1.2 Monitor and control compliance with legislative requirements and measures to ensure safety of life at sea and the protection of the marine environment
1.3 Maintain safety and security of the ship's crew and passengers and the operational condition of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems
1.4 Develop emergency and damage control plans and handle emergency situations
1.5 Use of leadership and managerial skills
1.6 Organize and manage the provision of medical care on board

**Part D3: Instructor Manual** . . . . . **287**




Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part B3: Course Outline

## ■ Timetable

No formal example of a timetable is included in this model course.

Development of a detailed timetable depends on the level of skills of the officers entering the course and the amount of revision work of basic principles that may be required.

Lecturers must develop their own timetable depending on:

- the level of skills of trainees
- the numbers to be trained
- the number of instructors

and normal practices at the training establishment.

Preparation and planning constitute an important factor which makes a major contribution to the effective presentation of any course of instruction.

## ■ Lectures

As far as possible, lectures should be presented within a familiar context and should make use of practical examples. They should be well illustrated with diagrams, photographs and charts where appropriate, and be related to matter learned during seagoing time.

An effective manner of presentation is to develop a technique of giving information and then reinforcing it. For example, first tell the trainees briefly what you are going to present to them; then cover the topic in detail; and, finally, summarize what you have told them. The use of an overhead projector and the distribution of copies of the transparencies as trainees handouts contribute to the learning process.

## ■ Course outline

The tables that follow list the competencies and areas of knowledge, understanding and proficiency, together with the estimated total hours required for lectures and practical exercises. Teaching staff should note that timings are suggestions only and should be adapted to suit individual groups of trainees depending on their experience, ability, equipment and staff available for training.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## Course outline

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|
| **Competence:** | | |
| **3.1 CONTROL TRIM, STABILITY AND STRESS** | | |
| 3.1.1 FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF SHIP CONSTRUCTION, TRIM AND STABILITY | | |
| .1 Shipbuilding materials | 3 | |
| .2 Welding | 3 | |
| .3 Bulkheads | 4 | |
| .4 Watertight and weathertight doors | 3 | |
| .5 Corrosion and its prevention | 4 | |
| .6 Surveys and dry-docking | 2 | |
| .7 Stability | 83 | 102 |
| 3.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY IN THE EVENT OF DAMAGE AND STABILITY | | |
| .1 Effect on trim and stability of a ship in the event of damage to and consequent flooding of a compartment and countermeasures to be taken | 9 | |
| .2 Theories affecting trim and stability | 2 | 11 |
| 3.1.3 KNOWLEDGE OF IMO RECOMMENDATIONS CONCERNING SHIP STABILITY | | |
| .1 Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the international conventions and codes | 2 | 2 |
| 3.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY IN THE EVENT OF DAMAGE AND STABILITY | | |
| **3.2 MONITOR AND CONTROL COMPLIANCE WITH LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS AND MEASURES TO ENSURE SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA AND THE PROTECTION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT** | | |
| 3.2.1 INTERNATIONAL MARITIME LAW EMBODIED IN INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS AND CONVENTIONS | | |
| .1 Certificates and other documents required to be carried on board ships by international conventions | 1 | |
| .2 Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention on Load Lines | 1 | |
| .3 Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea | 2 | |
| .4 Responsibilities under the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships | 3 | |
| .5 Maritime declarations of health and the requirements of the International Health Regulations | 3 | |
| .6 Responsibilities under other international maritime law embodied in international agreements and conventions that impact on the role of management level deck officers | 35 | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | | | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | .7 | Responsibilities under international instruments affecting the safety of the ship, passengers, crew and cargo | 4 | |
| | .8 | Methods and aids to prevent pollution of the marine environment by ships | 2 | |
| | .9 | National legislation for implementing international agreements and conventions | 1 | 52 |
| **3.3** | **MAINTAIN SAFETY AND SECURITY OF THE SHIP'S CREW AND PASSENGERS AND THE OPERATIONAL CONDITION OF LIFE-SAVING, FIREFIGHTING AND OTHER SAFETY SYSTEMS** | | | |
| 3.3.1 | KNOWLEDGE OF LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCE REGULATIONS | | 2 | 2 |
| 3.3.2 | ORGANIZATION OF FIRE DRILLS AND ABANDON SHIP DRILLS | | - | - |
| | *See IMO model courses 2.03 and 1.23 and STCW Code, sections A-V1/3 and A-V1/2* | | | |
| 3.3.3 | MAINTENANCE OF OPERATIONAL CONDITION OF LIFE-SAVING, FIREFIGHTING AND OTHER SAFETY SYSTEMS | | - | - |
| | *See IMO model courses 2.03 and 1.23 and STCW Code, sections A-V1/3 and A-V1/2* | | | |
| 3.3.4 | ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN TO PROTECT AND SAFEGUARD ALL PERSONS ON BOARD IN EMERGENCIES | | 4 | 4 |
| 3.3.5 | ACTIONS TO LIMIT DAMAGE AND SALVE THE SHIP FOLLOWING A FIRE, EXPLOSION, COLLISION OR GROUNDING | | 4 | 4 |
| **3.4** | **DEVELOP EMERGENCY AND DAMAGE CONTROL PLANS AND HANDLE EMERGENCY SITUATIONS** | | | |
| 3.4.1 | PREPARATION OF CONTINGENCY PLANS FOR RESPONSE TO EMERGENCIES | | 9 | 9 |
| 3.4.2 | SHIP CONSTRUCTION INCLUDING DAMAGE CONTROL | | 4 | 4 |
| 3.4.3 | METHODS AND AIDS FOR FIRE PREVENTION, DETECTION AND EXTINCTION | | - | - |
| | *See IMO model course 2.03 and STCW Code, section A-V1/3* | | | |
| 3.4.4 | FUNCTIONS AND USE OF LIFE SAVING APPLIANCES | | - | - |
| | *See IMO model course 1.23 and STCW Code, section A-V1/2-1* | | | |
| **3.5** | **USE OF LEADERSHIP AND MANAGERIAL SKILLS** | | | |
| 3.5.1 | SHIPBOARD PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT AND TRAINING | | | |
| | .1 | Shipboard personnel management | 10 | |
| | .2 | Training on board ships | 6 | 16 |
| 3.5.2 | RELATED INTERNATIONAL MARITIME CONVENTIONS, RECOMMENDATIONS AND NATIONAL LEGISLATION | | | |
| | .1 | Related international maritime conventions, recommendations and national legislation | 4 | 4 |
| 3.5.3 | APPLICATION OF TASK AND WORKLOAD MANAGEMENT | | | |
| | .1 | Task and workload management | 8 | 8 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|
| 3.5.4 EFFECTIVE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT | | |
| .1 Application of effective resource management at a management level | 10 | 10 |
| 3.5.5 DECISION-MAKING TECHNIQUES | | |
| .1 Situation and risk assessment | 2 | |
| .2 Identify and generate options | 2 | |
| .3 Selecting course of action | 2 | |
| .4 Evaluation of outcome effectiveness | 1 | 7 |
| 3.5.6 DEVELOPMENT, IMPLEMENTATION AND OVERSIGHT OF STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES | 1 | 1 |
| **3.6 ORGANIZE AND MANAGE THE PROVISION OF MEDICAL CARE ON BOARD** | | |
| 3.6.1 MEDICAL PUBLICATIONS | | |
| .1 International Medical Guide for Ships | 0.5 | |
| .2 International Code of Signals (medical section) | 0.5 | |
| .3 Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods | 3 | 4 |
| **Total for Function 3: Controlling the Operation of the Ship and Care for Persons on Board at the Management Level** | | **244 hours** |

Teaching staff and Administrations should note that the hours for lectures and exercises are suggestions only as regards sequence and length of time allocated to each objective. These factors may be adapted by lecturers to suit individual groups of trainees depending on their experience, ability, equipment and staff available for teaching.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part C3: Detailed Teaching Syallbus

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>3.1.1 FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF SHIP CONSTRUCTION, TRIM AND STABILITY<br>3.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY IN THE EVENT OF DAMAGE AND FLOODING<br>3.1.3 KNOWLEDGE OF IMO RECOMMENDATIONS CONCERNING SHIP STABILITY | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.1.1 FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF SHIP CONSTRUCTION, TRIM AND STABILITY<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T4, T5, T17, T28, T35, T44, B3, B29, B35, B118, B144, B206<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, A4, V85, V120, V121, V122, V141<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the basic knowledge of ship construction and stability from IMO model course 7.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of this content before undertaking this management level content* | | |
| **1.1** | **Shipbuilding materials (3 hours)**<br>(Note that this content is not directly required by the STCW Code but is recommended to be included in training courses)<br>– states that steels are alloys of iron, with properties dependent upon the type and amounts of alloying materials used<br>– states that the specifications of shipbuilding steels are laid down by classification societies<br>– states that shipbuilding steel is tested and graded by classification society surveyors, who stamp it with approval marks<br>– explains that mild steel, graded A to E, is used for most parts of the ship<br>– states why higher tensile steel may be used in areas of high stress, such as the sheer strake<br>– explains that the use of higher tensile steel in place of mild steel results in a saving of weight for the same strength<br>– explains what is meant by:<br>  – tensile strength<br>  – ductility<br>  – hardness<br>  – toughness<br>– defines strain as extension divided by original length<br>– sketches a stress-strain curve for mild steel<br>– explains:<br>  – yield point<br>  – ultimate tensile stress<br>  – modulus of elasticity<br>– explains that toughness is related to the tendency to brittle fracture<br>– explains that stress fracture may be initiated by a small crack or notch in a plate<br>– states that cold conditions increase the chances of brittle fracture<br>– states why mild steel is unsuitable for the very low temperatures involved in the containment of liquefied gases<br>– lists examples where castings or forgings are used in ship construction<br>– explains the advantages of the use of aluminium alloys in the construction of superstructures | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that aluminium alloys are tested and graded by classification society surveyors<br>– explains how strength is preserved in aluminium superstructures in the event of fire<br>– describes the special precautions against corrosion that are needed where aluminium alloy is connected to steelwork | |
| **1.2** | **Welding (3 hours)**<br>(Note that this content is not directly required by STCW 2010 but is recommended to be included in training courses)<br>– describes the process of manual electric arc welding<br>– explains the purpose of flux during welding<br>– describes briefly the automatic welding processes, electro-slag, TIG and MIG<br>– describes butt, lap and fillet welds<br>– describes the various preparations of a plate edge for welding<br>– explains what is meant by a full-penetration fillet weld<br>– explains what is meant by 'single pass', 'multipass' and 'back' run<br>– explains how welding can give rise to distortion and describes measures which are taken to minimize it<br>– describes the use of tack welding<br>– describes weld faults:<br>– lack of fusion<br>– no inter-run penetration<br>– lack of reinforcement<br>– lack of root penetration<br>– slag inclusion<br>– porosity<br>– overlap<br>– undercut<br>– states that classification societies require tests on weld materials and electrodes before approving them<br>– discusses the electrode type and process of welding high tensile steels<br>– describes gas cutting of metals<br>– briefly describes the testing of welds:<br>– visual<br>– radiographic<br>– ultrasonic<br>– magnetic particle<br>– dye penetrant | R1 |
| **1.3** | **Bulkheads (4 hours)**<br>– states that transverse bulkheads serve to subdivide a ship against flooding and spread of fire, to support decks and superstructures and to resist racking stresses<br>– distinguishes between watertight, non-watertight and oil-tight or tank bulkheads | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – defines:<br>– margin line<br>– bulkhead deck<br>– watertight<br>– weathertight<br>– states that cargo ships must have:<br>– a collision bulkhead, watertight up to the freeboard deck, positioned not less than 5% of the length of the ship (or 10 metres, whichever is the less) and not more than 8% of the length of the ship from the forward perpendicular<br>– an afterpeak bulkhead enclosing the stem tube and rudder trunk in a watertight compartment<br>– a bulkhead at each end of the machinery space<br>– explains that cargo ships require additional bulkheads, as laid down by classification society rules, according to their length or as required by SOLAS<br>– describes the construction of a watertight bulkhead and its attachments to sides, deck and tank top<br>– describes how watertightness is maintained where bulkheads are pierced by longitudinal, beams or pipes<br>– states the rule regarding penetrations of the collision bulkhead<br>– states that watertight floors are fitted directly below main watertight bulkheads<br>– explains that oil-tight bulkheads and bulkheads forming boundaries of tanks are built with heavier scantlings than watertight bulkheads<br>– describes how bulkheads are tested for tightness<br>– gives examples of non-watertight bulkheads<br>– explains the purpose of wash bulkheads in cargo tanks or deep tanks<br>– states longitudinal bulkheads serve to subdivide liquid cargoes, provide additional longitudinal support and reduce free surface effect<br>– distinguishes between Cofferdam, Flat plate and Corrugated bulkhead construction<br>– explains the use of cross ties in tanker construction | |
| **1.4** | **Watertight and weathertight doors (3 hours)**<br>**Explains the general design and construction features of SOLAS compliant vessels in terms of watertight integrity**<br>– explains the possible effects of sustaining damage when in a less favourable condition<br>– states that the number of openings in watertight bulkheads of passenger ships should be reduced to the minimum compatible with the design and working of the ship<br>– categorizes watertight doors as:<br>class 1 — hinged doors<br>class 2 — hand-opened sliding doors<br>class 3 — sliding doors which are power-operated as well as hand-operated<br>– states that all types of watertight doors should be capable of being closed with the ship listed to 15° either way | R1<br><br><br><br>R2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – describes with sketches the arrangement of a power-operated sliding watertight door<br>– describes with sketches a hinged watertight door, showing the means of securing it<br>– states that hinged watertight doors are only permitted above a deck at least 2.0 metres above the deepest subdivision load line<br>***Cargo Vessels***<br>– distinguishes between ships of Type 'A' and Type 'B' for the purposes of computation of freeboard<br>– describes the extent of damage which a Type 'A' ship of over 150 metres length should withstand<br>– explains that a Type 'A' ship of over 150 metres length is described as a 'one-compartment ship'<br>– describes the requirements for survivability of Type 'B' ships with reduced freeboard assigned<br>– summarizes the equilibrium conditions regarded as satisfactory after flooding<br>***All ships***<br>– states that openings in watertight bulkheads must be fitted with watertight doors<br>– explains that weathertight doors in superstructure openings are similar to hinged watertight doors<br>– states that drills for the operating of watertight doors, side scuttles, valves and other closing mechanisms must be held weekly<br>– states the requirements for watertight openings to be closed at sea<br>– discusses procedures for ensuring that all watertight openings are closed<br>– states that all watertight doors in main transverse bulkheads, in use at sea, must be operated daily<br>– states that watertight doors and their mechanisms and indicators, all valves the closing of which is necessary to make a compartment watertight and all valves for damage-control cross-connections must be inspected at sea at least once per week<br>– states that records of drills and inspections are to be entered in the log, with a record of any defects found | |
| **1.5** | **Corrosion and its prevention (4 hours)**<br>– explains what is meant by corrosion<br>– explains what is meant by corrosion of metals and gives examples of where this is likely to occur<br>– describes the formation of a corrosion cell and defines anode, cathode and electrolyte<br>– states that corrosion takes place at the anode while the cathode remains unaffected<br>– describes the galvanic series of metals in seawater<br>– given the galvanic series, states which of two metals will form the anode in a corrosion cell<br>– explains the differences in surface condition or in stress concentration can give rise to corrosion cells between two areas of the same metal | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that corrosion can be controlled by:
  - applying a protective coating to isolate the steel from the air or from seawater electrolyte
  - using cathodic protection to prevent steel from forming the anode of a corrosion cell
- explains that cathodic protection can only be used to protect the underwater hull or ballasted tanks
- states that both of the methods mentioned above are normally used together
- explains what mill scale is and states that it is cathodic to mild steel
- describes the treatment of steel in a shipyard and the use of holding primers (shop primers)
- explains that the required preparation of steelwork depends upon the type of paint to be applied
- states that many modern paints, such as epoxy and polyurethane, need to be applied to a very clean shot-blasted surface
- states that paints consist mainly of a vehicle, a pigment and a solvent, and explains the purpose of each
- explains the suitability of the following paint types for various applications as:
  - drying oils
  - oleo-resins
  - alkyd resins
  - polymerizing chemicals
  - bitumen
- describes the action of anti-fouling paint
- describes the use of self-polishing anti-fouling paint
- explains the ban on harmful types of anti-fouling paint
- describes typical paint schemes for:
  - underwater areas
  - boot topping
  - topsides
  - weather decks
  - superstructures
  - tank interiors
- states the safety precautions to take when using paints
- describes the system of cathodic protection using sacrificial anodes
- lists the metals and alloys which may be used as anodes
- explains why anodes of magnesium and of magnesium alloy are not permitted in cargo/ballast tanks and in adjacent tanks in tankers
- states that good electrical contact between the anode and the hull or tank is essential
- explains why the anodes are insulated from the hull
- describes the impressed-current system of hull protection
- explains that the system is adjusted for optimum protection, often automatically, by use of a reference cell



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that electrical connection with the hull via slip rings and brushes on the rudder stock and propeller shaft ensures protection of the rudder and propeller<br>– explains that, as the underwater paintwork deteriorates, higher currents are required for protection<br>– states that too high a current can result in damage to paintwork and a chalky deposit on areas of bare metal, which has to be removed before repainting can be carried out<br>– states that a protective shield of epoxy resin is applied for about 1 metre around the anodes to withstand the alkaline conditions there | |
| **1.6** | **Surveys and dry-docking (2 hours)**<br>– states the frequency of classification society surveys<br>– states that intervals between dry-dockings may be extended up to 2.5 years where a ship has high-resistance paint and an approved automatic impressed-current cathodic protection system<br>– states that continuous hull survey, in which all compartments are examined over a 5-year period, may replace the special surveys<br>– explains all types of survey a ship is subjected to, including but limiting to: Initial Survey, Renewal Survey, Periodical Survey, Intermediate Survey, Annual Survey, Inspection of the outside of the ships bottom, Additional Survey<br>– explains the harmonized system of ship survey and certification<br>– explains Condition Assessment Scheme (CAS) for oil tankers and Condition Assessment Programme (CAP)<br>– lists the items inspected at annual survey as:<br>– protection of openings: hatches, ventilators, cargo doors, side scuttles, overside discharges and any other openings through which water might enter<br>– guardrails<br>– water-clearing arrangements, freeing ports, scuppers<br>– means of access to crews quarters and working areas<br>– states that the inspections listed above are also required for the annual inspection under the International Convention on Load Lines<br>– lists the items to examine in dry-dock as:<br>– shell plating<br>– cathodic protection fittings<br>– rudder<br>– stem frame<br>– propeller<br>– anchors and chain cable<br>– describes the examinations to be made of the items listed above<br>– describes the cleaning, preparation and painting of the hull in dry-dock<br>– calculates paint quantities, given the formula for wetted surface area as:<br>$S = 2.58 \sqrt{\Delta} L$<br>where S = surface area in $m^2$<br>$\Delta$ = displacement in tonnes<br>L = length of ship in metres | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

**1.7 Stability (83 hours)**

**Approximate calculation of areas and volumes**

– states the trapezoidal rule for the area under a curve in terms of the number of ordinates, the interval and the ordinate values

– uses the trapezoidal rule to find the area under a curve defined by given ordinates

– states Simpson's first rule as

$A = h (y_1 + 4y_2 + y_3)/3$

where: A = area under curve

h = interval length

$y_1$, $y_2$, $y_3$ are ordinates

– writes down the repeated first rule for any odd number of ordinates

– uses Simpson's first rule to find the area under a curve defined by an odd number of ordinates

– states that the area is exact for a linear, quadratic or cubic curve but an approximation otherwise

– states Simpson's second rule as

$A = 3h (y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 + y_4)/8$

where: A = area

h = interval length

$y_1$, $y_2$, $y_3$, $y_4$ are ordinates

– writes down the repeated second rule for 7, 10, 13, etc., ordinates

– uses Simpson's second rule to find the area under a curve defined by a suitable number of given ordinates

– states that the area is exact for linear, quadratic or cubic curves

– states that the first rule has smaller errors than the second and should be used in preference where possible

– states that errors can be reduced by using a smaller interval

– states the 5, 8, –1 rule as $A = h (5y_1 + 8y_2 – y_3) / 12$

where: A = area between first and second ordinates

h = interval length

$y_1$, $y_2$, $y_3$, are ordinates

– uses Simpson's rules to find the area under a curve defined by any number of ordinates

– explains that the volume of a body may be calculated by using Simpson's rules with cross-sectional areas as ordinates

– calculates the volume of a ship to a stated draught by applying Simpson's rules to given cross-sectional areas or waterplane areas

– uses Simpson's first, second and 5, 8, -1 rules to approximate areas and volumes of ship structure and GZ curves with any number of ordinates and intermediate ordinates

**Effects of density**

– given the density of the water in the dock, calculates the displacement for a particular draught from the seawater displacement for that draught extracted from hydrostatic data



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- calculates the TPC for given mean draught and density of the dock water
- discusses the use of the Fresh Water Allowance and how to determine this for a ship
- states that FWA only applies when the ship is floating at or near its summer load line
- explains why the density of the water in the dock should be taken at the same time as the draughts are read
- describes the statical and dynamic effects on stability of the movement of liquids with a free surface
- calculates the virtual reduction in GM for liquids with a free surface in spaces with rectangular and triangular waterplanes
- deduces from the above objective that halving the breadth of a tank reduces the free surface effect to one eighth of its original value
- deduces that the subdividing a tank at the centre reduces its free surface effect to one quarter of that of the undivided tank
- states that the quantity 'inertia x density of liquid' is called the 'free surface moment' of the tank, in tonne-metres
- states that information for calculating free surface effect is included in tank capacity tables
- states that the information may be given in one of the following ways:
  - inertia in metre$^4$
  - free surface moments for a stated density of liquid in the tank
  - as a loss of GM, in tabulated form for a range of draughts (displacements) for a stated density of liquid in the tank
- corrects free surface moments when a tank contains a liquid of different density from that stated in the capacity table
- given a ship's displacement and the contents of its tanks, uses the information from ship's stability information to calculate the loss of GM due to slack tanks
- given a ship's departure conditions and the daily consumption of fuel, water and stores, calculates the GM allowing for free surfaces on arrival at destination

**Stability at moderate and large angles of heel**

- states that the formula $GZ = GM \sin\theta$ does not hold for angles in excess of about 10°
- states that the initial KM is calculated from

  $KM = KB + BM$
- uses a metacentric diagram to obtain values of KM, KB and BM for given draughts
- states that the transverse $BM = I/V$

  where: I = second moment of area of the waterplane about the centre line;

  V = underwater volume of the ship
- states that for a rectangular waterplane $I = LB^3/12$

  where: L is the length of the waterplane;

  B is the breadth of the waterplane



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- shows that, for a box-shaped vessel,
  $KM = (B^2/12d) + (d/2)$
  where: d = draught
- states that, for moderate and large angles of heel, values of GZ found by calculating the position of the centre of buoyancy are provided by the shipbuilder for a range of displacements and angles of heel for an assumed position of the centre of gravity
- uses cross-curves of stability and KN curves to construct a curve of statical stability for a given displacement and value of KG, making correction for any free surface moments
- explains how to use the initial metacentric height as an aid to drawing the curve
- identifies from the curve the approximate angle at which the deck edge immerses
- describes the effect of increased freeboard on the curve of statical stability for a ship with the same initial GM
- states that the righting lever, GZ, may be found from the wall-sided formula up to the angle at which the deck edge is immersed
- given the wall-sided formula:
  $GZ = (GM + BM/2\tan^2\theta) \sin\theta$
  and other relevant data, calculates the value of GZ for a stated angle of heel
- shows that, for small angles of heel, the term
  $BM/2\tan^2\theta$ is negligible, leading to the usual expression for GZ at small angles of heel
- uses the wall-sided formula for calculating the angle of loll of an initially unstable ship
- compares the result in the above objective with that obtained by connecting a curve of statical stability
- states that cross-curves and KN curves are drawn for the ship with its centre of gravity on the centre line
- demonstrates how to adjust the curve of statical stability for a ship with a list
- describes the effect when heeled to the listed side on:
  - the maximum righting moment
  - the angle of vanishing stability
  - the range of stability
- states that cross-curves and KN curves are drawn for the ship at the designed trim when upright
- states that righting levers may differ from those shown if the ship has a large trim when upright

**Simplified stability data**

- states that stability information may be supplied in a simplified form, consisting of:
  - a diagram or table of maximum deadweight moment
  - a diagram or table of minimum permissible GM
  - a diagram or table of maximum permissible KG all related to the displacement or draught in salt water



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that a deadweight moment is mass in tonnes x vertical height of the mass above the keel | |
| | – states that free surface moments are to be added to the deadweight moments when using the diagram of maximum deadweight moment | |
| | – states that if, for a stated displacement or draught, the total deadweight moment or KG is less than the maximum permissible value, the ship will have adequate stability | |
| | – reads the maximum permissible deadweight moment from a curve of deadweight moment for a given displacement | |
| | – given the masses loaded, their heights above the keel and the free surface moments of slack tanks, calculates the deadweight moment and uses the result with the diagram of deadweight moment to determine if the stability is adequate | |
| | – uses the diagram of deadweight moment to calculate the maximum mass that can be loaded in a given position to ensure adequate stability during a voyage, making allowance for the fuel, water and stores consumed and for any resulting free surface | |
| | – states that curves of maximum KG or minimum GM to ensure adequate stability in the event of partial loss of intact buoyancy are provided in passenger ships | R1, R2 |
| | **Trim and list** | |
| | – defines longitudinal centre of gravity (LCG) and longitudinal centre of buoyancy (LCB) | R1 |
| | – states that a ship trims about the centre of flotation until LCG and LCB are in the same vertical line | |
| | – states that the distance of the LOB from amidships or from the after perpendicular is given in a ship's hydrostatic data for the ship on an even keel | |
| | – explains that the LCG must be at the same distance from amidships as LCB when the ship floats on an even keel | |
| | – shows on a diagram of a ship constrained to an even keel the couple that is formed by the weight and buoyancy forces when LCG is not the same distance from amidships as LCB | |
| | – states that the trimming moment = displacement x the horizontal distance between LCB (tabulated) and LCG (actual) = $\Delta$ x $GG_1$<br>where $GG_1$ is the horizontal distance between the position of LCG for the even-keel condition and the actual LCG | |
| | – states that trim = ($\Delta$ x $GG_1$)/MCT 1cm | |
| | – states that if the actual LCG is abaft the tabulated position of LCB, then the trim will be by the stern, and vice versa | |
| | – given the initial displacement, initial position of LCG, masses loaded or discharged and their LCGs, calculates the final position of LCG | |
| | – using a ship's hydrostatic data and a given disposition of cargo, fuel, water and stores, determines the trim, the mean draught and the draughts at each end | |
| | – calculates the mass to move between given positions to produce a required trim or draught at one end | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– calculates where to load a given mass to produce a required trim or draught at one end
– calculates how to divide a loaded or discharged mass between two positions to produce a required trim or draught at one end
– calculates where to load a mass so as to keep the after draught constant
– states that calculated draughts refer to draughts at the perpendiculars
– given the distance of draught marks from the perpendiculars and the length between perpendiculars, corrects the draughts indicated by the marks
– given draughts forward, aft and amidships, states whether or not the ship is hogged or sagged and the amount
– corrects the draught amidships for hog or sag
– given the forward and after draughts, the length between perpendiculars and hydrostatic data, calculates the correction for trim to apply to the displacement corresponding to the draught amidships
– states that a second correction for trim, using Nemoto's formula, may be applied to the displacement
– given Nemoto's formula, calculates the second correction to displacement
– calculates the maximum list during loading or discharging a heavy lift, using a ship's derrick, given the relevant stability information and the dimensions of the derrick
– calculates the minimum GM required to restrict the list to a stated maximum when loading or discharging a heavy lift
– calculates the quantities of fuel oil or ballast to move between given locations to simultaneously correct a list and achieve a desired trim
– explains how to distinguish between list and loll and describes how to return the ship to the upright in each case
– by making use of curves of statical stability, including those for ships with zero or negative initial GM, determines the equilibrium angle of heel resulting from a transverse moment of mass

**Dynamical stability**

– defines dynamical stability at any angle of heel as the work done in inclining the ship to that angle
– states that the dynamical stability at any angle is given by the product of displacement and the area under the curve of statical stability up to that angle
– given a curve of statical stability, uses Simpson's rules to find the area in metre-radians up to a stated angle
– states that dynamical stability is usually expressed in tonne-metres
– explains that the dynamical stability at a given angle of heel represents the potential energy of the ship
– states that the potential energy is used partly in overcoming resistance to rolling and partly in producing rotational energy as the ship returns to the upright
– states that the rotational energy when the ship is upright causes it to continue rolling
– states that, in the absence of other disturbing forces, the ship will roll to an angle where the sum of the energy used in overcoming resistance to rolling and the dynamical stability are equal to the rotational energy when upright



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| – states that a beam wind exerts a force equal to the wind pressure multiplied by the projected lateral area of the portion of the ship and deck cargo above the waterline<br>– explains that a heeling moment is formed, equal to the force of the wind multiplied by the vertical separation between the centres of the lateral areas of the portions of the ship above and below the waterline<br>– states that the heeling lever equals the heeling moment divided by the ship's displacement<br>– states that a steady wind will cause a ship to heel to an angle at which the righting lever is equal to the heeling over<br>– states that a ship under the action of a steady wind would roll about the resulting angle of heel<br>– on a curve of righting levers, indicates the angle of equilibrium under the action of a steady wind and the areas which represent the dynamical stability at angles of roll to each side of the equilibrium position<br>– by reference to dynamical stability, describes the effect of an increase in wind pressure when a vessel is at its maximum angle of roll to windward<br>– summarizes the recommendation on severe wind and rolling criterion for the intact stability of passenger and cargo ships<br>– by reference to a curve of righting levers and dynamical stability, describes the effect of a listing moment on the rolling of the ship about the equilibrium position | | |
| **Approximate GM by means of rolling period tests**<br>– states that, for ships up to 70m in length, the GM can be verified in still water by causing the ship to roll and noting the rolling period<br>– defines the rolling period as the time taken for one complete oscillation from the extreme end of a roll to one side, right across to the extreme on the other side and back to the original position<br>– states that for small angles of roll in still water, the initial metacentric height, $GM_o$ is given by:<br>$GM_o = [fB/Tr]^2$<br>where: f = rolling factor<br>B = breadth of the ship<br>Tr = rolling period in seconds<br>– states that the formula may be given as:<br>$GM_o = F/Tr^2$<br>where the F-value is provided by the Administration<br>– summarizes the procedures for determining a ship's stability by means of the rolling period test<br>– given values of F and T and the equation $GM_o = F/T^2$, calculates $GM_o$<br>– states the limitations of the method<br>– states that when construction is completed, a ship undergoes an inclining test to determine the displacement and position of the centre of gravity, KG and LCG, in the light ship condition<br>– states that the displacement and KM are calculated from the observed draughts and the ship's lines plans, making allowance for density of water and trim | | R1, R96 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that the position of the centre of buoyancy is calculated to enable the LCG for the light ship to be determined | |
| | – describes how an inclining test is carried out | |
| | – given the mass and the distance through which it was moved, the displacement, length of the plumb line and the deflection, calculates the KG | |
| | – states that the values obtained in a test are corrected for masses to be removed and added to obtain the KG and LCG for the light ship | |
| | – states that, at periodical intervals not exceeding five years, a light ship survey must be carried out on all passenger ships to verify any changes in light ship displacement and longitudinal centre of gravity | |
| | – states that the ship must be re-inclined whenever, in comparison with the approved stability information, a deviation from the light ship displacement exceeding 2% or a deviation of the longitudinal centre of gravity exceeding 1% of L is found or anticipated | R2 |
| | **Intact Stability Code** | R1, R96 |
| | – describes the general precautions to be taken against capsizing | |
| | – states the recommended criteria for passenger and cargo ships of all types | |
| | – given the initial metacentric height and the GZ curve, determines whether the ship meets the recommended criteria | |
| | – states that stability information should comprise: | |
| | – stability characteristics of typical loading conditions | |
| | – information to enable the Master to assess the stability of the ship in all loading conditions differing from the standard ones | |
| | – information on the proper use of anti-rolling devices, if fitted | |
| | – information enabling the Master to determine $GM_o$ by means of a rolling test corrections to be made to $GM_o$ for free surface liquids | |
| | – for ships carrying timber deck cargoes information setting out changes in deck cargo from that shown in the loading conditions, when the permeability of the deck cargo is significantly different from 25% | |
| | – for ships carrying timber deck cargoes, indications of the maximum permissible amount of deck cargo | |
| | – states that criteria are laid down for ships carrying timber deck cargoes | |
| | – discusses the use of the weather criterion and how to assess whether a vessel complies with this | |
| | – states the additional criteria recommended for passenger ships | |
| | – states that the information includes a curve or table giving, as a function of the draught, the required initial GM which ensures compliance with the recommendations on intact stability | |
| | **Intact stability requirements for the carriage of grain** | R1 |
| | – states the intact stability requirements for the carriage of grain | |
| | – states that before loading bulk grain the Master may be required to demonstrate that the ship will comply with the stability criteria at all stages of the voyage | |
| | – states that the ship must be upright before proceeding to sea | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that grain loading information includes:<br>  – curves or tables of grain heeling moments for every compartment, whether filled or partly filled<br>  – tables of maximum permissible heeling moments or other information sufficient to allow the Master to demonstrate compliance with the requirements<br>  – details of the requirements for temporary fittings and the provisions for the bundling of bulk grain<br>  – typical loaded service departure and arrival conditions and, where necessary, intermediate worst service conditions<br>  – a worked example for the guidance of the Master<br>  – loading instructions in the form of notes summarizing the requirements of SOLAS chapter VI<br>– explains what are volumetric heeling moments<br>– states that heeling moment = volumetric heeling moment / stowage factor<br>– states how the vertical shift of grain surfaces is taken into account in filled compartments and in partly filled compartments<br>– calculates the heeling arm, $\lambda_O$, from:<br>$\lambda_O = \frac{\text{Volumetric heeling moment}}{\text{(stowage factor x displacement)}}$<br>– draws the heeling-arm curve on the righting-arm curve for a given ship and KG, corrected for free surface liquid, and:<br>  – determines the angle of heel<br>  – using Simpson's rules, calculates the residual dynamical stability to the angle laid down by regulation 4 of SOLAS chapter VI<br>– compares the results of the calculations in the above objective with the criteria set out in regulation 4 and states whether the ship complies with the requirements or does not comply | |
| | **Rolling of ships**<br>– describes the effect on GM of rolling<br>– explains how increase of draught and of displacement influence rolling<br>– describes how the distribution of mass within the ship affects the rolling period<br>– explains what synchronization is and the circumstances in which it is most likely to occur<br>– describes the actions to take if synchronization is experienced<br>– describes how bilge keels, anti-rolling tanks and stabilizer fins reduce the amplitude of rolling<br>– states that a ship generally heels when turning<br>– states that, while turning, the ship is subject to an acceleration towards the centre of the turn<br>– states that the force producing the acceleration acts at the underwater centre of lateral resistance, which is situated at about half-draught above the keel | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– states that the force in the above objective is called the centripetal force, given by $F = Mv^2/r$

where: M = mass of the ship in tonnes
v = speed in metres per second
r = radius of turn in metres
F = centripetal force in kilonewtons

– explains how the force acting at the centre of lateral resistance can be replaced by an equal force acting through the centre of gravity and a heeling couple equal to the force x vertical separation between the centre of lateral resistance and the centre of gravity,

$$\frac{Mv^2}{r}\left[KG - \frac{d}{2}\right]\cos\theta$$

– states that the ship will heel until the resulting righting moment equals the heeling couple, i.e.

$$M \times g \times GM \sin\theta = \frac{Mv^2}{r}\left[KG - \frac{d}{2}\right]\cos\theta$$

where: g = acceleration due to gravity
θ = angle of heel

– given the relevant data, calculates the angle of heel from

$$\tan\theta = \frac{v^2 \times \left[KG - \frac{d}{2}\right]}{g \times GM \times r}$$

**Dry-docking and grounding** R1

– states that for dry-docking a ship should:
  – have adequate initial metacentric height
  – be upright
  – have a small or moderate trim, normally by the stern
– states that part of the weight is taken by the blocks as soon as the ship touches, reducing the buoyancy force by the same amount
– states that the upthrust at the stern causes a virtual loss of metacentric height
– explains why the GM must remain positive until the critical instant at which the ship takes the blocks overall
– derives the formula for the upthrust at the stern

$$P = \frac{(MCT \times t)}{L}$$

where: P = upthrust at the stern in tonnes
t = change of trim in cm
L = distance of the centre of flotation from aft

– explains that a ship with a large trim will develop a large upthrust, which may damage the stern frame, trip the blocks or lead to an unstable condition before taking the blocks overall



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – by taking moments about the centre of buoyancy, shows that, for a small angle of heel, $\theta$,<br>righting moment = $\Delta$ x GM sin$\theta$ – P x KM sin$\theta$<br>where GM is the initial metacentric height when afloat | |
| | – shows that the righting lever is that for the ship with its metacentric height reduced by $\frac{(P \times KM)}{\Delta}$ | |
| | – by using the equation in the above objective and KM + KG + GM, shows that righting moment = ($\Delta$ – P) x GM sin$\theta$ – P x KG sin$\theta$ | |
| | – shows that the righting lever is that for a ship of displacement ($\Delta$ – P) and with metacentric height reduced by $\frac{(P \times KG)}{\Delta - P}$ | |
| | – explains that the righting moment remains positive providing $\Delta$ x GM is greater than P x KM or equivalently, ($\Delta$ – P) x GM is greater than P x KG | |
| | – calculates the minimum GM to ensure that the ship remains stable at the point of taking the blocks overall | |
| | – calculates the maximum trim to ensure that the ship remains stable on taking the blocks overall for a given GM | |
| | – calculates the virtual loss of GM and the draughts of the ship after the level has fallen by a stated amount | |
| | – calculates the draughts on taking the blocks overall | |
| | – explains that the stability of a ship aground at one point on the centre line is reduced in the same way as in dry-docking | |
| | – states that when grounding occurs at an off-centre point, the upthrust causes heel as well as trim and reduction of GM | |
| | – explains that the increase in upthrust as the tide falls increases the heeling moment and reduces the stability | |
| | **Shear force, bending moments and torsional stress** | R1 |
| | – explains what is meant by shearing stress | |
| | – states that the shear force at a given point of a simply supported beam is equal to the algebraic sum of the forces to one side of that point | |
| | – explains that, for a beam in equilibrium, the sum of forces to one side of a point is equal to the sum of the forces on the other side with the sign reversed | |
| | – explains what is meant by a bending moment | |
| | – states that the bending moment at a given point of a beam is the algebraic sum of the moment of force acting to one side of that point | |
| | – states that the bending moment measured to opposite sides of a point are numerically equal but opposite in sense | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – draws a diagram of shear force and bending moment for simply supported beams<br>– states that the bending moment at any given point is equal to the area under the shear-force curve to that point<br>– uses the above objective to show that the bending-moment curve has a turning point where the shear force has zero value<br>– explains that shear forces and bending moments arise from differences between weight and buoyancy per unit length of the ship<br>– states that the differences between buoyancy and weight is called the load<br>– draws a load curve from a given buoyancy curve and weight curve<br>– states that the shear force at any given point is equal to the area under the load curve between the origin and that point<br>– draws a diagram of shear force and bending moment for a given distribution of weight for a box-shaped vessel<br>– explains how wave profile affects the shear-force curve and bending-moment curve<br>– states that each ship above a specified length is required to carry a loading manual, in which are set out acceptable loading patterns to keep shear forces and bending moments within acceptable limits<br>– states that the classification society may also require a ship to carry an approved means of calculating shear forces and bending moment at stipulated stations<br>– demonstrates the use of a loading instrument<br>– states that the loading manual and instrument, where provided, should be used to ensure that shear forces and bending moments do not exceed the permissible limits in still water during cargo and ballast handling<br>– explains what is meant by a torsional stress<br>– describes how torsional stresses in the hull are set up<br>– states that wave-induced torsional stresses are allowed for in the design of the ship<br>– states that cargo-induced torsional stresses are a problem mainly in container ships<br>– states that classification societies specify maximum permissible torsional moments at a number of specified cargo bays<br>– given details of loading, calculates cumulative torsional moments for stated positions<br>– describes the likelihood of overstressing the hull structure when loading certain bulk cargoes | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY IN THE EVENT OF DAMAGE AND FLOODING<br>**Textbooks:** T4<br>**Bibliography:** B1, B2, B3, B4, B5, B6, B9, B10, B11, B14, B15, B20, B22, B23, B29, B30, B31, B32, B35, B37, B39, B43, B44, B46, B47, B48, B49, B52, B53, B54, B64, B84, B85, B96, B103, B107, B111, 114, B115, B118, B126, B131, B132, B133, B135, B137, B144, B145, B147, B148, B149, B154, B159, B160, B169, B170, B171, B174, B176, B178, B179, B180, B183, B184, B185, B186, B187, B199, B204, B205, B206, B207, B211, B213<br>**Teaching aids:** A1<br>Required performance: | | |
| **2.1** | **Effect of flooding on transverse stability and trim (9 hours)**<br>**Passenger vessels**<br>– explains what is meant by 'floodable length'<br>– defines:<br>  – margin line<br>  – bulkhead deck<br>  – permeability of a space<br>– explains what is meant by 'permissible length of compartments' in passenger ships<br>– describes briefly the significance of the Criterion of Service Numeral<br>– explains the significance of the factor of subdivision<br>– states the assumed extent of damage used in assessing the stability of passenger ships in damaged condition<br>– summarizes, with reference to the factor of subdivision, the extent of damage which a passenger ship should withstand<br>– describes the provisions for dealing with asymmetrical flooding<br>– states the requirements for the final condition of the ship after assumed damage and, where applicable, equalization of flooding<br>– states that the Master is supplied with data necessary to maintain sufficient intact stability to withstand the critical damage<br>– explains the minimum residual stability requirements in the damaged condition with the required number of compartments flooded<br>– discusses the use of the damaged stability information required to be provided to the Master of a passenger vessel<br>**Cargo ships**<br>– distinguishes between ships of Type A and Type B for the purpose of computation of freeboard<br>– describes the extent of damage that a Type A ship of over 150m in length should be able to withstand<br>– explains that a Type A ship of over 150m in length is described as a one compartment ship<br>– describes the requirements for the survivability of Type B ships with reduced assigned freeboard<br>– summarizes the equilibrium conditions regarded as satisfactory after flooding | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– states that damage to compartments may cause a ship to sink as a result of:
  – insufficient reserve buoyancy leading to progressive flooding
  – progressive flooding due to excessive list or trim
  – capsizing due to a loss of stability
  – structural failure

**Calculation of vessel condition after flooding**

– states that, in the absence of hull damage, the stability is calculated in the usual way using the added mass and making allowance for free surface liquid

– states that free surface moments for any rectangular compartment that is flooded by salt water can be approximated by

moment = length x $(\text{breadth})^3$ x 1.025 / 12

– states that virtual loss of GM = $\dfrac{\text{moment}}{\text{flooded displacement}}$

– states that when a compartment is holed the ship will sink deeper in the water until the intact volume displaces water equivalent to the mass of the ship and its contents

– explains that the loss of buoyancy of a holed compartment is equal to the mass of water which enters the compartment up to the original waterline

– states that the volume of lost buoyancy for a loaded compartment is equal to the volume of the compartment x the permeability of the compartment

– calculates the permeability of cargo, given its density and its stowage factor

– states that if the lost buoyancy is greater than the reserve buoyancy the ship will sink

– states that the centre of buoyancy moves to the centre of immersed volume of the intact portion of the ship

– states that when a compartment is holed the ship's displacement and its centre of gravity are unchanged

– explains that a heeling arm is produced, equal to the transverse separation of G and the new position of B for the upright ship

– states that the area of intact waterplane is reduced by the area of the flooded spaces at the level of the flooded waterline multiplied by the permeability of the space

– states that if the flooded space is entirely below the waterline there is no reduction in intact waterplane

– calculates the increase in mean draught of a ship, given the TPC and the dimensions of the flooded space, using increase in draught = $\dfrac{\text{volume of lost buoyancy}}{\text{area of intact waterplane}}$

– states that the height of the centre of buoyancy above the keel increases by about half the increase in draught due to flooding

– states that a reduction in waterplane area leads to a reduction in the second moment of area (I)

– uses the formula BM = I/V to explain why the BM of a ship is generally less when bilged than when intact

– states that change in GM is the net result of changes in KB and BM



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– explains why the GM usually decreases where:
  – there is a large loss of intact waterplane
  – there is intact buoyancy below the flooded space
  – the flooded surface has a high permeability
– explains why the bilging of empty double-bottom tanks or of deep tanks that are wholly below the waterline leads to an increase in GM
– calculates the reduction in BM resulting from lost area of the waterplane, given the following corrections:
– second moment of lost area about its centroid / displaced volume;

this is $\frac{Lb^3}{12\ V}$ for a rectangular surface

where: L is length of the lost area

b is breadth of the lost area

V is displaced volume = $\frac{\text{displacement}}{\text{density of water}}$

original waterplane area / intact waterplane area x lost area x (distance from centreline)$^2$ / displaced volume

this is original $\frac{\text{waterplane area}}{\text{intact waterplane area x L x b x d}^2 / V}$

for a rectangular surface, where d is the distance of the centre of the area from the centreline

– deduces that the second correction applies only in the case of asymmetrical flooding
– calculates the shift (F) of the centre of flotation (CE) from the centreline, using

$F = \frac{a \times d}{A - a}$

where: a is the lost area of waterplane

A is the original waterplane area

d is the distance of the centre of lost area of waterplane from the centreline

– shows that the heeling arm is given by

heeling arm = lost buoyancy (tonnes)/displacement x transverse distance from new CF

– constructs a GZ curve for the estimated GM and superimposes the heeling-arm curve to determine the approximate angle of heel
– uses wall-sided formula to determine GZ values
– uses wall-sided formula to calculate angle of heel
– states that, for small angles of heel, $\theta$,

$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{heeling arm}}{GM}$

– explains how lost area of waterplane affects the position of the centre of flotation

**Effect of flooding on trim**

– calculates the movement of the centre of flotation (CF), given:

movement of CF = moment of lost area about original CF/intact waterplane area



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains how the reduction in intact waterplane reduces the MCT 1cm<br>– calculates the reduction of BML, given the following corrections:<br>second moment of lost area about its centroids / displaced volume;<br>this is $\frac{bL^3}{12\,V}$ for a rectangular surface<br>where: L is length of lost area<br>b is breadth of lost area<br>V is displaced volume = $\frac{\text{displacement}}{\text{density of water}}$<br>Original waterplane area / intact waterplane area x lost area x (distance from CF)$^2$/displaced volume<br>This is original waterplane area/intact waterplane area x bld$^2$ / v<br>– for a rectangular surface, where d is the distance of the centre of area from the original centre of flotation<br>– calculates the reduction of MCT 1cm, given, reduction of MCT 1cm = (displacement x reduction of GM)/100 x ship's length<br>– states that the trimming moment is calculated from:<br>trimming moment = lost buoyancy x distance from new CF<br>where the lost buoyancy is measured in tonnes<br>– given the dimensions of a bilged space and the ship's hydrostatic data, calculates the draughts in the damaged condition<br>– describes measures which may be taken to improve the stability or trim of a damaged ship | |
| **2.2** | **Theories affecting trim and stability (2 hours)**<br>– describes the static and dynamic effects on stability of liquids with a free surface<br>– identifies free surface moments and shows its application to dead-weight moment curves<br>– interprets changes in stability which take place during a voyage<br>– describes effect on stability of ice formation on superstructure<br>– describes the effect of water absorption by deck cargo and retention of water on deck<br>– describes stability requirements for dry-docking<br>– demonstrates understanding of angle of loll<br>– states precautions to be observed in correction of angle of loll<br>– explains the dangers to a vessel at an angle of loll<br>– describes effects of wind and waves on ships stability<br>– lists the main factors which affect the rolling period of a vessel<br>– explains the terms synchronous and parametric rolling and pitching and describes the dangers associated with it<br>– describes the actions that can be taken to stop synchronous and parametric effects | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.1 | Control Trim, Stability and Stress | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.1.3 KNOWLEDGE OF IMO RECOMMENDATIONS CONCERNING SHIP STABILITY<br>**Textbooks:** T4<br>**Bibliography:** B1, B2, B3, B4, B5, B6, B9, B10, B11, B14, B15, B20, B22, B23, B29, B30, B31, B32, B35, B37, B39, B43, B44, B46, B47, B48, B49, B52, B53, B54, B64, B84, B85, B96, B103, B107, B111, 114, B115, B118, B126, B131, B132, B133, 135, B137, B144, B145, B147, B148, B149, B154, B159, B160, B169, B170, B171, B174<br>**Teaching aids:** A1<br>Required performance:<br>**3.1 Responsibilities under the international conventions and codes (2 hours)**<br>– states minimum stability requirements required by Load Line Rules 1966<br>– states the minimum stability requirements and recommendations of the Intact Stability Code<br>– explains the use of the weather criterion<br>– demonstrates correct use of IMO grain regulations<br>– explains how grain heeling moment information is used<br>– describes the requirements for passenger ship stability after damage | | R1 |

IMO PUBLISHING INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Rrequirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>3.2.1 INTERNATIONAL MARITIME LAW EMBODIED IN INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS AND CONVENTIONS, WITH PARTICULAR REGARD TO CERTIFICATES AND DOCUMENTS TO BE CARRIED ON BOARD BY INTERNATIONAL CONVENTIONS; RESPONSIBILITIES UNDER THE RELEVANT REQUIREMENTS OF THE INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION ON LOAD LINES, SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA, PREVENTION OF POLLUTION FROM SHIPS, AND METHODS OF AID TO PREVENT POLLUTION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT; REQUIREMENTS OF THE INTERNATIONAL HEALTH REGULATIONS; AND NATIONAL LEGISLATION FOR IMPLEMENTING INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS AND CONVENTIONS | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.2.1 | INTERNATIONAL MARITIME LAW EMBODIED IN INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS AND CONVENTIONS | |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** T10, T42, T43, B1, B2, B4, B5, B6, B9, B10, B11, B14, B15, B20, B22, B23, B29, B30, B31, B32, B35, B37, B39, B43, B44, B46, B47, B48, B49, B52, B53, B54, B64, B84, B85, B96, B107, B111, B114, B115, B126, B132, B133, B135, B137, B145, B147, B148, B149, B154, B160, B169, B170, B171, B174, B176, B178, B179, B180, B183, B184, B185, B186, B187, B199, B204, B205, B207, B211, B213 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V2, V77, V79, V80, V81, V82, V86, V87, V89, V90, V91, V92, V94, V95, V97, V99, V100, V101, V102, V105, V109, V110, V111, V112, V115, V117, V118, V119, V126, V127, V131, V156, V157, V158, V169 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **1.1** | **Certificates and other documents required to be carried on board ships by international conventions (1 hour)** | R110 |
| | – states that IMO publishes a list of certificates and documents required to be carried on board ship | R110 |
| | – states how a current version of the IMO list of certificates and documents required to be carried on board ship may be obtained | |
| | – identifies the certificates required by MLC (2006) to be carried on board ship | |
| | – identifies the certificates and documents that are required to be carried on board a ship of any type using the IMO information | |
| | – states the period of validity for each of the above certificates and explains the requirements for renewing or maintaining the validity of each | |
| | – explains how each of the certificates and documents required to be carried on board ships are obtained | |
| | – explains the proof of validity that may be required by authorities for the certificates and documents above | |
| **1.2** | **Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention on Load Lines (1 hour)** | |
| | – states that a ship to which the Convention applies must comply with the requirements for that ship | |
| | – explains the general requirements of the Conditions of Assignment to be met before any vessel can be assigned a load line | |
| | – describes the factors that determine the freeboards assigned to a vessel | |
| | – describes the requirements and coverage of initial, renewal and annual surveys | |
| | – describes the contents of the record of particulars which should be supplied to the ship | |
| | – explains the documentation and records that must be maintained on the ship in terms of: | |
| | – certificates | |
| | – record of particulars | |
| | – record of freeboards | |
| | – information relating to the stability and loading of the ship | |
| | – states that after any survey has been completed no change should be made in the structure, equipment or other matters covered by the survey without the sanction of the Administration | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that, after repairs or alterations, a ship should comply with at least the requirements previously applicable and that, after major repairs or alterations, ships should comply with the requirements for a new ship in so far as the Administration deems reasonable and practicable | |
| | – describes the preparation required for renewal and annual load line surveys | |
| | – states that the appropriate load lines on the sides of the ship corresponding to the season and to the zone or area in which the ship may be must not be submerged at any time when the ship puts to sea, during the voyage or on arrival | |
| | – states that when a ship is in fresh water of unit density the appropriate load line may be submerged by the amount of the fresh water allowance shown on the International Load Line Certificate (1966) | |
| | – states that when a ship departs from port situated on a river or inland waters, deeper loading is permitted corresponding to the weight of fuel and all other materials required for consumption between the point of departure and the sea | |
| | – explains the treatment of a port lying on the boundary between two zones or areas | |
| | – explains the circumstances in which an International Load Line Certificate (1966) would be cancelled by the Administration | |
| **1.3** | **Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (2 hours)** | R2 |
| | – states the obligations of the Master concerning the sending of danger messages relating to dangerous ice, a dangerous derelict, other dangers to navigation, tropical storms, sub-freezing air temperature with gale force winds causing severe ice accretion or winds of force 10 or above for which no storm warning has been received | |
| | – lists the information required in danger messages | |
| | – states that when ice is reported near his course, the Master of every ship at night is bound to proceed at a moderate speed or to alter his course so as to go well clear of the danger zone | R2 ch. V reg. 10 |
| | – states that the use of an international distress signal, except for the purpose of indicating that a ship or aircraft is in distress, and the use of any signal which may be confused with an international distress signal are prohibited | |
| | – states the obligations of the Master of a ship at sea on receiving a signal from any source that a ship or aircraft or a survival craft thereof is in distress | |
| | – explains the rights of the Master of a ship in distress to requisition one or more ships which have answered his call for assistance | |
| | – explains when the Master of a ship is released from the obligation to render assistance | |
| | – describes the requirements for the carriage of navigational equipment | |
| | – states that all equipment fitted in compliance with reg. V/12 must be of a type approved by the Administration | |
| | – states that all ships should be sufficiently and efficiently manned | |
| | – states that manning is subject to Port State Control inspection | |
| | – lists the contents of the minimum safe manning document referred to in Assembly resolution A481(XII), Principles of safe manning | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that in areas where navigation demands special caution, ships should have more than one steering gear power unit in operation when such units are capable of simultaneous operation | R2 |
| | – describes the procedure for the testing of the ship's steering gear before departure | |
| | – describes the requirements for the display of operating instructions and change-over procedures for remote steering gear control and steering gear power units | |
| | – describes the requirements for emergency steering drills | |
| | – lists the entries which should be made in the logbook regarding the checks and tests of the steering gear and the holding of emergency drills | |
| | – states that all ships should carry adequate and up-to-date charts, sailing directions, lists of lights, notices to mariners, tide tables and other nautical publications necessary for the voyage | |
| | – states which ships should carry the International Code of Signals | |
| **1.4** | **Responsibilities under the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, and the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto (MARPOL 73/78) (3 hours)** | R9, R10, R11, R12, R13, R26, R27, R28, R72, R73, R74 |
| | – explains who may cause proceedings to be taken when a violation occurs within the jurisdiction of a Party to the Convention | |
| | – explains the Parties to the Convention must apply the requirements of the Convention to ships of non-Parties to ensure that no more favourable treatment is given to such ships | |
| | Annex I — Oil | R10 |
| | – states that, after survey has been completed, no change should be made in the structure, equipment, fittings, arrangements or materials without the sanction of the Administration, except the direct replacement of equipment and fittings | |
| | – explains the Master's duty to report when an accident occurs or a defect is discovered which substantially affects the integrity of the ship or the efficiency or completeness of its equipment covered by this Annex | |
| | – states that the dates of intermediate and annual surveys are endorsed on the IOPP Certificate | |
| | – states that a record of construction and equipment is attached as a supplement to the IOPP Certificate | |
| | – explains the duration of validity of the IOPP Certificate and the circumstances in which the IOPP Certificate will cease to be valid | |
| | – states that all new crude oil tankers of 20,000 tonnes deadweight and above must be fitted with a crude oil washing system | |
| | – states that the competent authority of the Government of a Party to the Convention may inspect the Oil Record Book while the ship is in its port or offshore terminals and may make a copy of any entry and may require the Master to certify that the copy is a true copy of such entry | |
| | – states that a copy certified by the Master is admissible in any judicial proceedings as evidence of the facts stated in the entry | |
| | – states that the Master should be provided with information relative to loading and distribution of cargo necessary to ensure compliance with the regulation on subdivision and stability and the ability of the ship to comply with the damage stability criteria | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states all ships of 400gt or more must carry an approved shipboard oil pollution emergency plan (SOPEP) | |
| | Annex II — Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk | R11 |
| | – states the duration of validity of the certificate | |
| | – explains that ships which have been surveyed and certified in accordance with the International Bulk Chemical Code (IBC Code) or the Bulk Chemical Code (BCH Code), as applicable, are deemed to have complied with the regulations regarding survey and certification and do not require to have an International Pollution Prevention Certificate for the Carriage of Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk | |
| | Annex III — Harmful Substances Carried by Sea in Packaged Forms, or in Freight Containers, Portable Tanks or Tank Wagons | |
| | – states that the Master of the ship, or his representative, should notify the appropriate port authority of the intention to load or unload certain harmful substances at least 24 hours in advance | |
| | Annex IV — Sewage | |
| | – defines, for the purposes of Annex IV:<br>– holding tank, sewage and nearest land | |
| | – states the ships to which the provisions apply | |
| | – states that ships to which the regulations apply are subject to surveys for the issue of an International Sewage Pollution Prevention Certificate (1973) | |
| | – states the duration of validity of the certificate | |
| | Annex V — Garbage | |
| | – explains that when garbage is mixed with other discharges having different disposal requirements, the more stringent requirements apply | |
| | – describes the provisions for disposal of garbage from off-shore platforms and from ships alongside or within 500 metres from them | |
| | – lists the special areas for the purposes of this annex | |
| | – explains the requirements for disposal of garbage within special areas | |
| | – describes the exceptions to regulations 3, 4 and 5 | |
| | – describes the form of record keeping required | |
| | – states records are subject to scrutiny by port State control officers | |
| | Annex VI — (Regulations for the Prevention of Air Pollution from Ships) of the MARPOL Convention. | |
| | – states that MARPOL 73/78 Annex VI Regulations for the Prevention of Air Pollution from Ships entered into force on 19 May 2005 | |
| | – states that MARPOL Annex VI sets limits on sulphur oxide and nitrogen oxide emissions from ship exhausts and prohibits deliberate emissions of ozone-depleting substances | |
| | – explains that Annex VI emission control requirements are in accordance with the 1987 Montreal Protocol (a UN international environmental treaty), as amended in London in 1990 | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that MARPOL annex VI applies to all ships, fixed and floating drilling rigs and other platforms, but the certification requirements are depending on size of the vessel and when it is constructed<br>– explains the requirements for shipboard energy efficiency plans under MARPOL annex VI<br>– explains that regulation 16 sets out requirements for shipboard incineration and as per 16(4) bans the incineration of:<br>  – MARPOL Annex I, II and III cargo residues and related contaminated packing materials;<br>  – polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs);<br>  – garbage, as defined in MARPOL Annex V, containing more than traces of heavy metals; and<br>  – refined petroleum products containing halogen compounds<br>– explains that under regulation 16(5) incineration of sewage sludge and sludge oil generated during the normal operation of a ship may take place in the main or auxiliary power plant or boilers (as well as in an incinerator), but in those cases, must not take place inside ports, harbours and estuaries<br>– explains that regulation 16(6) prohibits the shipboard incineration of polyvinyl chlorides (PVCs), except in incinerators for which IMO Type Approval Certificates have been issued<br>– explains that under regulation 16(7) all ships with incinerators subject to regulation 16 must possess a manufacturer's operating manual which must specify how to operate the incinerator within the limits described in paragraph 2 of appendix IV to Annex VI<br>– explains that under regulation 16(8) personnel responsible for operation of any incinerator must be trained and capable of implementing the guidance in the manufacturer's operating manual<br>– explains that regulation 3 provides that the regulations of Annex VI will not apply to any emission necessary for the purpose of securing the safety of a ship or saving life at sea, or any emission resulting from damage to a ship or its equipment, subject to certain conditions<br>– states that regulation 15 provides that in ports or terminals in Party States any regulation of emissions of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) from tankers must be in accordance with Annex VI<br>– states that as per regulation 15 a tanker carrying crude oil is required to have a "VOC Management Plan" approved by the Administration on board<br>– states that ships of 400 gross tons and above engaged in international voyages involving countries that have ratified the conventions, or ships flying the flag of those countries, are required to have an International Air Pollution Prevention Certificate (IAPP Certificate)<br>– states that the IAPP certificate will be issued following an initial survey carried out by the flag Administration or by a recognized organization on behalf of the flag Administration, confirming compliance with MARPOL Annex VI. For ships with the flag of an Administration that have not yet ratified Annex VI, a Certificate of Compliance with Annex VI may be issued | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that Annex VI also requires diesel engines with a power output of more than 130 kW which is installed on a ship constructed on or after 1 January 2000 or with a power output of more than 130 kW which undergoes a major conversion on or after 1 January 2000 or with a power output of more than 5000 kW and a per cylinder displacement at or above 90 litres which is installed on a ship constructed on or after 1 January 1990 but prior to 1 January 2000, to carry individual certificates with regard to NOx emissions, named Engine International Air Pollution Prevention (EIAPP) Certificates
- states that Annex VI requires that every ship of 400 gross tonnage or above and every fixed and floating drilling rig and other platforms shall be subject to a schedule of surveys that occur throughout the life of a vessel
- states that the schedule of surveys include:
  - Initial survey: This survey occurs before the ship is put into service or before a vessel certificate is issued for the first time. This survey ensures that the equipment, systems, fitting, arrangements and material used on board fully comply with the requirements of Annex VI. The vessel's International Air Pollution Prevention certificate (IAPP) will be issued to the vessel by an organization authorized to act on behalf of the State, after this survey.
  - Periodic surveys: These surveys occur at least every five years after the initial survey. These surveys confirm that nothing has been done to the ship's equipment that would take it out of compliance. The vessel's IAPP certificate will be re-issued by an organization authorized to act on behalf of the State, after this survey.
  - Intermediate surveys: These surveys occur at least once during the period between issuance of an IAPP and the periodic surveys. They also confirm that all of the ship's equipment remains in compliance.
- states that chapter III of Annex VI (regulations 12 to 19) contains requirements for control of emissions from ships, but the following regulations directly impact vessel operation:
  - regulation 12 – Ozone-depleting Substances
  - regulation 13 – NOx emissions
  - regulation 14 – Sulphur Oxide emissions
  - regulation 15 – VOC emissions
  - regulation 16 – Shipboard Incinerators
  - regulation 18 – Fuel Oil Quality control
- states that regulation 12(1) prohibits deliberate emissions of ozone-depleting substances, except where necessary for the purpose of securing the safety of a ship or saving life, as provided in regulation 3
- states that regulation 12(2) prohibits, on all ships, new installations containing ozone-depleting substances, except that new installations containing hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs) are permitted until 1 January 2020
- states that all the ships subject to the requirements of Annex VI, are required to maintain a list of equipment containing ozone-depleting substances and, if a ship has rechargeable systems, containing ozone-depleting substances, an Ozone-depleting Substances Record Book is to be maintained on board



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that regulation 13 sets NOx emission limits for diesel engines with a power output of more than 130kW installed on ships built on or after 1 January 2000, and diesel engines of similar power undergoing a major conversion on or after 1 January 2000
- states that regulation 13 does not apply to emergency diesel engines, engines installed in lifeboats and any device or equipment intended to be used solely in case of emergency, or engines installed on ships solely engaged in voyages within waters subject to the sovereignty or jurisdiction of the flag State, provided that such engines are subject to an alternative NOx control measure established by the Administration
- explains that regulation 13 further contains a 3-Tier approach:
  - Tier I (current limits)
    - For diesel engines installed on ships constructed from 1 January 2000 to 1 January 2011
  - Tier II
    - For diesel engines installed on ships constructed on or after 1 January 2011
  - Tier III
    - Ships constructed on or after 1 January 2016
- states that Engine surveys are described in Chapter 2 of the NOx Technical Code, a supporting document to Annex VI
- states that the four kinds of engine surveys are:
  - Pre-certification survey: This survey occurs before an engine is installed on board a vessel, to ensure the engine meets the NOx limits. The Engine International Air Pollution Prevention certificate (EIAPP) is issued after this survey for each applicable engine, engine family, or engine group
  - Initial certification survey: This survey occurs after the engine is installed on board the ship, but before the ship is placed into service. It ensures that the engine meets the NOx limits as installed. If an engine has an EIAPP, the initial certification survey will primarily ensure that any modifications to the engine's settings are within the allowable adjustment limits specified in the EIAPP
  - Periodic and intermediate surveys: These surveys occur as part of the ship's surveys described above. They ensure that the engine continues to comply fully with the NOx limits
  - Modification survey: This survey occurs when an engine overhaul meets the criteria for a major conversion. It ensures that the modified engine complies with the NOx limits
- states that there are three documents that are essential for completing the engine and vessel surveys. These are the EIAPP or Statement of Compliance, the Technical File, and the Record Book of Engine Parameters
- states that regulation 14 provides for adoption of "SOx Emission Control Areas" – "SECA" where the adoption of special mandatory measures for SOx emissions from ships is required to prevent, reduce and control air pollution from SOx and its attendant adverse impacts on land and sea areas with more stringent control on sulphur emissions



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative Requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states for the purpose of the regulation, Emission Control Areas (ECA) includes:
  - The Baltic Sea area as defined in regulation 1.11.2 of Annex I, the North Sea as defined in regulation 5(1)(f) of Annex V
- states that in these areas the sulphur content of fuel oil used on ships must not exceed 1.5% m/m. Alternatively, ships in these areas must fit an exhaust gas cleaning system or use any other technological method to limit SOx emissions
- states that regulation 15 provides that in ports or terminals in Party States any regulation of emissions of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) from tankers must be in accordance with Annex VI
- explains that regulation 16 sets out requirements for shipboard incineration and as per 16(4) bans the incineration of:
  - MARPOL Annex I, II and III cargo residues and related contaminated packing materials;
  - polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs);
  - garbage, as defined in MARPOL Annex V, containing more than traces of heavy metals; and
  - refined petroleum products containing halogen compounds
- explains that under regulation 16(5) incineration of sewage sludge and sludge oil generated during the normal operation of a ship may take place in the main or auxiliary power plant or boilers (as well as in an incinerator), but in those cases, must not take place inside ports, harbours and estuaries
- explains that regulation 16(6) prohibits the shipboard incineration of polyvinyl chlorides (PVCs), except in incinerators for which IMO Type Approval Certificates have been issued
- explains that under regulation 16(7) all ships with incinerators subject to regulation 16 must possess a manufacturer's operating manual which must specify how to operate the incinerator within the limits described in paragraph 2 of appendix IV to Annex VI
- explains that under regulation 16(8) personnel responsible for operation of any incinerator must be trained and capable of implementing the guidance in the manufacturer's operating manual
- states that as per regulation 15 a tanker carrying crude oil is required to have a "VOC Management Plan" approved by the Administration on board
- explains that regulation 3 provides that the regulations of Annex VI will not apply to any emission necessary for the purpose of securing the safety of a ship or saving life at sea, or any emission resulting from damage to a ship or its equipment, subject to certain conditions



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

**1.5 Maritime declarations of health and the requirements of the International Health Regulations (3 hours)**

**Arrival documents and procedures** — R104

International Health Regulations (1969) as amended (IHR)

- defines for the purposes of these regulations:
  - arrival of a ship
  - baggage
  - container or freight container
  - crew
  - diseases subject to the regulations
  - disinsecting
  - epidemic
  - free pratique
  - health administration
  - health authority
  - infected person
  - in quarantine
  - international voyage
  - isolation
  - medical examination
  - ship
  - suspect
  - valid certificate
- states that a health authority should, if requested, issue, free of charge to the carrier, a certificate specifying the measures applied to a ship or container, the parts treated, methods used and the reasons why they have been applied
- states that, except in an emergency constituting a grave danger to public health, a ship which is not infected or suspected of being infected with a disease subject to the regulations should not be refused free pratique on account of any other epidemic disease and should not be prevented from discharging or loading cargo or stores, or taking on fuel or water
- states that a health authority may take all practicable measures to control the discharge from any ship of sewage and refuse which might contaminate the waters of a port, river or canal
- describes the measures which the health authority of a port may take with respect to departing travellers
- states that no health measures should be applied by a State to any ship which passes through waters within its jurisdiction without calling at a port or on the coast
- describes the measures which may be applied to a ship which passes through a canal or waterway in a territory of a State on its way to a port in the territory of another State
- states that, whenever possible, States should authorize granting of free pratique by radio
- explains that the Master should make known to port authorities, as long as possible before arrival, any case of illness on board, in the interests of the patient and the health authorities and to facilitate clearance of the ship



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– states that, on arrival of a ship, an infected person may be removed and isolated and that such removal should be compulsory if required by the Master
– states that a ship should not be prevented for health reasons from calling at any port, but if the port is not equipped for applying the health measures which in the opinion of the health authority of the port are required, the ship may be ordered to proceed at its own risk to the nearest suitable port convenient to it
– explains the actions open to a ship which is unwilling to submit to the measures required by the health authority of a port
– describes the measures concerning cargo and goods
– describes the measures concerning baggage

**Plague**

– states that, for the purposes of the regulations, the incubation period of plague is six days
– states that vaccination against plague should not be required as a condition of admission of any person to a territory
– states that during the stay of a ship in a port infected by plague, special care should be taken to prevent the introduction of rodents on board
– states that ships should be permanently kept free of rodents and the plague vector or be periodically derailed
– describes the requirements for the issue of a Ship Sanitation Control Certificate or a Ship Sanitation Control Exemption Certificate and states their periods of validity
– states the conditions in which a ship on arrival is to be regarded as infected, suspected or healthy
– describes the measures which may be applied by a health authority on the arrival of an infected or suspected ship

**Cholera**

– describes the measures which may be applied by a health authority on the arrival of a healthy ship from an infected area
– states that, for the purposes of the regulations, the incubation period of cholera is five days
– describes the measures to be taken by the health authority if a case of cholera is discovered upon arrival or a case has occurred on board

**Yellow Fever**

– states that, for the purposes of the regulations, the incubation period of yellow fever is six days
– states that vaccination against yellow fever may be required of any person leaving an infected area on an international voyage
– states that every member of the crew of a ship using a port in an infected area must be in possession of a valid certificate of vaccination against yellow fever
– states the conditions in which a ship on arrival is to be regarded as infected, suspected or healthy
– describes the measures which may be applied by a health authority on the arrival of an infected or suspected ship



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

**Documents**

- states that bills of health or any other certificates concerning health conditions of a port are not required from any ship
- describes the Master's obligations concerning a Maritime Declaration of Health
- states that the Master and the ship's surgeon, if one is carried, must supply any information required by the health authority as to health conditions on board during the voyage
- states that no health document, other than those provided for in the regulations, should be required in international traffic

**1.6 Responsibilities under other international maritime law embodied in international agreements and conventions that impact on the role of management level deck officers (35 hours)**

**1.6.1 Convention on Facilitation of International Maritime Traffic, 1965, as amended (FAL 1965) (1 hour)**

- states that the purpose of the Convention is to facilitate maritime transport by simplifying and reducing to a minimum the formalities, documentary requirements and procedures on the arrival, stay and departure of ships engaged in international voyages
- explains that the Convention lays down 'standards' and 'recommended practices' regarding documentation and procedures for facilitating international maritime traffic
- lists the documents which should be the only ones required by public authorities for their retention on arrival, or departure of ships to which the Convention applies
- explains that the provisions do not preclude the requirement for the presentation for inspection by the appropriate authorities of certificates and other papers concerned with registry, measurement, safety, manning and other related matters
- explains that the Convention lays down 'standards' and 'recommended practices' regarding documentation and procedures for facilitating international maritime traffic
- lists the documents which should be the only ones required by public authorities for their retention on arrival, or departure of ships to which the Convention applies
- explains that the provisions do not preclude the requirement for the presentation for inspection by the appropriate authorities of certificates and other papers concerned with registry, measurement, safety, manning and other related matters
- states that IMO has produced standard forms for:
  - general declaration
  - cargo declaration
  - ship's effects declaration
  - crew's effects declaration
  - crew list
  - passenger list
  - dangerous goods manifest



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that arrival procedures may be expedited by:<br>– providing the public authorities concerned with an advance message giving the best ETA, followed by any information as to change of time, and stating the itinerary of the voyage<br>– having ship's documents ready for prompt review<br>– rigging a means of boarding while the ship is en route to the berth or anchorage<br>– providing for prompt, orderly assembling and presentation of persons on board, with necessary documents for inspection, including arrangements for relieving crew members from essential duties | |
| **1.6.2** | **United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS) (2 hours)** | R75, R76 |
| | – explains that the outcome of UNCLOS III conference convened at Geneva in 1974 was the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea commonly known as "UNCLOS"<br>– explains that UNCLOS attempts to codify the international law of the sea<br>– states that UNCLOS defines the legal status of the high seas and establishes regulations for the control of marine pollution<br>– states that UNCLOS is a treaty document of 320 articles and 9 annexes, governing all aspects of ocean space, such as delimitation, environmental control, marine scientific research, economic and commercial activities, transfer of technology and the settlement of disputes relating to ocean matters<br>– states that UNCLOS came into force internationally on 16 November 1994<br>– states that UNCLOS sets the width of the territorial sea at 12 nautical miles, with a contiguous zone at 24 nautical miles from the baseline<br>– states that UNCLOS defines innocent passage through the territorial sea and defines transit passage through international straits<br>– states that UNCLOS defines archipelagic States and allows for passage through archipelagic waters<br>– states that UNCLOS establishes exclusive economic zones (EEZs) extending to 200 nautical miles from baselines<br>– explains that it defines the continental shelf and extends jurisdiction over the resources of the shelf beyond 200 miles where appropriate<br>– explains that states in dispute about their interpretation of UNCLOS may submit their disagreements to competent courts such as the International Court of Justice (in The Hague), or the Law of the Sea Tribunal (in Hamburg)<br>– states that the responsibility for enforcement of regulations rests mainly with flag States, but as vessels enter zones closer to the coast the influence of coastal State jurisdiction and, ultimately, port State jurisdiction, gradually increases<br>– states that Article 94 of the UNCLOS deals with duties of the flag State, while Article 217 deals with enforcement by flag States<br>– states that Article 218 of the UNCLOS deals with port State jurisdiction<br>– explains when a vessel is voluntarily within a port or at an offshore terminal, the port State may, where the evidence warrants, begin proceedings in respect of discharges in violation of international rules (i.e. regulations in MARPOL 73/78)<br>– states that another State in which a discharge violation has occurred, or the flag State, may request the port State to investigate the violation | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that Article 200 of the UNCLOS deals with coastal State jurisdiction as applied in relation to pollution provisions<br>– states that where there are clear grounds for believing that a vessel navigating in the territorial sea of a State has violated laws and regulations of the coastal State adopted in accordance with UNCLOS or applicable international pollution regulations, the coastal State may inspect the vessel and, where evidence warrants, institute proceedings including detention of the vessel<br>– states that vessels believed to have violated pollution laws in an EEZ may be required to give identification and voyage information to the coastal State<br>– explains that as per UNCLOS, States must agree international rules and standards to prevent pollution from vessels (Article 211). (This obligation is currently met by MARPOL 73/78)<br>– explains that coastal States may also promulgate and enforce pollution regulations in their own EEZs which may, in some circumstances, include imposition of routeing restrictions<br>– states that in the territorial sea additional navigational restraints (e.g. traffic separation schemes and sea lanes) may be imposed on vessels with dangerous and hazardous cargoes<br>– explains that coastal States and ports may make entry to internal waters and harbours conditional on meeting additional pollution regulations | |
| **1.6.3** | **Maritime Labour Convention (MLC 2006) (6 hours)**<br>– explains that the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, is an important new international labour Convention that was adopted by the International Labour Conference of the International Labour Organization (ILO), under article 19 of its Constitution at a maritime session in February 2006 in Geneva, Switzerland<br>– explains that it sets out seafarers' rights to decent conditions of work and helps to create conditions of fair competition for shipowners<br>– explains that it is intended to be globally applicable, easily understandable, readily updatable and uniformly enforced<br>– explains that the MLC 2006, complementing other major international conventions, reflects international agreement on the minimum requirements for working and living conditions for seafarers<br>– explains that the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, has two primary purposes:<br>– to bring the system of protection contained in existing labour standards closer to the workers concerned, in a form consistent with the rapidly developing, globalized sector (ensuring "decent work");<br>– to improve the applicability of the system so that shipowners and governments interested in providing decent conditions of work do not have to bear an unequal burden in ensuring protection ("level playing field" fair competition)<br>– explains that the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, has been designed to become a global legal instrument that, once it enters into force, will be the "fourth pillar" of the international regulatory regime for quality shipping, complementing the key Conventions of the International Maritime Organization (IMO) such as the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended (SOLAS), the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping, 1978, as amended (STCW) and the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 73/78 (MARPOL) | R104 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that it is sometimes called the consolidated Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, as it contains a comprehensive set of global standards, based on those that are already found in 68 maritime labour instruments (Conventions and Recommendations), adopted by the ILO since 1920
- states that the new Convention brings almost all of the existing maritime labour instruments together in a single new Convention that uses a new format with some updating, where necessary, to reflect modern conditions and language
- explains that the Convention "consolidates" the existing international law on all these matters
- states that the MLC, 2006, applies to all ships engaged in commercial activities (except fishing vessels, ships of traditional build and warships or naval auxiliaries)
- states that ships of 500 GT or over are required to be certified: they must carry a Maritime Labour Certificate as well as a Declaration of Maritime Labour Compliance
- states that ships below 500 GT are subject to inspection at intervals not exceeding three years
- explains that the existing ILO maritime labour Conventions will be gradually phased out as ILO Member States that have ratified those Conventions ratify the new Convention, but there will be a transitional period when some parallel Conventions will be in force
- explains that countries that ratify the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, will no longer be bound by the existing Conventions when the new Convention comes into force for them
- explains that countries that do not ratify the new Convention will remain bound by the existing Conventions they have ratified, but those Conventions will be closed to further ratification
- describes that the Convention is organized into three main parts: the Articles coming first set out the broad principles and obligations which is followed by the more detailed Regulations and Code (with two parts: Parts A and B) provisions
- states that the Regulations and the Standards (Part A) and Guidelines (Part B) in the Code are integrated and organized into general areas of concern under five Titles:
  - **Title 1: Minimum requirements for seafarers to work on a ship:** minimum age, medical certificates, training and qualification, recruitment and placement.
  - **Title 2: Conditions of employment:** Seafarers Employment Agreements, Wages, Hours of Work and Hours of Rest, Entitlement to Leave, Repatriation, Seafarer compensation for the ship's Loss or Foundering, Manning Levels, Career and Skill Development and Opportunities for Seafarers' Employment
  - **Title 3: Accommodation, recreational facilities, food and catering**
  - **Title 4: Health protection, medical care, welfare and social security protection:** Medical Care on-board ship and Ashore, Shipowners' Liability, Health & Safety Protection and Accident Prevention, Access to Shore-based Welfare Facilities, Social Security



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- **Title 5: Compliance and enforcement:**

  **Flag State Responsibilities:** General Principles, Authorization of Organizations, Maritime Labour Certificate and Declaration of Maritime Labour Compliance, Inspection and Enforcement, On-board Complaint Procedures, Marine Casualties

- **Port State Responsibilities:** Inspections in Port, Detailed Inspection, Detentions, On-shore Seafarer Complaint Handling Procedures
- **Labour-supplying Responsibilities:** Recruitment and Placement services, Social security provisions

  These five Titles essentially cover the same subject matter as the existing 68 maritime labour instruments, updating them where necessary

– explains that it occasionally contains new subjects in comparison to the existing ILO maritime labour conventions, particularly in the area of occupational safety and health to meet current health concerns, such as the effects of noise and vibration on workers or other workplace risks

– explains that the standards in the new Convention are not lower than existing maritime labour standards as the aim is to maintain the standards in the current maritime labour Conventions at their present level, while leaving each country greater discretion in the formulation of their national laws establishing that level of protection

– explains that the advantages for ships of ratifying countries that provide decent conditions of work for their seafarers will have protection against unfair competition from substandard ships and will benefit from a system of certification, avoiding or reducing the likelihood of lengthy delays related to inspections in foreign ports

– explains that the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, aims to establish a continuous “compliance awareness” at every stage, from the national systems of protection up to the international system and it will improve compliance and enforcement:

  – Starting with the individual seafarers, who – under the Convention – have to be properly informed of their rights and of the remedies available in case of alleged non-compliance with the requirements of the Convention and whose right to make complaints, both on board ship and ashore, is recognized in the Convention.
  – It continues with the shipowners. Those that own or operate ships of 500 gross tonnage and above, engaged in international voyages or voyages between foreign ports, are required to develop and carry out plans for ensuring that the applicable national laws, regulations or other measures to implement the Convention are actually being complied with.
  – The Masters of these ships are then responsible for carrying out the shipowners’ stated plans, and for keeping proper records to evidence implementation of the requirements of the Convention.
  – As part of its updated responsibilities for the labour inspections for ships above 500 gross tonnage that are engaged in international voyages or voyages between foreign ports, the flag State (or recognized organization on its behalf) will review the shipowners’ plans and verify and certify that they are actually in place and being implemented.
  – Ships will then be required to carry a maritime labour certificate and a declaration of maritime labour compliance on board.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – Flag States will also be expected to ensure that national laws and regulations implementing the Convention's standards are respected on smaller ships that are not covered by the certification system.<br>– Flag States will carry out periodic quality assessments of the effectiveness of their national systems of compliance, and their reports to the ILO under article 22 of the Constitution will need to provide information on their inspection and certification systems, including on their methods of quality assessment.<br>– This general inspection system in the flag State (which is founded on ILO Convention No. 178) is complemented by procedures to be followed in countries that are also or even primarily the source of the world's supply of seafarers, which will similarly be reporting under article 22 of the ILO Constitution.<br>– The system is further reinforced by voluntary measures for inspections in foreign ports (port State control)<br>– states that the appendices to the Convention contain key model documents: a maritime labour certificate and a declaration of maritime labour compliance<br>– explains that the Maritime Labour Certificate would be issued by the flag State to a ship that flies its flag, once the State (or a recognized organization that has been authorized to carry out the inspections) has verified that the labour conditions on the ship comply with national laws and regulations implementing the Convention<br>– states that the certificate would be valid for five years subject to periodic inspections by the flag State<br>– explains that the declaration of maritime labour compliance is attached to the certificate and summarizes the national laws or regulations implementing an agreed-upon list of 14 areas of the maritime standards and setting out the shipowner's or operator's plan for ensuring that the national requirements implementing the Convention will be maintained on the ship between inspections<br>– states that the lists of the 14 areas that must be certified by the flag State and that may be inspected, if an inspection occurs, in a foreign port are also set out in the Appendices to the Convention | |
| **1.6.4** | **Collision (1 hour)**<br>**International Convention for the Unification of Certain Rules of Law with Respect to Collision Between Vessels (Collision, 1910)**<br>– states that when collision is accidental, is caused by 'force majeure' or if the cause is left in doubt, the damages are borne by those who have suffered them<br>– states that if collision is caused by the fault of one of the vessels, liability to make good the damage attaches to the one which committed the fault<br>– explains the apportionment of liability when two or more vessels are in fault<br>– explains that liability attaches where the collision is caused by the fault of a pilot even when the pilot is carried by compulsion of law<br>– describes the duties of the Master after a collision<br>– explains that the Convention extends to the making good of damages which a vessel has caused to another vessel or to goods or persons on board either vessel, either by the execution or non-execution of a manoeuvre or by the non-observance of regulations, even if no collision has actually taken place | R23 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that in the event of a collision or any other incident of navigation concerning a sea-going ship and involving the penal or disciplinary responsibility of the Master or any other person in the service of the ship, criminal or disciplinary proceedings may be instituted only before the judicial or administrative authorities of the State of which the ship was flying the flag at the time of the collision or other incident of navigation<br>– states that no arrest or detention of the vessel should be ordered, even as a measure of investigation, by any authorities other than those whose flag the ship is flying<br>– states that nothing in the present Convention is to prevent any State from permitting its own authorities, in case of collision or other incidents of navigation, to take any action in respect of certificates of competence or licences issued by that State or to prosecute its own nationals for offences committed while on board a ship flying the flag of another State<br>– states that the Convention does not apply to collisions or other incidents of navigation occurring within the limits of a port or in inland waters and that the High Contracting Parties are at liberty to reserve to themselves the right to take proceedings in respect of offences committed within their own territorial waters | |
| **1.6.5** | **Assistance and salvage (3 hours)**<br>**International Convention on Salvage, 1989 (The London Salvage Convention)**<br>– defines 'salvage operation', 'vessel' and 'property'<br>– describes the 'no cure — no pay' principle<br>– describes the application of the Convention<br>– describes the duties of the salvor, of the owner and of the Master<br>– describes the rights of salvors<br>– states the criteria for assessing a reward as:<br>– salved value of property (ship, cargo and bunkers)<br>– skill and efforts of salvor<br>– measure of success<br>– nature and degree of danger<br>– expenses of salvor<br>– equipment used<br>– vessel's equipment used<br>– time taken to complete the salvage operation<br>– preventing or minimizing the damage to environment<br>– states the criteria for assessing Special Compensation<br>– explains that the apportionment of the remuneration amongst the owners, Master and other persons in the service of each salving vessel is to be determined by the law of the vessel's flag<br>– explains that every agreement as to assistance or salvage entered into at the moment and under the influence of danger may, at the request of either party, be annulled, or modified by the court, if it considers that the conditions agreed upon are not equitable<br>– describes the reasons for the court to set aside the agreed remuneration in whole or in part (salvor's fault, neglect, fraud or dishonesty)<br>– states that no remuneration is due from persons whose lives are saved except as provided in national law | R21 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– describes the rights of salvors of human life who have taken part in the salvage operations
– states that every Master is bound, so far as he can do so without serious danger to his vessel, her crew and her passengers, to render assistance to everybody, even though an enemy, found at sea in danger of being lost
– explains that the convention also applies to assistance or salvage services rendered by or to a ship of war or any other ship owned, operated or chartered by a State or Public Authority
– explains the provision of security by the owner and the application of the salvor's maritime lien

**Lloyd's Standard Form of Salvage Agreement (LOF, 2000) (1 hour)**

– states that LOF 2000 should be used where the ship or marine environment are at risk and the Master has insufficient time to request the owner to arrange salvage services on a the basis of a pre-agreed rate or sum
– describes the Contractor's agreed endeavours to salve the ship and/or cargo, bunkers and stores and while performing the salvage services to prevent or minimize damage to the environment
– explains that the LOF 2000 form does not need to be on board; the Masters of the vessels involved simply need to expressly agree to its terms before the salvage services commence
– describes the exception to the 'no cure — no pay' principle
– explains that LOF 2000 superseded LOF 95 and where a salvor offers services on LOF 95 or some other terms, the Master of the vessel in difficulties should attempt to get agreement to LOF 2000 terms
– explains that LOF 2000 is regarded by the International Salvage Union as a major advance, with clear, user-friendly language and many innovations
– states that LOF 2000 is a single sheet (2-page) document (whereas LOF 95 consists of 6 pages) in a simplified format
– states that the Contractor's remuneration is to be fixed by arbitration in London and any differences arising out of the Agreement are to be dealt with in the same way
– states that the provisions of the Agreement apply to salvage services, or any part of such services, referred to in the Agreement which have been already rendered by the Contractor at the date of the Agreement
– states that English Law is the governing law of the Agreement and of arbitration under it
– describes the obligation of the owners, their servants and agents to cooperate with the salvors
– describes the Contractor's duty immediately after the termination of the services to notify the Council of Lloyd's and where practicable the owners of the amount for which he requires security
– explains that the owners of the vessel, their servants and their agents should use their best endeavours to ensure that cargo owners provide their proportion of security before the cargo is released
– explains that, pending the completion of the security, the Contractor has a maritime lien on the property salved for his remuneration
– briefly describes how claims for arbitration are decided



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that the Master or other person signing LOF on behalf of the property to be salved enters into the agreement as agent for the vessel her cargo, freight, bunkers, stores and any other property thereon and the respective owners thereof and binds each to the due performance thereof
- states that when there is no longer any reasonable prospect of a useful result leading to a salvage reward in accordance with Convention Article 13 the owners of the vessel shall be entitled to terminate the services of the Contractor by giving notice to the Contractor in writing
- describes the provisions for special compensation set out in Convention Article 13
- explains that Personal effects of Master, crew and passengers including any car accompanying a passenger are excluded from reward for salvage as per the LOF 2000
- states that the currency of award as per the LOF 2000 is USA $
- explains that as compared to the old LOF 1995, the duty to cooperate as per the new LOF 2000 is extended to provide information about nature of cargo, plans, stability data etc.
- states that as per LOF 2000, the salvors have right to terminate when "no longer any reasonable prospects of useful result"
- states that in the LOF 2000, SCOPIC clause is introduced as an alternative to Art 14 set out in the convention
- states that as per LOF 2000, the Master is authorized to sign on behalf of cargo interests
- explains that LOF 2000 defines the conditions under which a casualty is in a safe condition for redelivery to the owner which can be of crucial importance in the closing stages of a salvage operation

**Special Compensation P and I Club (SCOPIC) Clause**

- explains that SCOPIC clause is supplementary to any Lloyd's Form Salvage Agreement "No Cure – No Pay" ("Main Agreement") which incorporates the provisions of Article 14 of the International Convention on Salvage 1989 ("Article 14")
- explains that the Contractor has the option to invoke by written notice to the owners of the vessel the SCOPIC clause at any time of his choosing regardless of the circumstances and, in particular, regardless of whether or not there is a "threat of damage to the environment"
- explains that SCOPIC clause determines the method of assessing special compensation where payable under Article 14(1) to 14(4) of the Convention
- explains that special compensation assessed in accordance with the SCOPIC clause is called "SCOPIC remuneration"
- explains that the SCOPIC remuneration is payable only by the owners of the vessel (and not by the cargo owners) and is only payable to the extent that it exceeds the total Article 13 award (the salvage award) or, if none, any potential Article 13 award
- explains that where the owner of the vessel is a member of a P&I club the club is normally required to pay the special compensation hence interest and involvement of the P&I clubs in drafting the SCOPIC clause



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that the assessment of SCOPIC remuneration commences from the time the written notice is given to the owners of the vessel and services rendered before the said written notice will not be remunerated under this SCOPIC clause at all but in accordance with Convention Article 13 as incorporated into the Main Agreement ("Article 13")
- explains that the owners of the vessel have to provide the Contractor within 2 working days (excluding Saturdays and Sundays and holidays usually observed at Lloyd's) after receiving written notice from the contractor invoking the SCOPIC clause, a bank guarantee or P&I Club letter (called "the Initial Security") in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Contractor providing security for his claim for SCOPIC remuneration in the sum of US$3 million, inclusive of interest and costs
- explains that the rates are based on time and materials plus an uplift of 25% in all cases
- explains that in the absence of agreement, any dispute concerning the proposed Guarantor, the form of the security or the amount of any reduction or increase in the security in place shall be resolved by the Arbitrator
- explains that if the owners of the vessel do not provide the Initial Security within the said 2 working days, the Contractor, at his option, and on giving notice to the owners of the vessel, shall be entitled to withdraw from all the provisions of the SCOPIC clause and revert to his rights under the Main Agreement including Article 14 which shall apply as if the SCOPIC clause had not existed
- explains that the Owner and Contractor both have option to terminate SCOPIC under certain agreed circumstances
- explains that even when the SCOPIC clause is invoked, the duties and liabilities of the Contractor remains the same as under the Main Agreement, namely to use his best endeavours to salve the vessel and property thereon and in so doing to prevent or minimize damage to the environment
- explains that the assessment of SCOPIC remuneration includes the prevention of pollution as well as the removal of pollution in the immediate vicinity of the vessel insofar as this is necessary for the proper execution of the salvage
- explains that the owner has the right to send on board a casualty Representative (SCR)
- explains that Underwriters have the right to send one special hull representative and one special cargo representative (collectively called the "Special Representatives")
- explains that the salvage Masters are required to send daily reports to Lloyd's and the owner until SCR arrives and thereafter to SCR
- explains that the SCOPIC remuneration is not a General Average expense to the extent that it exceeds the Article 13 Award; any liability to pay such SCOPIC remuneration is that of the shipowner alone and no claim whether direct, indirect, by way of indemnity or recourse or otherwise relating to SCOPIC remuneration in excess of the Article 13 Award is to be made in General Average or under the vessel's Hull and Machinery Policy by the owners of the vessel
- explains that any dispute arising out of this SCOPIC clause or the operations is to be referred to Arbitration as provided for under the Main Agreement
- explains that a non-binding code of practice has been agreed between the International Salvage Union (ISU) and the International Group of Clubs



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **1.6.6** | **Convention on Limitation of Liability for Maritime Claims, 1976 (LLMC 1976) (1 hour)**<br>– lists the persons entitled to limit liability<br>– lists the claims subject to limitation of liability<br>– lists the claims exempted from limitation<br>– explains the circumstances in which limitation would be barred<br>– explains that, except for claims in respect of death or injury of passengers, the calculation of limits of liability is based on the ship's gross tonnage<br>– explains that the limit for claims in respect of death or injury of passengers is based on the number of passengers the ship is authorized to carry, subject to a maximum sum<br>– describes the constitution of a limitation fund<br>– states the scope of application of the Convention | R105 |
| **1.6.7** | **Classification societies (1 hour)**<br>– explains the reasons for having a ship classed with a classification society<br>– states that the majority of ships are built under survey<br>– explains that the classification society approves plans, examines the manufacture of parts and tests materials during the building of hull, machinery, equipment and, where appropriate, refrigerating machinery<br>– explains that equipment refers to anchors, chain cables, mooring ropes and wires, mooring arrangements, windlasses and mooring winches<br>– states that, if requested, the classification societies will also survey and certificate cargo handling equipment<br>– states that on satisfactory completion of surveys and sea trials the society issues certificates of class, which are kept aboard ship, and enters the particulars of the ship in its register<br>– states that a classification society will also survey an existing ship and providing it meets the society's rules regarding scantlings, materials, workmanship and condition, assign a class to it<br>– states that to retain its class a ship must undergo periodical surveys as laid down in the society's rules<br>– states that periodical surveys are:<br>  – annual survey<br>  – docking survey at approximately 2-yearly intervals<br>  – intermediate survey<br>  – special survey every 4 years, which may be extended to 5 years<br>– explains the special survey requirements may be met by a system of continuous survey such that the interval between successive surveys on any given item does not exceed 5 years<br>– states that an occasional survey, additional to the regular surveys, must be conducted after any damage to the hull, machinery or equipment which may affect the ship's seaworthiness<br>– states that repairs or alterations must be carried out under survey and to the satisfaction of the society's surveyors<br>– states that classification societies carry out surveys for the issue of statutory certification on behalf of many governments | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– states that a classification society may be asked to conduct the loading port survey on its classed refrigerating machinery
– explains that, when convenient, the loading port survey may be combined with a periodical survey for classification

**1.6.8 Cargo (5 hours)**

**International Convention for the Unification of Certain Rules of Law Relating to Bills of Loading, as Amended by the Protocol of 1968 (Hague-Visby Rules)**

– defines:
  – carrier
  – contract of carriage
  – goods
  – ship
  – carriage of goods
– lists the duties of the carrier to make the ship seaworthy and fit for the carriage of cargo
– describes the carrier's duty to care for the cargo
– describes the duty of the carrier, Master or agent of the carrier to issue a bill of lading
– lists the information which should be shown in a bill of lading
– explains that a bill of lading is prima facie evidence of the receipt by the carrier of the goods as described in it and proof to the contrary is not admissible when the bill of lading has been transferred to a third party acting in good faith
– explains that the shipper is deemed to have guaranteed the accuracy of marks, number, quantity and weight as furnished by him, and that the shipper is to indemnify the carrier against loss arising from inaccuracies in such particulars
– explains the duty of the carrier, Master or agent to issue a 'shipped' bill of lading after the goods are loaded, provided the shipper surrenders any previously taken up document of title
– explains the mandatory domain of the Hague-Visby rules
– explains the carrier's liability for loss or damage arising or resulting from unseaworthiness
– states that whenever loss or damage has resulted from unseaworthiness, the burden of proving due diligence is on the carrier
– lists the exceptions to the carrier's responsibility for loss or damage
– explains the shipper's responsibility for loss or damage sustained by the carrier or ship
– states the right to deviate for the purpose of saving life or property
– explains the limitation of liability for loss or damage and the circumstances in which benefit of limitation is lost
– describes the provisions regarding goods of an inflammable, explosive or dangerous nature
– explains the liability of the carrier's servants (Himalaya clause)
– explains that this Convention does not apply to charter parties, but, if bills of lading are issued under a charter party, they must comply with the terms of this Convention



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that any lawful provisions regarding general average may be inserted in a bill of lading
- explains that, in certain circumstances, goods may be carried under an agreement between the carrier and shipper in any contractual terms not contrary to public policy, provided that no bill or lading is issued and that the terms agreed are embodied in a non-negotiable receipt, marked as such
- explains that the Rules do not prevent a carrier or shipper entering into any agreement regarding loss or damage to goods prior to the loading on, and subsequent to, the discharge from the ship on which the goods are carried by sea
- states that the Convention does not affect the rights and obligations of the carrier under any statute relating to the limitation of the liability of owners of sea-going ships
- describes the scope of application of the provisions of this Convention
- describes briefly the system of documentary credit in the sale of goods during shipment

**Casualty Investigation Code**

- explains the general procedures for the conduct of casualty investigations under the IMO Casualty Investigation Code

**Charter parties**

- states that a charter party is a contract between the shipowner and the charterer for the use of a ship or her cargo space
- explains that a voyage charter party is a contract to carry a specified, normally full, cargo between named ports at an agreed freight rate
- explains that the shipowner remains responsible for the operation of the ship and the costs involved, but the charterer sometimes pays the stevedoring charges
- states that contracts are normally drawn up using standard charter party forms amended as required by alterations and additional clauses
- describes the tendering of notice of readiness at the loading port
- explains that if the ship is not ready to receive cargo, whether alongside or not, by the cancellation date the charterer may cancel the charter
- explains what is meant by laytime and the terms ‘running days/hours’, ‘Sundays and holidays excepted’ and ‘weather working days’
- states that the laytime for loading and discharging may be stated separately or as a total
- states that all times relevant to cargo working should be recorded in the logbook and time sheets for the calculations of laytime completed as a check on the charterer’s laytime statement
- explains that if cargo work is not completed within the permitted laytime, the charterer is liable to pay demurrage at the agreed rate per day or hour until it is completed
- explains that time lost due to defects of the ship or its equipment is not counted in the laytime
- explains that in the event of cargo work being completed before the expiration of laytime, dispatch is usually payable by the shipowner to the charterer
- states that bills of lading are normally issued under a voyage charter party and signed by the Master or on his behalf



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that the bills of lading may incorporate the terms of the charter party which, in any case, take precedence over the bills of lading as between shipowner and charterer
- explains that when bills of lading have been transferred to a third party they constitute the contract between the shipowner and that party
- states that a voyage charter party may be arranged to cover a stated number of successive voyages or an unspecified number of voyages to be performed in a given time
- states that in a time charter party the charterer agrees to hire the ship for a specified period of time
- explains that the charterer may use the vessel for any voyage he wants within the trading area agreed in the charter party
- explains that the charterer pays for bunkers and for cargo loading and discharging, port dues, canal dues and pilotage
- states that owners pay crew costs and for provisions, necessary stores, insurance of the ship and the costs of maintaining the ship in class and keeping it in an efficient condition to carry out the charterer's wishes
- states that the charter party contains a description of the ship, including its speed and fuel consumption
- explains that inability to maintain the warranted speed or consumption as a result of heavy weather or other cause should be substantiated by entries in the logbook
- states that crew overtime in connection with the cargo is usually for the account of the charterer, and separate time sheets should be kept
- explains that the off-hire clause states the circumstances in which payment of hire ceases during time lost to the charterer
- explains that off-hire deductions may be made for time lost due to reduced-speed resulting from defects of ship or machinery, for the cost of additional fuel and for extra expenses
- states that the Master is usually required to sign bills of lading as presented to him by the charterer or the charter party may give the charterer the right to sign them on his behalf
- states that a time charter party may be used for a single round voyage
- describes the Master's actions regarding damage done by stevedores to the ship or cargo
- explains that demise or bareboat charter party is a leasing arrangement in which the charterer operates the ship as if it were his own
- states that the Master and crew are employed by the charterer, to whom they are responsible as if he were the owner
- explains that a tonnage contract or contract of affreightment may be used where a shipper needs to transport large quantities over a long period
- explains that the contract does not name particular ships and the shipowner is free to use any suitable ship, his own or chartered, for each shipment
- states that the loading dates are specified and that punctual performance is essential
- states that each individual shipment is normally subject to the terms of a conventional voyage charter party



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

**Hamburg Rules' maritime legislation**

- explains the effect of charges where goods are carried under Hamburg Rules
- explains carrier's extended liability for loss or damage to the goods
- explains reductions to exception to liability, inward and outward bills of lading, live animals and deck cargo
- explains the need to inform P & I Club where goods are carried under Hamburg Rules

**1.6.9 General average and marine insurance (3 hours)**

**The York-Antwerp Rules, 1974**

- states that where the York-Antwerp Rules apply, general average should be adjusted according to the Rules to the exclusion of any law or practice inconsistent with them
- defines a general average act
- states that general average sacrifices and expenses are to be borne by the different contributing interests on the basis of these Rules
- explains that only such losses, damages or expenses which are the direct consequence of the general average act are allowed as general average and that no indirect loss whatsoever will be admitted
- explains that rights to contribution in general average when the event which gave rise to the sacrifice was due to the fault of one of the parties to the adventure
- states that the onus of proof is upon the party claiming in general average to show that the loss or expense claimed is properly allowable as general average
- states that any extra expense incurred in place of another expense which would have been allowable as general average is deemed to be general average, but only up to the amount of the general average expense avoided
- explains that general average is to be adjusted, as regards both loss and contribution, on the basis of values at the time and place when and where the adventure ends
- states that the general principles contained in Rules A to G are amplified by numbered rules I to XXII, dealing with specific points of practice
- states that the Master should make a declaration of general average, as is required by the law and custom of the port, at a port of refuge and at a discharging port when general average damage to the cargo is suspected
- explains the duty of the Master to see to it that general average contributions (average bonds) are collected for the benefit of those entitled to them, whether they are cargo owners or shipowners, exercising the shipowner's lien on the cargo, where necessary, until they are paid

**1.6.10 Marine insurance and liability (5 hours)**

- explains in general terms the purpose of marine insurance
- explains what is meant by an insurable interest
- describes briefly how insurance is arranged through brokers



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– explains the principle of 'utmost good faith'
– explains the effect of misrepresentation or non-disclosure of material circumstances known to the assured
– explains 'warranty' and the effect on a marine insurance policy of breach of warranty
– describes briefly voyage policies, time policies and floating policies
– explains what is meant by deviation and how the insurer is discharged from liability from the moment a ship deviates under a voyage policy
– lists permitted deviations
– explains that a deviation clause will often permit the assured to extend his cover at a premium to be arranged, provided the insurer is given prompt notice of the deviation ('held covered' clause)
– describes briefly the perils usually covered in a marine insurance policy
– explains the use of 'Institute Clauses'
– explains the 'duty of assured' clause ('Sue and Labour' clause)
– distinguishes between partial loss, total loss and constructive total loss
– explains what is meant by 'particular average'
– explains the doctrine of subrogation
– explains the function of Protection and Indemnity Associations (P and I clubs)
– lists risks, liabilities and expenses covered by P and I clubs

**Noting and extending protests**

– explains that a 'note of protest' is a declaration by the Master of circumstances beyond his control which may give, or may have given, rise to loss or damage
– states that protests are made before a notary public, magistrate, consular officer or other authority
– states that protests should be noted as soon as possible, and in any case, within 24 hours of arrival in port
– states that, at the time of noting protest, the Master should reserve the right to extend it
– states that protests concerning cargo damage should be made before starting to unload
– explains that, although there is no requirement to use a special form, it is usual to do so
– explains that statements under oath are taken from the Master and other members of the crew and that such statements must be supported by appropriate entries in the logbook, which must be produced
– states that certified copies of the note of protest should be forwarded to the owners and one copy retained on board
– explains why protest should be noted at each discharging port and not just at the first port of call



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that a note of protest is advisable when:
  - during the voyage the ship has experienced weather conditions which may result in damage to cargo, the ship is in any way damaged, or there is reason to suspect that damage may have occurred
  - normal ventilation of perishable cargo has not been practicable on account of weather
  - cargo is shipped in such a condition that it is likely to deteriorate during the voyage (bills of lading must be appropriately endorsed)
  - the charterer or his agent commits any serious breach of the terms of the charter party
  - consignees fail to discharge cargo, take delivery or pay freight in accordance with the terms of a charter party or bill of lading, any general average act has occurred
- states that, in cases where damage is found to have occurred, it is necessary to extend protest to support claims
- states that the Master should consult his owner's agent about the local requirement and practice for extending a protest
- states that the Master must normally appear in person accompanied by a number, depending upon local custom, of crew members as witnesses.

**Letter of protest**

- explains that a letter of protest, which may also be simply called a "protest", is a written communication intended to convey and record dissatisfaction on the part of the protester (the sender) concerning some matter over which the recipient has control, and holding the recipient responsible for any (legal or financial) consequences of the matter being complained of
- explains that a letter of protest may help to substantiate a claim by the owner, or refute a claim by a charterer, harbour authority, etc., and may prove useful, if properly filed, in the resolution of a dispute long after the related event
- states that a letter of protest should not be confused with a protest noted or lodged before a notary public or consul
- explains that a letter of protest may be sent, in appropriate circumstances, by the Master of any ship, large or small, in any trade, and can be expected to be received by the Master of any ship. They are especially common (in both directions) in the tanker trades, where a variety of reasons give occasion for their sending
- explains that letters of protest are in most cases in connection with cargo operations, although they may be written about almost any matter where there may be legal liability, whether there is a contractual arrangement between the employers of the sender and recipient (as in the case of cargo-related protests) or not (as in the case of a protest sent to the Master of a closely berthed ship that is causing damage to the sender's ship)
- explain that some companies, especially those in the oil, gas or chemical trades, supply their Masters with a stock of printed proforma protest forms phrased in the company's "house" style, while others expect their Masters to compose suitable protest letters when required



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

**1.6.11 Stowaways (3 hours)**

- explains that as per IMO Guidelines – a "stowaway" is defined as "a person who is secreted on a ship, or in a cargo which is subsequently loaded on the ship, without the consent of the shipowner or the Master or any other responsible person, and who is detected on board after the ship has departed from a port and is reported as a stowaway by the Master to the appropriate authorities"
- explains that an international convention relating to stowaways was adopted in Brussels in 1957, but it has not yet entered into force
- explains that according to the P&I clubs (who deal with many stowaway incidents), certain parts of the world are high-risk areas for stowaways
- explains that since the P&I clubs invariably have the latest intelligence on stowaway risks, Masters should endeavour to obtain their latest club bulletins and information
- explains that at any port in a high-risk area, great care should be taken to ensure that stowaways do not board, and the following safeguards should be observed:
  1. A watch should be kept on the accommodation ladder or gangway.
  2. Stevedores should only be allowed to work in restricted areas and a watch should be kept on them.
  3. Open spaces should be closed as far as possible.
  4. A search of the ship should be carried out before the ship sails.
  5. All open-top containers on the quay should be checked. All containers on the quay should be stacked door-to-door, if possible
- explains IMO has introduced various guidelines on stowaway matters, the latest being in Resolution A.871(20), adopted on 27 November 1997, and its Annex, "Guidelines on the Allocation of Responsibilities to seek the successful resolution of stowaway cases"
- explains that the guidelines in the resolution state that the resolution of stowaway cases is difficult because of different national legislation in the various countries involved, nevertheless, some basic principles can be applied generally
- explains that as per the IMO guideline there are nine basic principles which can be applied generally with respect to stowaway cases, the second of these is that stowaway/asylum-seekers should be treated in compliance with international protection principles as set out in international instruments (including the UN Convention relating to the Status of Refugees of 28 July 1951 and the UN Protocol relating to the Status of Refugees of 31 January 1967) and relevant national legislation, the ninth is that stowaway incidents should be dealt with humanely by all parties involved. Due consideration should always be given to the operational safety of the ship and to the well-being of the stowaway



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

– explains that paragraph 5.1 of the IMO Guidelines lists responsibilities of the Master in stowaway cases, which are as follows:
  1. to make every effort to determine immediately the port of embarkation of the stowaway;
  2. to make every effort to establish the identity, including the nationality/ citizenship of the stowaway;
  3. to prepare a statement containing all information relevant to the stowaway, in accordance with information specified in the standard document annexed to these Guidelines, for presentation to the appropriate authorities;
  4. to notify the existence of a stowaway and any relevant details to his shipowner and appropriate authorities at the port of embarkation, the next port of call and the flag State;
  5. not to depart from his planned voyage to seek the disembarkation of a stowaway to any country unless repatriation has been arranged with sufficient documentation and permission for disembarkation, or unless there are extenuating security or compassionate reasons;
  6. to ensure that the stowaway is presented to appropriate authorities at the next port of call in accordance with their requirements;
  7. to take appropriate measures to ensure the security, general health, welfare and safety of the stowaway until disembarkation.
– explains the procedure to be adopted, in general, on the discovery at sea of stowaways, which is:
  1. The owner or manager, as appropriate, should be contacted. The owner will normally contact the P&I club's managers to decide on a course of action. The P&I club's correspondent serving the next port of call will normally be contacted by the club managers. The correspondent should be able to advise what information will be required by port State and other officials.
  2. An entry should be made in the Official Log Book recording the discovery of the stowaways.
  3. The compartment or area in which the stowaways were found should be searched. Any documents or articles of clothing, etc. may give an indication of their place of origin. (Most countries only allow a stowaway to be landed if he has the necessary travel documents to return to his own country. Stowaways rarely have any documentation, however, and some will try to destroy all clues as to their identity.)
  4. The clothing of the stowaways should be searched for indications as to their origin.
  5. The agent at the next port of call should be contacted and instructed to advise the appropriate authorities of the port State of the presence of stowaways on board.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

6. Each stowaway found should be individually interviewed in order to establish the following details:
   - name of stowaway;
   - stowaway's date and place of birth;
   - nationality of stowaway;
   - name, date and place of birth of either or both of the stowaway's parents;
   - postal and residential address of the stowaway and either parent;
   - stowaway's passport or seaman's book number, together with date and place of issue; and
   - stowaway's next of kin, if different from above.
7. Stowaway details should be obtained, the completed details should be communicated to the agent and the P&I club correspondent at the next port of call.
8. Photographs of each stowaway should be taken and, where digital camera facilities are available, transmitted to the P&I club correspondent; these may enable travel documents to be obtained more quickly on the ship's arrival.
9. All stowaways should be housed in some part of the crew accommodation which can be locked when necessary.
10. The stowaways should not be locked in their accommodation when the vessel is at sea and well clear of land unless they are considered a threat to the safety of the ship or personnel on board. Consideration should be given, however, to the possibility of unguarded stowaways launching a liferaft or boat in an attempt to reach land.
11. The stowaways should be locked securely in their accommodation when the vessel approaches any port or nears any land. (Consideration should be given to the possibility of the stowaways' escape through open scuttles.)
12. The stowaways should be provided with adequate food, water, sanitary facilities, etc.
13. The stowaways should be treated in a humane manner.
14. The stowaways should not be made to work for their keep.
15. The stowaways should not be signed on the Crew Agreement and should not be entered on any List of Crew. A "Stowaway List" should be made recording any known particulars, ready for production to port officials.
16. Evidence of costs relating to the stowaway case, such as fuel, insurance, wages, stores, provisions and port charges, should be gathered to support the owner's claim on his P&I policy. (The owner's costs associated with the landing of stowaways are usually recoverable from his P&I club.)
17. Full details of all events and particulars relating to the stowaway incident should be recorded in the Official Log Book, if necessary in an annexed document. (This may be used as part of any report required by owners, the club, etc.)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that arriving with stowaways on board can have complications
- explains that the IMO Guidelines on the Allocation of Responsibilities to seek the Successful Resolution of Stowaway Cases state (in paragraph 3) that the resolution of stowaway cases is difficult because of different national legislation in each of the potentially several countries involved: the country of embarkation, the country of disembarkation, the flag State of the vessel, the country of apparent, claimed or actual nationality/citizenship of the stowaway, and countries of transit during repatriation
- explains that the IMO Guidelines on the Allocation of Responsibilities to seek the Successful Resolution of Stowaway Cases contain (in paragraph 4) certain basic principles which can be applied generally, the first of these is that there is recognition that stowaways arriving at or entering a country without the required documents are, in general, illegal entrants. Decisions on dealing with such situations are the prerogative of the countries where such arrival or entry occurs, the third is that the shipowner and his representatives on the spot, the Master, as well as the port authorities and national Administrations, should cooperate as far as possible in dealing with stowaway cases
- states that in every case the agent should be notified of the presence of stowaways in advance of arrival
- explains that under the U.S. Refugee Act 1980 a stowaway who arrives in the USA can request political asylum
- explains that the Immigration and Naturalization Service (INS) has taken the position that shipowners are required to provide 24-hour armed guards during the entire asylum process which can take months
- explains that there have been cases where the owner has incurred costs in excess of $1m for such detention
- explains that many countries impose very heavy penalties (in some cases of over US$200,000) on Masters who fail to ensure that stowaways are kept securely on board in port

**1.6.12 Ship's agents and agency (2 hours)**

- explains that as per United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, UNCTAD Minimum Standards For Shipping Agents, "Shipping agent" means any person (natural or legal) engaged on behalf of the owner, charterer or operator of a ship, or of the owner of cargo, in providing shipping services including:
  i. Negotiating and accomplishing the sale or purchase of a ship;
  ii. Negotiating and supervising the charter of a ship;
  iii. Collection of freight and/or charter hire where appropriate and all related financial matters;
  iv. Arrangements for Customs and cargo documentation and forwarding of cargo;
  v. Arrangements for procuring, processing the documentation and performing all activities required related to dispatch of cargo;
  vi. Organizing arrival or departure arrangements for the ship;
  vii. Arranging for the supply of services to a ship while in port
- explains the authority of the agency and where it may be actual authority or apparent authority (also called ostensible authority)
- explains that actual authority may be express or implied



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that express authority is given by words (spoken or written) such as when an officer is appointed by letter to command of a ship and authority is implied when it is inferred by the conduct of the parties and the circumstances of the case, such as when a ship Master is appointed to command by a shipowner, who thereby implicitly authorizes him to carry out, on the owner's behalf, all the usual things that fall within the scope of a Master's position, e.g. engagement and discharge of crew, signing of bills of lading, and purchasing of provisions
- explains that an exception to this would be where the principal has expressly placed a restriction on the implied authority of the agent, e.g. where the Master is expressly prohibited from signing bills of lading
- describes the different types of agent and agency
- explains that agents are normally either general agents or special agents
- explains that a general agent is an agent who has authority to act for his principal in all matters concerning a particular trade or business, or of a particular nature, many liner agents, for example, act as general agent in a particular city or country for one or more carriers
- explains that a special agent is an agent appointed for the carrying out of particular duties which are not part of his normal business activities
- explains that a special agent's authority is therefore limited by his actual instructions, most port agents are special agents since their authority does not extend beyond their actual instructions
- states that shipmasters are similarly special agents for purposes of engaging and discharging crew, purchasing ships' stores and bunkers, and making salvage agreements in certain cases
- outlines that an agent's duties to his principal are:
  - to perform his duties in person, using ordinary skill and diligence, and if he purports to have special skills, to use his special skills also;
  - to obey lawful instructions of his principal, and when he is not instructed on a particular matter, to act in his principal's best interests;
  - to disclose all information relevant to the agency to the principal, avoiding any conflict of interest;
  - to maintain confidentiality about matters communicated to him as agent, and not to disclose them to prospective third parties;
  - to keep proper accounts of all transactions and render them to his principal on request;
  - not to make extra profits from the agency without disclosing them to his principal
- explains that under the terms of voyage charters port agents are normally appointed, and therefore paid for, by the shipowner. However, many voyage charterers insist on nominating port agents, and are entitled to do so if the charter party is suitably claused to that effect
- explains where a charter party provides that "the vessel shall be consigned to Charterers' agents….", it means that the charterer will nominate agents
- explains that when on a time charter, most of the "voyage costs" associated with earning the freight or other revenue are normally for the time charterer's account, and it can be expected that port agents will be appointed by the charterer in order to look after his commercial interests



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that the charterer's obligation to provide and pay for agents may be in a "Charterers to provide" clause, or a separate Agency Clause or Consignment Clause
- explains that any "protecting" or "husbandry agent" used will be nominated and appointed by the shipowner
- explains that the shipping agents have to adhere to a Code of professional conduct given in United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, UNCTAD Minimum Standards For Shipping Agents, which states that the shipping agent shall:
  i. discharge his duties to his principal(s) with honesty, integrity and impartiality;
  ii. apply a standard of competence in order to perform in a conscientious, diligent and efficient manner all services undertaken as shipping agent;
  iii. observe all national laws and other regulations relevant to the duties he undertakes;
  iv. exercise due diligence to guard against fraudulent practices;
  v. exercise due care when handling monies on behalf of his principal(s)

**1.6.13 Port of refuge procedures (2 hours)**

- states that a "port of refuge" is a port or place that a vessel diverts to when her Master considers it unsafe to continue the voyage due to a peril that threatens the "common safety", e.g. when there is a dangerous ingress of water into the vessel, a dangerous shift of cargo, the vessel adopts an angle of loll, there is a serious fire on board, etc.
- explains that where such a deviation is for the preservation from peril of property involved in a common maritime adventure, it will usually constitute a general average act and the costs of the deviation to and stay at the port of refuge will be allowed in general average
- explains that where the shipowner or carrier is a party to a contract of carriage, discontinuation of the voyage is a deviation from the contract
- explains that a deviation to a port of refuge will be regarded as a justifiable deviation if the reason can be shown to be a valid one within the terms of the contract. All contractual rights would, in that case, be unaffected
- explains that if the reason for deviating could not be shown to be valid, the deviation would be considered unjustifiable and the consequences could be severe for the shipowner or carrier, in that it would probably constitute a repudiatory breach of the contract, making the owner/carrier liable for all costs of any accident to ship or cargo sustained during the deviation
- outlines that valid reasons for deviating to a port of refuge usually include:
  - weather, collision or grounding damage affecting seaworthiness of the ship;
  - serious fire;
  - dangerous shift of cargo;
  - serious machinery breakdown;
  - any other accident causing some serious threat to the vessel and cargo;
  - shortage of bunkers (if it can be proved that the vessel left port with adequate bunkers for the foreseeable voyage, and ran short as a consequence of weathering exceptionally severe weather, contamination, etc.)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- explains that a "Port of refuge" is a term usually associated with a general average act since, under the York-Antwerp Rules, certain costs and expenses incurred in making for, entering, staying at and leaving a port or place of refuge, even where the ship returns to her port or place of loading, are admitted as general average
- describes the explanation given in Rule X for expenses at port of refuge provided in the York-Antwerp Rules
- explains that a port or place where a vessel seeks temporary shelter from adverse weather is not a port of refuge, since running for shelter is "ordinary" practice and not "extraordinary" in the context of Rule A of the York-Antwerp Rules
- explains that a "common maritime adventure" is said to be terminated on completion of discharge of cargo (or disembarkation of passengers) at the port of destination following a general average act. If the voyage is abandoned at an intermediate port (e.g. a port of refuge), then the adventure terminates at that port
- explains that a declaration of general average should be formally made in compliance with local law and custom before delivery of cargo at the termination of the voyage, in order to initiate an adjustment
- explains that the declaration is usually made by the shipowner or the Master, but in some countries any one of the interested parties may make it. The owners or agent should be able to advise on local requirements
- explains the procedure for any particular port or place of refuge in general, the following basic steps should be followed:
  - as soon as the decision is taken to discontinue the voyage and make for a port or place of refuge (whether under tow or otherwise) inform the owner and charterer (if any), stating the reason for the deviation
  - record the ship's position. Sound tanks for quantity of bunkers on board. From this point until departure from the port or place of refuge, keep accurate records of events and expenditure, etc., for eventual delivery to the owner and average adjuster
  - request the owner to arrange the appointment of an agent at the port of refuge to handle the vessel's visit
  - if the cause of the deviation is an "accident" inform the flag State
  - call the agent as soon as his identity is known. Pass ETA and information necessary for making preparations for the vessel's arrival, including tonnage, length, flag, P&I club, classification society, etc. Request the agent to notify:
    - Port State Administration if vessel is damaged or seaworthiness is affected.
    - harbour master or port authority. Inform port authority of the full facts, as the authority may want to keep vessel outside port until cargo is discharged, etc. Give details of the nature and severity of damage, mentioning any disabled navaids, steering gear, machinery, etc. State any pollution hazard.
    - pilot station, linesmen, boatman, customs, port health, immigration, etc.
    - local correspondent of the owner's P&I club. (See club handbook for name and address, or ask owners.) A representative from the correspondent firm, or a surveyor appointed by the correspondent, should attend on arrival.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- on arrival at the port or place of refuge, the salvor (if any) will require salvage security, which should be arranged by the owner and cargo owners. Failing this, the salvor may have vessel arrested pending satisfaction of his claim.
- obtain health clearance in accordance with local regulations (as advised by the agent).
- enter vessel in with Customs "under average".
- inform the owner (and charterer, if any) of vessel's safe arrival.
- owners will declare general average. (Any of the parties involved may declare general average, but the owners will normally do this since they are closest to "the action".)
- note protest as soon as possible but in any case within 24 hours, in compliance with local custom (ask the agent about this), reserving the right "to extend at a time and place convenient".
- where there is hull or machinery damage, the agent should be requested to notify local Lloyd's Agent (a requirement of the Notice of Claim and Tenders Clause in Institute Time Clauses – Hulls 1.10.83).
- hull and machinery underwriters normally instruct a surveyor, in major cases from the Salvage Association.
- where there is hull or machinery damage, a class surveyor, if available at the port, will inspect and report on the damage, stipulating repairs necessary for the vessel to maintain class. Temporary repairs may be acceptable.
- if no class surveyor is available, the class society should be contacted, and will advise the appropriate steps to take in order for class to be maintained until a port can be reached for survey, the old practice of requesting two independent Masters or engineers to inspect temporary repairs and issue a Certificate of Seaworthiness should no longer be necessary. Even where a class surveyor cannot reach a damaged ship, the classification society can usually be notified of the damage and asked for instructions.
- if cargo damage is probable, or cargo discharge is necessary before repairs can be made, call a hatch survey before commencing discharge. Employ only registered and unbiased surveyors recommended by the P&I club correspondent. Cargo interests should be notified so that they can appoint their own surveyors. Remember that cargo surveyors are appointed by cargo interests and may criticize the Master's actions or allege that the vessel was unseaworthy. Be guided by the P&I club correspondent as to who to allow on board and about making statements which may adversely affect the owner's legal position.
- if the voyage is being terminated and cargo owners are taking delivery of their consignments, General Average Bond and General Average Guarantee forms will first have to be signed. The owner's lien on cargo should be exercised if necessary; this should be discussed with the owner and agent.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- arrange cargo discharge (under survey) and either trans-shipment or warehousing of cargo during the repairs, if necessary. (This will depend on the length of time in port, nature of cargo, etc.)
- on receipt of class surveyor's report re hull/machinery damage, the owner will advertise for tenders. (Superintendents and the Salvage Association surveyor will jointly attend to this, bearing in mind the Notice of Claim and Tenders Clause and underwriters' power of veto. Tenders should only be accepted with guidance from Salvage Association surveyor and Lloyd's or IUA Agent.)
- carry out repairs under class and Salvage Association surveyors' guidance.
- on completion of repairs, class surveyor will carry out another survey. If, in his opinion, the vessel is seaworthy he will issue an Interim Certificate of Class, and will send his report to the classification society. If acceptable to the society's committee, the vessel will retain class. If the class surveyor is employed by an authorized society, he may also issue provisional statutory certificates on behalf of MCA (or other flag State Administration) to enable the vessel to continue her voyage.
- reload cargo (under survey) if voyage being continued.
- extend Protest to include all details of the damage and repairs. Obtain copies for owners.
- port agent will pay repairers. (If unpaid, repairers will have a maritime lien on the vessel.) Allow general average and Salvage Association surveyors (representing H&M insurers) to see the agent's account before paying.
- send all relevant documents to the owner for onwards delivery to the average adjuster.
- enter vessel outwards with Customs (in accordance with local regulations, as advised by the agent). Obtain outwards clearance.
- continue the voyage.

– explains that in most general average cases the main evidence required for the adjustment comes from the various survey reports, supported by statements by witnesses and ship's records

– outlines the evidence required at port of refuge as listed below:
  - full and accurate records should be kept of the general average incident and the call at the port of refuge, including details of all the various parties involved and their actions
  - photographs and video footage may be useful; the general average statement may take more than a year to produce
  - where salvage services are engaged, a full record should be kept of the salvor's actions and of the equipment used by both parties



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- in order to assess the various contributory values, the average adjuster will require the following documents:
  - all general average security documents including signed average bonds, average guarantees, counterfoils of average deposit receipts and cancelled deposit receipts;
  - casualty reports from the Master;
  - certified extracts from deck and engine room logs;
  - copies of extended protests;
  - survey reports on hull and machinery damage;
  - survey reports on cargo lost or damaged by general average sacrifice;
  - account sales of any cargo sold;
  - copies of any shipping invoices;
  - copies of telexes;
  - accounts for disbursements incurred together with all supporting vouchers;
  - cargo valuation forms;
  - manifest of cargo on board at time of the general average act;
  - copies of bills of lading;
  - portage account for the voyage, and an account of stores consumed;
  - any other evidence relating to the casualty

**1.6.14 Master/pilot relationship (2 hours)**

- explains that the "maritime pilot" referred to in this section does not include deep-sea pilots or shipmasters or crew who are certificated or licensed to carry out pilotage duties in particular areas.
- reviews the applicable contents of IMO Assembly resolution A.960(23), Recommendations on training and certification and operational procedures for maritime pilots other than deep-sea pilots.
- explains that the law in most countries makes clear that while a maritime pilot is engaged in pilotage duties aboard a vessel in compulsory pilotage waters the pilot has conduct of the vessel and directs the navigation of the vessel, subject to the Master's overall command of the ship and the ultimate responsibility for its safety. In this respect, the navigation of a ship in compulsory pilotage waters is a shared responsibility between the pilot and the Master/bridge team
- explains that maritime pilots are expected to act in the public interest and to maintain a professional judgement that is independent of any economic pressures to the ship or other desires that do not comport with the needs of maritime safety. Because of these duties, a maritime pilot is not considered a member of the bridge "team", but a maritime pilot is expected to develop and maintain a cooperative, mutually-supportive working relationship with the Master and bridge team in recognition of the respective responsibility of each for the safe navigation of the vessel
- explains the provisions relating to pilotage contained in STCW, section A-VIII, part 4-1, paragraph 49
- explains that the Master has the right, and in fact the duty, to intervene or displace the pilot in circumstances where the pilot is manifestly incompetent or incapacitated or the ship is in immediate danger *('in extremis')* due to the pilot's actions or intentions.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains that the Master should generally:<br>– see that the ship's navigation is monitored (including plotting fixes/positions on charts) as if there were no pilot on board;<br>– ensure that officers, helmsmen, etc. attend to the pilot's requests with efficiency and courtesy;<br>– instruct the officer-of-the-watch that he has charge of the vessel whilst under pilotage, unless specifically informed otherwise by the Master;<br>– clearly state his/her opinion to the pilot on important matters of navigation and manoeuvring<br>– states that the shipowner is generally liable for the consequences of negligent navigation whilst the ship is under pilotage | |
| **1.7** | **Responsibilities under International Instruments affecting the Safety of the Ship, Passengers, Crew and Cargo (4 hours)** | R104 |
| | **Ballast Water Convention 2004 (2 hours)**<br>– defines the following:<br>– ballast water<br>– ballast water management<br>– sediments<br>– describes the application of this convention<br>– describes the conditions where the application of this convention may be exempted<br>– describes the management and control requirement based on section B, regulation B1 to B6<br>– describes the annex – section A, B, C, D and E briefly<br>– describes the standards that need to be observed in ballast water exchange<br>– states under regulation B-4 Ballast Water Exchange, all ships using ballast water exchange should:<br>– whenever possible, conduct ballast water exchange at least 200 nautical miles from the nearest land and in water at least 200 metres in depth, taking into account Guidelines developed by IMO;<br>– in cases where the ship is unable to conduct ballast water exchange as above, this should be as far from the nearest land as possible, and in all cases at least 50 nautical miles from the nearest land and in water at least 200 metres in depth<br>– states as per annex – section B Management and Control Requirements for Ships:<br>– ships are required to have on board and implement a Ballast Water Management Plan approved by the Administration (regulation B-1). The Ballast Water Management Plan is specific to each ship and includes a detailed description of the actions to be taken to implement the Ballast Water Management requirements and supplemental Ballast Water Management practices<br>– states that a new paragraph, 4, has been added with effect from July 1, 2010 to SOLAS chapter V, regulation 22 – Navigation bridge visibility. Some changes are operational and others introduce new requirements applicable to navigation records | R71 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – states that as a consequence of this amendment, any increase in blind sectors or reduction in horizontal fields of vision resulting from ballast water exchange operations is to be taken into account by the Master before determining that it is safe to proceed with the exchange<br>– states that as an additional measure, to compensate for possible increased blind sectors or reduced horizontal fields of vision, the Master must ensure that a proper lookout is maintained at all times during the exchange. Ballast water exchange must be conducted in accordance with the ship's ballast water management plan, taking into account the recommendations adopted by the IMO<br>– explains that in accordance with SOLAS chapter V, regulation 28 – Records of navigational activities and daily reporting, the commencement and termination of the operation should be recorded<br>– explains that the navigational records generated during ballast water exchange may be reviewed during ISM Audits and port State control inspections | |
| | **Port State control (2 hours)**<br>– explains that "port State control" is the inspection of foreign ships present in a nation's ports for the purpose of verifying that the condition of the ships and their equipment comply with the provisions of international conventions and codes, and that the ships are manned and operated in compliance with those provisions<br>– explains that the primary responsibility for maintaining ships' standards rests with their flag States, as well as their owners and Masters. However, many flag States do not, for various reasons, fulfil their obligations under international maritime conventions, and port State control provides a useful "safety net" to catch substandard ships<br>– states that a "port State control regime", where set up under a "memorandum of understanding" ("MOU") or similar accord between neighbouring port States, is a system of harmonized inspection procedures designed to target substandard ships with the main objective being their eventual elimination from the region covered by the MOU's participating States<br>– states that there are eight international PSC agreements currently in force worldwide<br>– identifies how to ascertain which port State agreement a particular port State might be party to and any areas of particular focus that may currently be in place<br>– outlines that the list of certificates and documents which are checked during the inspection are:<br>1. International Tonnage Certificate (1969);<br>2. Passenger Ship Safety Certificate;<br>3. Cargo Ship Safety Construction Certificate;<br>4. Cargo Ship Safety Equipment Certificate;<br>5. Cargo Ship Safety Radio Certificate;<br>6. Exemption Certificate;<br>7. Cargo Ship Safety Certificate;<br>8. Document of Compliance (SOLAS 74, regulation II-2/54);<br>9. Dangerous Goods Special List or Manifest, or Detailed Stowage Plan; | R80 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

10. International Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk, or the Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk, whichever is appropriate;
11. International Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk, or the Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk, whichever is appropriate;
12. International Oil Pollution Prevention Certificate;
13. International Pollution Prevention Certificate for the Carriage of Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk;
14. International Load Line Certificate (1966);
15. International Load Line Exemption Certificate;
16. Oil Record Book, parts I and II;
17. Shipboard Oil Pollution Emergency Plan;
18. Cargo Record Book;
19. Minimum Safe Manning Document;
20. Certificates of Competency;
21. Medical certificates (MLC and STCW);
22. Stability information;
23. Safety Management Certificate and copy of Document of Compliance (SOLAS chapter IX);
24. Certificates as to the ship's hull strength and machinery installations issued by the classification society in question (only to be required if the ship maintains its class with a classification society);
25. Survey Report Files (in case of bulk carriers or oil tankers in accordance with resolution A.744(18));
26. For ro-ro passenger ships, information on the A/A max ratio;
27. Document of authorization for the carriage of grain;
28. Special Purpose Ship Safety Certificate;
29. High-Speed Craft Safety Certificate and Permit to Operate High-Speed Craft;
30. Mobile Offshore Drilling Unit Safety Certificate;
31. For oil tankers, the record of oil discharge monitoring and control system for the last ballast voyage;
32. The muster list, fire control plan and damage control plan;
33. Ship's logbook with respect to the records of tests and drills and the log for records of inspection and maintenance of life-saving appliances and arrangements;
34. Procedures and Arrangements Manual (chemical tankers);
35. Cargo Securing Manual;
36. Certificate of Registry or other document of nationality;
37. Garbage Management Plan;
38. Garbage Record Book;
39. Bulk carrier booklet (SOLAS chapter VI regulation 7); and
40. Reports of previous port State control inspections.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- outlines that in addition to the general control of above listed certificates and documents, examinations/inspections of the following are generally given priority by Port State Control Officer (PSCO):
  - Nautical publication (SOLAS 74 R V/20)
  - Navigational equipment (SOLAS 74 R V/12 and 19)
  - Emergency starting and running tests (SOLAS 74 R II-2 – 4.3)
  - Lifesaving equipment. Rafts FF (SOLAS 74 R III/20, 23, 26 and 29)
  - Emergency Generator (start/stop only) (SOLAS 74 R II-1/42 & 43)
  - Hull corrosion and damages (Load Lines) (SOLAS 74 R I/11)
  - Main engine & aux. engines (SOLAS 74 R II/26, 27 & 28)
  - Oily water separator 15 ppm alarm (MARPOL Annex I/16(1))
  - Oil discharge monitor (ODM) (MARPOL Annex I/16)
  - Charts corrected and proper scale (SOLAS 74 R V/20)
  - Fire safety Control plan (SOLAS 74 R II-2/20)
  - Ventilation inlets/outlets (SOLAS 74 R II-2/16.9 & 48)
  - Emergency training and drills (Log book rec. SOLAS 74 R III/18)
  - Emergency lighting/batteries (SOLAS 74 R II/42 & 43)
  - Deck and hatches corrosion and damages (LL 1966)
  - Steering gear – incl. auxiliary & emergency (Bridge inspection only – SOLAS 74 R V/19)
  - Cleanliness in engine room (SOLAS 74 R II-1/26 and ILO 134)
  - Cleanliness in accommodation (ILO 92 & 133)
- explains that the port State control inspections may be conducted on the following basis:
  - initiative of the port State Administration;
  - the request of, or on the basis of, information regarding a ship provided by another Administration;
  - information regarding a ship provided by a member of the crew, a professional body, an association, a trade union or any other individual with an interest in the safety of the ship, its crew and passengers, or the protection of the marine environment
- explains that the PSC inspections may be on random, targeted or periodical basis. The following types of PSC inspections are used in PSC:
  1. Initial inspection (random)
  2. More detailed inspection (escalated)
  3. Expanded inspection (targeted/periodical)
- states that the definition of inspection is: “A visit on board a ship to check both the validity of the relevant certificates and other documents, and the overall condition of the ship, its equipment, and its crew”
- explains that the certificates and documents listed above should therefore be readily available and presented to the PSCO at his request during the PSC inspection
- states that the definition of more detailed inspection is: “An inspection conducted when there are clear grounds for believing that the condition of the ship, its equipment, or its crew does not correspond substantially with the particulars of the certificates”



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- states that the definition of Clear grounds is: "Evidence that the ship, its equipment, or its crew does not correspond substantially with the requirements of the relevant conventions or that the Master or crew members are not familiar with essential shipboard procedures relating to the safety of ships or the prevention of pollution"
- outlines that "Clear grounds" to conduct a more detailed inspection include:
  1) the absence of principal equipment or arrangements required by the conventions;
  2) evidence from a review of the ship's certificates that a certificate or certificates are clearly invalid;
  3) evidence that documentation required by the conventions are not on board, incomplete, are not maintained or are falsely maintained;
  4) evidence from the PSCO's general impressions and observations that serious hull or structural deterioration or deficiencies exist that may place at risk the structural, watertight or weathertight integrity of the ship;
  5) evidence from the PSCO's general impressions or observations that serious deficiencies exist in the safety, pollution prevention or navigational equipment;
  6) information or evidence that the Master or crew is not familiar with essential shipboard operations relating to the safety of ships or the prevention of pollution, or that such operations have not been carried out;
  7) indications that key crew members may not be able to communicate with each other or with other persons on board;
  8) the emission of false distress alerts not followed by proper cancellation procedures;
  9) receipt of a report or complaint containing information that a ship appears to be substandard
- explains that the PSCO during a more detailed inspection generally takes the following into account:
  - structure;
  - machinery spaces;
  - conditions of assignment of load lines;
  - life-saving appliances;
  - fire safety;
  - regulations for preventing collisions at sea;
  - Cargo Ship Safety Construction Certificate;
  - Cargo Ship Safety Radio Certificates;
  - equipment in excess of convention or flag State requirements;
  - guidelines for discharge requirements under Annexes I and III of MARPOL 73/78 which includes:
    - inspection of crude oil washing (COW) operations;
    - inspection of unloading, stripping and prewash operations;
    - guidelines for control of operational requirements – which include:
      - muster list;
      - communication;
      - fire drills;
      - abandon ship drills;



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|

- damage control plan and Shipboard Oil Pollution Emergency Plan;
- fire control plan;
- bridge operation;
- cargo operation;
- operation of the machinery;
- manuals, instructions etc.;
- oil and oily mixtures from machinery spaces;
- loading, unloading and cleaning procedures for cargo spaces of tankers;
- dangerous goods and harmful substances in packaged form;
- garbage;

– minimum manning standards and certification;
– STCW 78;
– ISM; and
– ISPS Code

– states that expanded inspection is an inspection conducted according to non-mandatory guidelines only once during 12 month period for certain types of ships and certain categories of age and size
– explains that oil tankers, bulk carriers, gas and chemical carriers and passenger ships are subject to expanded inspections once during a period of 12 months
– outlines the IMO RESOLUTIONS pertaining to Port State Controls are as follows:
  – A.9/Res.321 Procedures for the control of ships 12/11/1975
  – A.12/Res.466 Procedures of port state control 19/11/1981
  – A.15/Res.597 Amendments to the procedures for the control of ships 19/11/1987
  – A.19/Res.787 Procedures for port state control 23/11/1995
  – A 21/Res.882 Amendments to the procedures for port state control (resolution A.787(19) 25/11/1999
– states that the publication by IMO which gives the General Procedural Guidelines for Port State Control Officers are also of particular relevance to shipmaster
– explains that a record of port State control inspections including safety-related details of many ships is available on the internet from the Equasis database and may be viewed by any member of the public
– explains that Equasis forms part of the Quality Shipping campaign launched by the EU in 1997 which is formally supported by signatories from marine Administrations, classification societies, P&I clubs and the ITF
– explains that more than 40 organizations provide information to Equasis and is used heavily by charterers and insurers as well as marine Administrations with port State control functions



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **1.8** | **Methods and aids to prevent pollution of the marine environment by ships (2 hours)** | |
| | **Convention of the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter (London Dumping Convention) (LDC)** | R 106 |
| | – explains the aims of the Convention<br>– defines, for the purpose of the Convention:<br>  – dumping<br>  – wastes or other matter<br>  – special permit<br>  – general permit<br>– states that the dumping of wastes or other matter in whatever form or condition, as listed in annex I, is prohibited<br>– states that the dumping of wastes or other matter listed in annex II requires a prior special permit<br>– states that the dumping of all other wastes or matter requires a prior general permit<br>– explains that the provisions of Article IV do not apply when it is necessary to secure the safety of human life or of vessels in cases of 'force majeure' caused by stress of weather, or in any case which constitutes a danger to human life or a real threat to vessels<br>– states that such dumping should be done so as to minimize the likelihood of damage to human or marine life and must be reported immediately<br>– states that the Addendum to annex I contains regulations on the incineration of wastes at sea<br>– explains that the appropriate authority of a Contracting Party should issue prior special or general permits in respect of matter intended for dumping:<br>  – loaded in its territory<br>  – loaded by a vessel flying its flag when the loading occurs in the territory of a State not party to the Convention | |
| | **International Convention Relating to Intervention on the High Seas in Cases of Oil Pollution Casualties, 1969** | R 107 |
| | – describes the rights of Parties to the Convention to intervene on the high seas following a maritime casualty<br>– defines, for the purposes of the Convention:<br>  – maritime casualty<br>  – ship<br>  – oil<br>  – related interests<br>– describes the provisions which a coastal State should apply when exercising the right to take measures in accordance with Article I | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.2 | Monitor and Control Compliance with Legislative requirements | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | **Protocol relating to Intervention on the High Seas in Cases of Pollution by Substances other than Oil, 1973**<br>– describes the rights of Parties to the Protocol to intervene on the high seas following a maritime casualty<br>– defines 'substances other than oil'<br>– explains that the Protocol extends the rights and obligations of coastal States to cases involving imminent threat of pollution by substances other than oil | |
| | **International Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage,1969 (CLC 1969)**<br>– states that no claim for compensation may be made against the servants or agents of the owner<br>– explains that, with certain exceptions, the owner may limit his liability by constituting a fund for the sum representing the limit of his liability with the Court of a Contracting State where the action is brought<br>– states that claims in respect of expenses reasonably incurred by the owner voluntarily to prevent or minimize pollution damage rank equally with other claims against the fund<br>– explains that where a fund has been constituted and the owner is entitled to limit his liability, no person having a claim for pollution damage resulting from that incident is entitled to exercise any rights over other assets of the owner and that the ship or any other property belonging to the owner should be released<br>– states that the owner of a ship registered in a Contracting State and carrying more than 2,000 tons of oil in bulk as cargo is required to maintain insurance in the sum of his limit of liability<br>– states that the appropriate authority of a Contracting State, after determining that the requirements have been complied with, should issue a certificate attesting that insurance or other financial security is in force<br>– states that the certificate should be carried on board ship and a copy deposited with the relevant authorities<br>– states that a Contracting State must not permit a ship under its flag to which this Article applies to trade without a certificate<br>– states that Contracting States must ensure under their national legislation, that insurance or other security is in force in respect of any ship, whenever registered, entering or leaving their ports of offshore terminals if the ship actually carries more than 2,000 tons of oil in bulk as cargo | R108 |
| **1.9** | **National legislation for implementing international agreements and conventions (1 hour)**<br>– explains the process by which international agreements and conventions are ratified and implemented into national legislation | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.3 | Maintain Safety and Security of Crew and Passengers and the Operational Condition of Safety Equipment | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>3.3.1 LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCE REGULATIONS (SOLAS)<br>3.3.2 ORGANIZATION OF FIRE AND ABANDON SHIP DRILLS<br>3.3.3 MAINTENANCE OF OPERATIONAL CONDITION OF LIFE-SAVING, FIREFIGHTING AND OTHER SAFETY SYSTEMS<br>3.3.4 ACTIONS TO PROTECT AND SAFEGUARD ALL PERSONS ON BOARD IN EMERGENCIES<br>3.3.5 ACTIONS TO LIMIT DAMAGE AND SAVE THE SHIP FOLLOWING A FIRE, EXPLOSION, COLLISION OR GROUNDING | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.3 | Maintain Safety and Security of Crew and Passengers and the Operational Condition of Safety Equipment | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.3.1 LIFESAVING APPLIANCE REGULATIONS (SOLAS)<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T42, T43, B59, B62<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V95, V96, V100<br>Required performance:<br>**1.1 Life-saving appliance regulations (SOLAS) (2 hours)**<br>– demonstrates a thorough knowledge of the regulations concerning life-saving appliances and arrangements (SOLAS), including the LSA Code<br>3.3.2 ORGANIZATION OF FIRE AND ABANDON SHIP DRILLS<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees must be familiar with the content and application of the requirements for the scheduling and organization of fire and abandon ship drills of IMO model courses 7.03, 1.23 and 2.03. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of such techniques before undertaking this management level content*<br>**2.1 Organization of fire and abandon ship drills**<br>– prepares schedules for the conduct of fire and abandon ship drills so that all required drills and equipment are covered within required timeframes<br>– discusses ways in which crew can be motivated to participate fully in drills<br>– prepares plans for effective drills<br>– organizes effective drills including the briefing, conduct and debriefing of the drill<br>– discusses the process for ensuring that required changes are made to the safety management system and on board procedures as a result of the lessons learnt from drills<br>3.3.3 MAINTENANCE OF OPERATIONAL CONDITION OF LIFE-SAVING, FIREFIGHTING AND OTHER SAFETY SYSTEMS<br>Required performance:<br>**3.1 Maintenance of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems**<br>– discusses the use and upkeep of the SOLAS training manual in terms of the safety equipment provided and the required maintenance of this equipment<br>– prepares procedures and checklists for the inspection of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board<br>– ensures that regular inspections of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board are undertaken and that any deficiencies are identified and rectified<br>– prepare procedures and schedules for the maintenance of life saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board<br>– prepares schedules for the required survey of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board | | R2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.3 | Maintain Safety and Security of Crew and Passengers and the Operational Condition of Safety Equipment | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – prepares for and supports the survey of life-saving, firefighting and other safety systems on board<br>– prepares procedures and checklists for the inspection of watertight doors, side scuttles, cross flooding arrangements, valves and other closing mechanisms<br>– prepares maintenance plans and procedures for watertight doors, side scuttles, cross flooding arrangements, valves and other closing mechanisms | |
| 3.3.4 | ACTIONS TO PROTECT AND SAFEGUARD ALL PERSONS ON BOARD IN EMERGENCIES | |
| **Textbooks:** T3 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V35 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **4.1** | **Actions to protect and safeguard all persons on board in emergencies (4 hours)**<br>– states that some crew members will be assigned specific duties for mustering and control of passengers<br>– lists those duties as:<br>– warning the passengers<br>– ensuring that all passenger spaces are evacuated<br>– guiding passengers to muster stations<br>– maintaining discipline in passageways, stairs and doorways<br>– checking that passengers are suitably clothed and that life jackets are correctly donned<br>– taking a roll-call of passengers<br>– instructing passengers on procedure for boarding survival craft or jumping into the sea<br>– directing passengers to embarkation stations<br>– instructing passengers during drills<br>– ensuring that a supply of blankets is taken to the survival craft | R1, R2 |
| | **Rescue of persons from a vessel in distress or from a wreck**<br>This section includes content that is not directly contained within STCW 2010 but which is recommended to be included in training courses for management level officers<br>– states why it is preferable to wait for daylight when no immediate danger exists<br>– states that communications should be established between the ships and the method of rescue agreed upon when time permits<br>– states that rescue boats or motor-lifeboats would be used if conditions permitted<br>– states that unnecessary equipment should be removed from the boats and replaced by lifejackets, life buoys, blankets and a portable VHF radio<br>– states that the rescue vessel should reconnoitre the area to see if there is any wreckage which could be a danger to boats<br>– describes how both ships can spread oil in rough weather<br>– describes the preparations for taking survivors on board from the boats | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.3 | Maintain Safety and Security of Crew and Passengers and the Operational Condition of Safety Equipment | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – describes how to provide a lee and launch boats<br>– describes how boats should approach the wreck and pick up survivors<br>– describes the recovery of boats and survivors<br>– describes the methods of rescue which may be used when sea conditions are too dangerous to use boats | |
| | **Man-overboard procedure**<br>– describes methods of recovering a person from the sea when heavy weather prevents the use of the normal manoeuvres and boats<br>– describes and explains the actions to take when a person is reported missing at sea | R1 |
| 3.3.5 | ACTIONS TO LIMIT DAMAGE AND SAVE THE SHIP FOLLOWING A FIRE, EXPLOSION, COLLISION OR GROUNDING | |
| **Textbooks:** T10 | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V24, V25, V28, V29 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **5.1** | **Actions to limit damage and save the ship following a fire, explosion, collision or grounding (4 hours)**<br>**Means of limiting damage and salving the ship following a fire or explosion**<br>– describes the use and limitations of standard procedures and prepared contingency plans in emergency situations<br>– describes methods of fighting fires (see IMO model course 2.03, Advanced training in fire fighting)<br>– states that cooling of compartment boundaries where fire has occurred should be continued until ambient temperature is approached<br>– explains the dangers of accumulated water from firefighting and describes how to deal with it<br>– states that watch for re-ignition should be maintained until the area is cold<br>– describes the precautions to take before entry to a compartment where a fire has been extinguished<br>– describes the inspection for damage<br>– describes measures which may be taken to plug holes, shore-up damaged or stressed structure, blank broken piping, make safe damaged electrical cables and limit ingress of water through a damaged deck or superstructure<br>– outlines the measures to be taken when the inert-gas main and gas lines to a mast riser are fractured<br>– states that continuous watch should be kept on the damaged area and temporary repairs<br>– states that course and speed should be adjusted to minimize stresses and the shipping of water | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.3 | Maintain Safety and Security of Crew and Passengers and the Operational Condition of Safety Equipment | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | **Procedure for abandoning ship**<br>– states that a ship should only be abandoned when imminent danger of sinking, breaking up, fire or explosion exists or other circumstances make remaining on board impossible<br>– states that a distress call should be transmitted by all available means until acknowledged<br>– lists the information to include in the distress message<br>– describes other distress signals which may be used to attract attention<br>– describes the launching of boats and liferafts when the ship is listing heavily<br>– describes the launching of boats and liferafts in heavy weather conditions<br>– describes the use of oil to calm the sea surface and explains why fuel oil is not suitable | |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.4 | Develop Emergency and Control Plans | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>3.4.1 PREPARATION OF CONTINGENCY PLANS FOR RESPONSE TO EMERGENCIES<br>3.4.2 SHIP CONSTRUCTION, INCLUDING DAMAGE CONTROL<br>3.4.3 METHODS AND AIDS FOR FIRE PREVENTION, DETECTION AND EXTINCTION<br>3.4.4 FUNCTIONS AND USE OF LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCES | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.4 | Develop Emergency and Control Plans | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.4.1 PREPARATION OF CONTINGENCY PLANS FOR RESPONSE TO EMERGENCIES<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T3, T42, T43<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, V24, V25, V29<br>Required performance:<br>**1.1 Contingency plans for response to emergencies (9 hours)**<br>– draws up a muster list and emergency instructions for a given crew and type of ship<br>– assigns duties for the operation of remote controls such as:<br>– main engine stop<br>– ventilation stops<br>– lubricating and fuel oil transfer pump stops<br>– dump valves<br>– $CO_2$ discharge<br>– watertight doors<br>– and for the operation of essential services such as:<br>– emergency generator and switchboard<br>– emergency fire and bilge pumps<br>– describes options for the division of the crew, e.g., into a command team, an emergency team, a back-up emergency team and an engine-room emergency team<br>– explains the composition of the emergency teams in the above objective<br>– states that crew members not assigned to emergency teams would prepare survival craft, render first aid, assemble passengers and generally assist the emergency parties as directed<br>– designates muster positions for the command team, both at sea and in port<br>– designates muster positions for the emergency teams<br>– states that the engine-room emergency team would take control of engine-room emergencies and keep the command team informed<br>– states that good communications between the command team and the emergency teams are essential | | R1, R2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.4 | Develop Emergency and Control Plans | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – prepares contingency plans to deal with:<br>– fire and/or explosion in specific areas, such as galley, accommodation, container stows on or under deck, engine-room or cargo space, including coordination with shore facilities in port, taking account of the ship's fire-control plan<br>– rescue of victims from an enclosed space<br>– water ingress into the ship<br>– serious shift of cargo<br>– piracy attack<br>– being towed by another ship or tug<br>– heavy-weather damage, with particular reference to hatches, ventilators and the security of deck cargo<br>– rescue of survivors from another ship or from the sea<br>– leakages and spills of dangerous cargo stranding<br>– abandoning ship<br>– explains how drills and practices should be organized<br>– describes the role of a shipboard safety committee in contingency planning | |
| | **Actions to be taken when emergencies arise in port**<br>– describes actions to take in the event of fire on own ship, with particular reference to cooperation and communication with shore facilities<br>– describes action which should be taken when fire occurs on a nearby ship or an adjacent port facility<br>– describes the circumstances in which a ship should put to sea for reasons of safety<br>– describes the actions to be taken when own ship is dragging anchor towards dangers in port<br>– describes the actions which can be taken to avoid a ship dragging anchor towards own ship in an anchorage<br>– describes the actions and precautions to take when a submarine cable is lifted by the anchor<br>– describes how to buoy and slip an anchor<br>– describes how an anchor may be recovered when no power is available at the windlass | R1, R2 |
| | 3.4.2 SHIP CONSTRUCTION, INCLUDING DAMAGE CONTROL<br>**Textbooks:** T5<br>**Teaching aids:** A1<br>Required performance:<br>**2.1 Flooding of compartments (4 hours)**<br>– defines:<br>– margin line<br>– permeability of a space | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.4 | Develop Emergency and Control Plans | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains what is meant by 'floodable length'<br>– explains what is meant by 'permissible length of compartments' in passenger ships<br>– describes briefly the significance of the factor of subdivision<br>– states the assumed extent of damage used in assessing the stability of passenger ships in damaged condition<br>– summarizes, with reference to the factor of subdivision, the extent of damage which a passenger ship should withstand<br>– describes the provisions for dealing with asymmetrical flooding<br>– states the final conditions of the ship after assumed damage and, where applicable, equalization of flooding<br>– states that the Master is supplied with data necessary to maintain sufficient intact stability to withstand the critical damage<br>– explains the possible effects of sustaining damage when in a less favourable condition<br>– distinguishes between ships of Type 'A' and Type 'B' for the purposes of computation of freeboard<br>– describes the extent of damage which a Type 'A' ship of over 150 metres length should withstand<br>– explains that a Type 'A' ship of over 150 metres length is described as a 'one-compartment ship'<br>– describes the requirements for survivability of Type 'B' ships with reduced freeboard assigned<br>– summarizes the equilibrium conditions regarded as satisfactory after flooding<br>– states that damage to compartments may cause a ship to sink as a result of:<br>  – insufficient reserve buoyancy, leading to progressive flooding<br>  – progressive flooding due to excessive list or trim<br>  – capsizing due to loss of stability structural failure | R78 |
| | 3.4.3 METHODS AND AIDS FOR FIRE PREVENTION, DETECTION AND EXTINCTION<br>**Textbooks:**<br>**Teaching aids:**<br>Required performance:<br>**3.1 Methods and aids for fire-prevention, detection and extinction**<br>– See IMO model course 2.03 | |
| | 3.4.4 FUNCTIONS AND USE OF LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCES<br>**Textbooks:**<br>**Teaching aids:**<br>Required performance:<br>**4.1 Functions and use of life-saving appliances**<br>– See IMO model course 1.23 | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.5 | Use of Leadership and Managerial Skill | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOMES:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>3.5.1 SHIPBOARD PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT AND TRAINING<br>3.5.2 RELATED INTERNATIONAL CONVENTIONS RECOMMENDATIONS, AND NATIONAL LEGISLATION<br>3.5.3 APPLICATION OF TASK AND WORKLOAD MANAGEMENT<br>3.5.4 EFFECTIVE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT<br>3.5.5 DECISION-MAKING TECHNIQUES<br>3.5.6 DEVELOPMENT, IMPLEMENTATION AND OVERSIGHT OF STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.5 | Use of Leadership and Managerial Skill | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.5.1 PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT, ORGANIZATION AND TRAINING ON BOARD SHIP<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T37<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, B225 – B246, V159, V160, V161, V162, V163, V164, V165, V166<br>Required performance:<br>*Note that trainees should be familiar with the content and application of the operational level IMO model course 1.39, Leadership and teamwork. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of this content before undertaking this management level content* | | |
| **1.1 Shipboard personnel management (10 hours)** | | |
| **Principles of controlling subordinates and maintaining good relationships**<br>– identifies sources of authority and power<br>– discusses theories on how effective authority and power may be enhanced or diminished by management level officers on ships<br>– reviews theories in cultural awareness and cross cultural communication<br>– discusses strategies that management level officers could adopt to enhance their effectiveness in managing crews of different cultures<br>– reviews theories in human error, situational awareness, automation awareness, complacency and boredom<br>– discusses strategies that management level officers can adopt to optimize situational awareness and to minimize human error and complacency of individuals and teams<br>– reviews theories in leadership and teamwork<br>– discusses strategies that management level officers can adopt to enhance leadership and teamwork<br>– discusses theories of personnel motivation and relates these to shipboard situations encountered by management level officers<br>– explains that an individual's motivation and well being may be affected by both real and perceived influences on board ship and at home<br>– discusses strategies that management level officers could adopt to optimize the motivation of individuals and teams<br>– discusses theories on coaching individuals and teams to improve performance<br>– discusses approaches to managing and improving the performance of oneself, individuals and teams<br>– prepares for and conducts a simulated formal performance review<br>– identifies the impact of repeated harassment including bullying on individuals<br>– recognizes indications that crew members may be physically or mentally unwell or badly demotivated<br>– describes strategies that can be adopted when a crew member is believed to be physically or mentally unwell or badly demotivated<br>– describes strategies that management level officers can take to ensure that crew remain physically well and are encouraged to remain physically active | R1 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.5 | Use of Leadership and Managerial Skill | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| | – explains the need for management level officers to be fully familiar with the requirements of national law relating to crew employment and of all crew agreements in place on the ship<br>– discusses the process for signing on and discharging crew under national law<br>– discusses the need to ensure that new crew are appropriately certificated, competent and familiarized with the safety management system, security plan, working procedures and equipment of the ship<br>– explains that procedures for conducting investigations and applying consequences in disciplinary situations are governed by national law, codes of conduct, employment agreements and company procedures<br>– explains the process for investigating and applying consequences in disciplinary situations under relevant national law and procedures<br>– explains the formal process for addressing continuing levels of unacceptable performance by a crew member under national law<br>– explains the process for investigating and responding to incidents of harassment or bullying of crew members under national law<br>– explains requirements for handling crew wages, advances and allotments when this is done by management level officers on board ship | |
| **1.2** | **Training (6 hours)**<br>Training methods<br>– reviews training methods that could be adopted on-board ship<br>– discusses the effectiveness of training methods that can be adopted for training<br>  – in attitude<br>  – in skills<br>  – in knowledge<br>– describes the preparation needed before the start of a training session<br>– discusses methods for ensuring that crew are motivated to participate fully in training<br>– demonstrates how to conduct a training session for a given topic<br>– lists the areas in which training is required by regulation including the requirements of SOLAS<br>– identifies other topics where training might be desirable<br>– delivers a training session to other members of the class<br>– discusses the resources that may be available on board ship that can be used for training | R2 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.5 | Use of Leadership and Managerial Skill | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.5.2 | RELATED INTERNATIONAL CONVENTIONS RECOMMENDATIONS, AND NATIONAL LEGISLATION | STCW Code table A-II/2 |
| **Textbooks/Bibliography:** | | |
| **Teaching aids:** A1, V14, V15 | | |
| Required performance: | | |
| **2.1** | **Related international maritime conventions and national legislation (4 hours)** | R1 |
| | **ISM Code** | |
| | – explains the principles underlying the ISM Code | |
| | – describes the content and application of the ISM Code | |
| | **STCW Convention** | |
| | – explains the principles underlying the STCW Convention | |
| | – describes the content and application of the STCW Convention | |
| | – explains how to implement the regulations for ensuring fitness for duty | |
| | – states that seafarers new to a particular type of vessel require ship specific shipboard familiarization | |
| | – describes what shipboard familiarization may involve for watchkeeping officers | |
| | – describes what tasks or duties elementary basic safety familiarization involves for a watchkeeping officer | |
| | – describes how to organize shipboard training and how to maintain records | |
| | – states that penalties are prescribed for breaches of STCW Convention,1978, as amended requirements and that these are determined by the flag State | |
| | – states that national legislation is required to implement the provisions of an international convention | |
| | – states that for STCW Convention, 1978, as amended, national legislation is subject to scrutiny and checking by IMO appointed persons | |
| | – states national legislation may differ from one flag to another | Reg. I/14 |
| | **Maritime Labour Convention (MLC)** | |
| | – demonstrates a working knowledge of the Maritime Labour Convention provisions relating to the management of personnel on board ship, with particular reference to: | |
| | – engagement of crew | |
| | – employment conditions | |
| | – crew entitlements and repatriation | |
| | – medical requirements | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.5 | Use of Leadership and Managerial Skill | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.5.3 APPLICATION OF TASK AND WORKLOAD MANAGEMENT | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T27

**Teaching aids:** A1

Required performance:

**3.1 Task and workload management (8 hours)**

- reviews theories on applying task and workload management from IMO model course 1.39, Leadership and teamwork
- explains that the scope of activity and conflict between activities managed by management level officers is broader than for operational level officers and requires greater task and workload management ability
- plans the task and workload allocation for significant shipboard activities so that the following are considered:
  - human limitations
  - personal abilities
  - time and resource constraints
  - prioritization
  - workload, rest and fatigue
- discusses strategies to monitor the effectiveness of task and workload management during an activity and to adjust the plan as necessary
- discusses strategies to ensure that all personnel understand the activity to be undertaken and their tasks in this
- discusses whether the encouragement of a challenge and response environment is appropriate to the task and workload management of particular shipboard tasks
- discusses the importance of debriefs and reflection after activities have been conducted to identify opportunities for improving task and workload management



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.5 | Use of Leadership and Managerial Skill | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.5.4 EFFECTIVE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T27

**Teaching aids:** A1, V103, V104, V106, 107

Required performance

*Note that trainees should be familiar with the content and application of the operational level IMO model course 1.39, Leadership and teamwork in terms of resource management. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of this content before undertaking this management level content*

**4.1 Application of effective resource management at a management level (10 hours)**

- reviews theories on effective communication
- demonstrates effective communication in simulated or real situations involving communications on board ship and between ship and shore
- discusses how management level officers can encourage other personnel to use effective communications
- reviews theories on effective resource allocation, assignment and prioritization
- demonstrates the effective allocation, assignment and prioritization of resources when managing simulated or real shipboard activities
- reviews theories on decision making that considers team experience
- demonstrates the ability to involve team member effectively in decision making when managing simulated or real shipboard activities
- reviews theories on assertiveness and leadership
- discusses appropriate leadership styles and levels of assertiveness for management level officers in a range of shipboard activities
- demonstrates the ability to apply appropriate leadership styles and levels of assertiveness when managing simulated or real shipboard activities
- reviews theories on obtaining and maintaining situational awareness
- demonstrates the ability to obtain and maintain situational awareness when managing complex simulated or real shipboard activities
- reviews theories on the use of short and long term strategies
- demonstrates the ability to apply short and long term strategies when managing simulated or real shipboard activities



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.5 | Use of Leadership and Managerial Skill | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.5.5 DECISION-MAKING TECHNIQUES | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T27

**Teaching aids:** A1

Required performance:

*Note that trainees should be familiar with the content and application of the operational level IMO model course 1.39, Leadership and teamwork in terms of decision-making technique. This knowledge is considered so fundamental for much of the management level content within this course that there is merit in reviewing the operational level content quickly before covering the additional elements required at management level. The learning time has been reduced for many elements on the basis that trainees will be reviewing rather than learning much of this content at this level. It may be necessary for some trainees to refresh their knowledge of this content before undertaking this management level content*

**5.1 Situation and risk assessment (2 hours)**

- reviews theories of situation and risk assessment
- discusses formal and informal approaches to risk assessment
- identifies typical risks that management level officers may have to assess
- demonstrates the ability to effectively assess risk in the planning and conduct of simulated or real shipboard activities

**5.2 Identify and generate options (2 hours)**

- reviews theories on identifying and generating options
- demonstrates the ability to identify and generate options when making decisions as a management level officer in simulated or real shipboard activity

**5.3 Selecting course of action (2 hours)**

- reviews theories on selecting the course of action in making decisions
- demonstrates the ability to select appropriate courses of action when making decisions as a management level officer in simulated or real shipboard activity

**5.4 Evaluation of outcome effectiveness (1 hour)**

- explains how to carry out the evaluation of outcome effectiveness and the importance of doing it

3.5.6 DEVELOPMENT, IMPLEMENTATION AND OVERSIGHT OF STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES

**Textbooks/Bibliography:**

**Teaching aids:** A1

Required performance:

**6.1 Development, implementation and oversight of standard operating procedures (1 hour)**

- discusses approaches to developing standard operating procedures (SOPs)
- explains the methods to implement the SOPs
- explains why it may be desirable for there to be oversight and approval of many SOPs and explains the dangers associated with it



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.6 | Organize and Manage the Provision Of Medical Care on Board | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| **TRAINING OUTCOME:**<br><br>Demonstrates a knowledge and understanding of:<br>3.6.1 MEDICAL PUBLICATIONS<br>.1 International Medical Guide for Ships<br>.2 International Code of Signals (Medical Section)<br>.3 Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods | | STCW Code table A-II/2 |

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

| COMPETENCE 3.6 | Organize and Manage the Provision Of Medical Care on Board | IMO Reference |
|---|---|---|
| 3.6.1 USE AND CONTENT OF THE FOLLOWING PUBLICATIONS:<br>– INTERNATIONAL MEDICAL GUIDE FOR SHIPS<br>– MEDICAL SECTION OF INTERNATIONAL CODE OF SIGNALS<br>– MEDICAL FIRST AID GUIDE FOR USE IN ACCIDENTS INVOLVING DANGEROUS GOODS<br>**Textbooks/Bibliography:** T13, T26, T33<br>**Teaching aids:** A1, A2, V108<br>Required performance:<br>**1.1 International Medical Guide for Ships (0.5 hour)**<br>– describes the content and application of the above publication<br>– extracts and applies information for given situations<br>**1.2 International Code of Signals (Medical Section) (0.5 hour)**<br>– describes the content and application of the above publication<br>– constructs and interprets messages<br>**1.3 Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods (3 hours)**<br>– describes the content and application of the above publication<br>– extracts and applies information for given situations | | R32 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part D3: Instructor Manual

The following notes are intended to highlight the main objectives or training outcomes of each part of the function. The notes also contain some material on topics which are not adequately covered in the quoted references.

On completion of training for this function officers will have knowledge of the principal structural members of a ship and methods of construction. They will understand the theory of stability and trim and be able to use tables, diagrams and stress calculators to plan loading and ballasting so as to maintain satisfactory stability and trim (taking account of applicable IMO recommendations concerning intact stability) and to ensure that hull stresses remain within acceptable limits.

The effects of damage to, and the consequent flooding of, a compartment on the trim and stability of a ship and the counter-measures to be taken will be understood.

Officers will also be thoroughly conversant with the certificates required to be on board, their periods of validity and the procedures for their renewal.

The officers will also be aware of their legal obligations and responsibilities concerning international provisions for the safety of the ship, crew, passengers and cargo and for the prevention of pollution from the ship.

They will also be able to follow the correct procedures for all matters concerning the crew: their engagement and discharge, treatment of wages and deductions, discipline and dealing with disciplinary offences, the discharge of a sick seaman abroad, repatriation, deceased seamen and engagement of substitutes.

Officers will have sufficient knowledge of shipping documents related to cargo and the shipowner's liabilities and obligations in respect of charter parties and the carriage of cargo to enable them to protect the ship's interests.

Officers will be capable of organizing and managing the crew for the safe and efficient operation of the ship and be able to draw up an organization for dealing with emergencies. Officers will also know the requirements for training in the operation and maintenance of safety equipment and be able to implement that training on board.

On completion of training for this function officers will be able to use plans and tables or diagrams of stability and trim data to calculate the ship's initial stability, draughts and trim for any given disposition of cargo and other weights. They will also be able to determine whether stresses on the ship are within permitted limits by the use of stress data, calculating equipment or software. The fundamental actions to take in the event of partial loss of intact buoyancy will be understood.

Training concerned with fire prevention and firefighting is covered in IMO model course 2.03.

Training concerned with proficiency in medical care on board ship is covered in IMO model course 1.15.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Function 3: Controlling the Operation of the Ship and Care for Persons on Board at the Management Level

## 3.1 CONTROL TRIM, STABILITY AND STRESS

### 3.1.1 FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF SHIP CONSTRUCTION, TRIM AND STABILITY (102 hours)

**Shipbuilding materials (3 hours)**

It is not the intention that officers have knowledge of ship design practice or a detailed knowledge of materials. The focus of teaching should be so that they can explain why various kinds of steel are used in different areas of a ship and understand the advantages and disadvantages of alloys in common use, and how they are maintained.

High tensile steel (HTS) has a low corrosion margin and poor resistance to fatigue failures. However, due to a lighter weight of material, compared with mild steel, for the equivalent strength it has been widely used in ship construction.

Brittle fracture occurs when a normally elastic material fractures without any sign of deformation before failure. The structure may not even be highly stressed at the time. The fracture is often initiated at a small notch in a plate edge or at a small fault in a weld. The tendency to brittle fracture is much greater at low temperatures and there is a temperature, depending upon the particular properties of the steel, above which it will not occur. The classification societies specify the use of grade E steel, which has high notch ductility, for those parts of ships above a certain length where thick plates subject to high stresses are found.

**Welding (3 hours)**

If the training institute has an engineering department with welding facilities, the opportunity to use their expertise and equipment should be taken.

**Bulkheads (4 hours)**

The subdivision of passenger ships is dealt with in subject area 3.4.2.1, Ship Construction and Damage Control.

**Watertight and Weathertight Doors (3 hours)**

The provisions of SOLAS for drills and inspections of watertight doors and related damage control devices have been included with the details of construction and operation.

**Corrosion and its prevention (4 hours)**

Trainees should not be required to remember the galvanic series for seawater. It should be used for reference when dealing with corrosion cells and the suitability of metals as anodes for sacrificial anodes.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

Many paints contain poisonous substances and release toxic fumes as solvents evaporate. The vapours of most paint solvents will produce flammable or explosive mixtures with air in poorly ventilated spaces.

The risks are greatest when using spray equipment in enclosed spaces. Personnel must wear breathing apparatus, sources of ignition must be excluded and ventilation must be provided while work is in progress. Precautions for entering enclosed spaces should be taken after painting has been completed until the paint has thoroughly dried and no risk of release of vapour remains. Manufacturers' instructions regarding protective clothing and safety precautions should be followed.

**Surveys and dry-docking** **(2 hours)**

This section deals with the surveys and inspections required by classification societies. The requirements for survey under international conventions are dealt with in subject module 3.2, Maritime Law. The annual inspection required by the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, is usually carried out by a classification society surveyor, acting on behalf of the flag State Administration. The inspection is similar to that required for the classification society's annual survey.

The hardeners that are used in two-pack (or bi-pack) polyurethane and epoxy paints are toxic and may also cause allergic reactions following contact with skin. Protective clothing and disposable gloves should always be worn when working with these paints.

**Stability** **(83 hours)**

Calculations on box-shaped vessels have been introduced at a number of places in this syllabus. They are included to illustrate basic principles and to aid trainees' understanding of actual ships' data. The appendix to this instructor manual contains stability data and capacity tables for use in the preparation of exercises. Instructors should make a collection of data for other ships as the opportunity arises. The application of the principles of stability to determining the final draught, trim and initial GM for a given complete distribution of cargo is included in the function, Cargo Handling and Stowage.

**Approximate calculation of areas and volumes**

This section covers the use of the trapezoidal rule and Simpson's rules for the calculation of areas. The derivation of Simpson's rules and their use for finding moments or second moments of area has not been included. The calculation of volume where the given ordinates are areas is covered.

The use of Simpson's rules is required for finding areas under a GZ curve, for checking compliance with recommendations on intact stability. Trainees should also be able to apply them for calculating areas of decks and volumes of compartments aboard ship.

**Effects of density**

In tidal estuaries the density of the water may vary considerably according to the state of the tide. When checking draughts or freeboard near completion of loading it is essential to



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

check the density at the same time: using a density obtained earlier in the day could lead to appreciable error.

The term 'inertia' and the abbreviation 'I' are used in keeping with common practice. They may also appear in a ship's hydrostatic data. Strictly, it is the transverse second moment of area of the tank which is involved. Trainees should understand the concept of second moments of area but the method of determining them in general is not required. The formula for a rectangular surface should be known.

**Stability at moderate and large angles of heel**

The equation BM = I / V has been quoted partly to show that the BM is a function of the ship's dimensions and state of loading and partly to explain the typical behaviour of KM as the draught is increased from light ship conditions. Use is also made of the equation in the treatment of damage stability. The proof of the equation is not required.

GZ curves will normally be constructed from KN curves, but trainees should be able to correct a GZ curve when the value of KG differs from that used in drawing the curve, either by drawing a new curve or by superimposing the curve of $GG_1 \sin$ (angle of heel) on the GM should be used as an aid to constructing the curve at small angles should not be expected to deduce the GM from a given curve.

Figure 1 shows a ship with its centre of gravity, $G_1$, at a distance $GG_1$ horizontally from the centreline. When inclined to an angle $\theta$, the righting lever is $G_1Z_1$.

$$G_1Z_1 = GZ - GY$$
$$= GZ - GG_1 \cos \theta$$

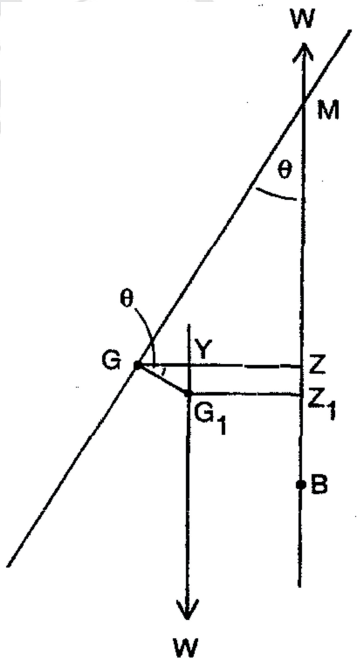



**Figure 1**



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The values of GZ derived from KN curves can be reduced to $GG_1 \cos \theta$ before plotting or the curve $GG_1 \cos \theta$ can be superimposed on the GZ curve, as shown in Figure 2.

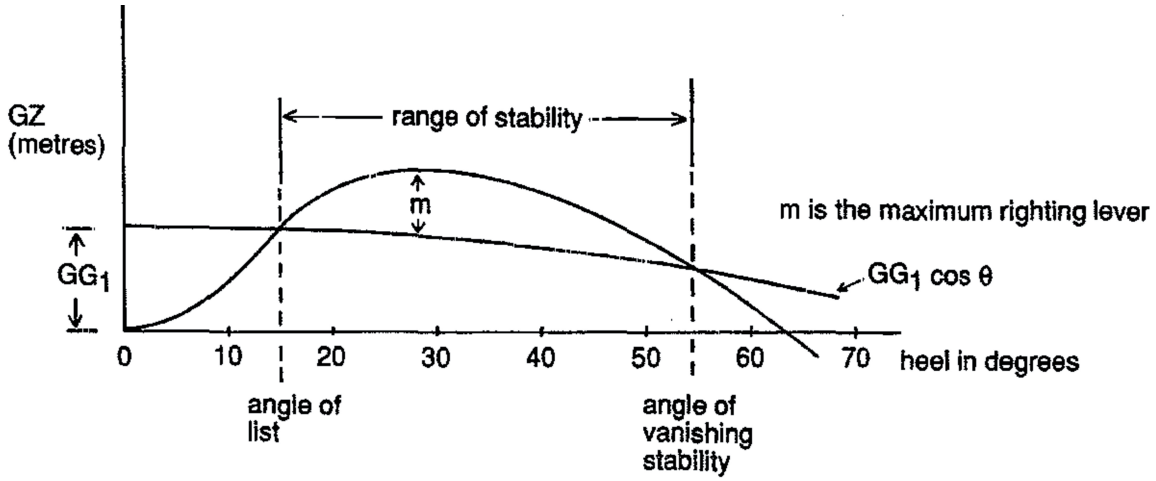



**Figure 2**

A list reduces the righting levers and the range of stability when heeled towards the listed side. When heeled in the opposite direction, righting levers are increased.

**Simplified stability data**

Simplified stability data were originally intended for use in small ships, but data in that form may also be found in some larger ships. Each of the several different presentations shows the ship's stability as adequate or inadequate to meet the recommended criteria for intact stability for passenger and cargo ships under 100 metres in length or, in the case of larger ships, the criteria laid down by the Administration.

Data necessary to maintain sufficient intact stability under service conditions to enable the ship to withstand the critical damage assumptions of SOLAS would be provided in passenger ships.

**Trim and list**

Trim calculations using moments about the centre of flotation or trimming tables were covered in IMO model course 7.03, Officer in charge of a navigational watch. These methods are suitable only in cases where the change in displacement is sufficiently small so that there are no large changes in the position of the centre of flotation or the value of MCT. When large changes in displacement are involved, as, for example, in planning the loading of a ship, the following method should be used.

Figure 3 shows a ship on an even keel with longitudinal centres of buoyancy and gravity indicated. The weight and buoyancy forces form a couple, called the trimming moment, equal to the product of the displacement and the horizontal separation between B and G, in this case acting to trim the ship by the stem. The ship will trim until the centre of buoyancy of the new underwater volume is in the same vertical line as G, which is fixed.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The trim is given by trimming moment/MCT 1cm where the MCT is taken for the displacement of the ship.

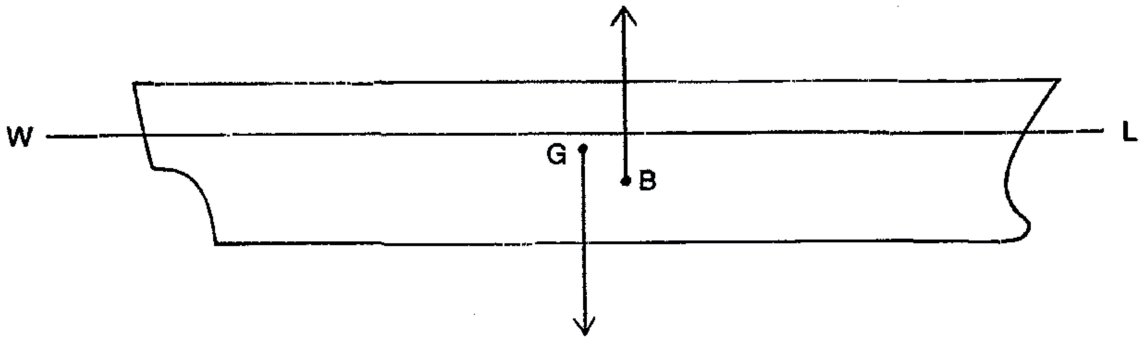



**Figure 3**

The position of the longitudinal centre of buoyancy (LCB), for an even-keel condition, depends upon the ship's draught and is given in the hydrostatic data as a distance, either from the after perpendicular or from amidships.

The position of the longitudinal centre of gravity is found by taking moments of mass, about the after perpendicular or about amidships, of the light ship and all of its contents. The LCG for the light ship is included in the hydrostatic data, LCGs of tanks and holds are given in the capacity plans or can be measured from the profile plan.

To find the draughts at each end, the trim is divided in the usual way, according to the proportionate distances of the perpendiculars from the centre of flotation, and applied to the ship's true mean draught.

When a ship is hogged or sagged there is a difference between the mean draught calculated from the draughts at the ends and the draught amidships. The difference is the amount of hog or sag. Taking the case of a ship with a sag, the draught amidships is greater than the mean draught. The ship's displacement lies between the values obtained for the two draughts and corresponds to some intermediate draught.

A weighted average of the mean draught and draught amidships is used. The commonly used values are:

corrected draught = ¾ x draught amidships + ¼ x mean draught;
or corrected draught = ⅔ x draught amidships + ⅓ x mean draught.

These amount to applying ¼, in the first case, or ⅓, in the other, of the hog or sag to the amidships draught.

A method known as the mean of mean of means is sometimes used. The mean of the forward and after draughts is found, the mean of that and the draught amidships is found and the mean of that with the draught amidships again gives the required draught. The result is the same as for the first equation above.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Nemoto's Formula**

When utmost accuracy is required, as in draught surveys for quantity loaded or discharged, a second correction for trim, using Nemoto's formula, may be applied to the displacement. It is usually only applied when the trim exceeds 1% of the ship's length.

$$\text{correction (tonnes)} = \frac{t^2 \times 50}{L} = \frac{dM}{dZ}$$

where: t is the trim in metres
L is the length between perpendiculars in metres
d is the mean draught

$$\frac{dM}{dZ} = \text{MCT 1cm at (d + 0.5)m} - \text{MCT 1cm at (d - 0.5)m}$$

The correction is always added to the displacement.

**Dynamical stability**

In calculating the area under a GZ curve to a given angle, using Simpson's rules, the interval between ordinates may be expressed in degrees.

The calculated area would be expressed in metre-degrees, which can be converted to metre-radians, if required, by dividing by 57.3. The dynamical stability is the area under the curve in metre-radians multiplied by the ship's displacement in tonnes. The result is expressed in metre-tonnes, the radians being omitted since they are dimensionless. Usually, it is areas under the GZ curve which are required for checking stability criteria which, depending upon the ship's data, may be expressed in metre-degrees or metre-radians.

The area under the GZ curve to a given angle represents not only the work done in heeling the ship to that angle but also the potential energy available to return the ship to the upright. By the principle of conservation of energy, the potential energy is converted into rotational energy as the ship moves towards the upright. When upright, all of the energy is in the form of rotational energy, so the ship continues to roll until an angle is reached where the area under the curve is equal to that rotational energy. The energy used in overcoming friction between hull and water and in creating turbulence reduces the angle to which the ship will roll.

The wind exerts a horizontal force on the above-water area of the ship and deck cargo which can be considered to act at the centre of the projected area. That force is resisted by the water acting on the underwater area on the other side, usually considered to act at about half the draught. The two forces form a couple inclining the ship until the righting moment is equal to the inclining couple. In the Recommendation on a Severe Wind and Rolling Criterion for the Intact Stability of Passenger and Cargo Ships of 24 metres in Length and Over, no allowance is made for a reduction in the projected lateral area or the vertical separation between the centres of areas, above and below the waterline, as the ship heels. The wind pressure used in the recommendation corresponds approximately to storm force 10 on the Beaufort scale.

List should always be removed before sailing and cargo should be adequately secured to prevent a shift producing a listed condition while on passage.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

### Approximate GM by means of rolling period tests

The method is described in The Intact Stability Code.

### Inclining test

The purpose of the inclining test is to determine the displacement and position of the ship's centre of gravity in an accurately known condition. It is usually carried out when the ship is as nearly complete as possible, small corrections being made for any components still to be fitted or shipyard stores aboard at the time to obtain values for the light ship condition.

The draughts and water density are carefully measured for use with the ship's lines plan to calculate the displacement, the height of the transverse metacentre above the base (KM) and the position of the longitudinal centre of buoyancy.

The test consists of moving weights across the deck under controlled conditions and measuring the resultant angle of list. The angles are deliberately kept small and are measured by long pendulums suspended down holds or engine-room skylights.

The mean value of GM calculated from the deflections is subtracted from the KM to give the vertical height of the centre of gravity. Since the centre of gravity and centre of buoyancy are in the same vertical line for a ship in equilibrium, the position of the LCG can be calculated from the previously determined LCB.

### Recommendations on intact stability for passenger and cargo ships under 100 metres in length

The recommendations are contained in R43. Instructors should refer to the stability requirements of the Administration for ships of 100 metres in length and over.

### Intact stability requirements for the carriage of grain

The SOLAS Convention deals with the carriage of grain. The intact stability requirements are laid down, and the loading information required for determining the stability. The method of calculating intact stability is illustrated.

### Rolling of ships

A mathematical treatment of rolling is not required. Trainees should know that the natural rolling period is inversely proportional to the square root of the GM. Rolling in a seaway is a forced oscillation, the period depending upon the period of encounter of the waves or swell as well as the natural rolling period; when the period of wave encounter equals the natural rolling period, synchronization occurs. Very heavy rolling can be induced by a moderate sea. An alteration of course or speed, or both, changes the encounter period of the sea and breaks the synchronization.

The equation in this objective produces a result in force units (kilonewtons in this case), hence the balancing heeling couple must be expressed in the same units in the equation in the objective relating to the righting moment equaling the heeling couple, by multiplying the usual mass moment by g, the acceleration due to gravity.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

In the unusual event of the centre of gravity falling below half draught the heel would be towards the turn.

**Dry-docking and grounding**

When dealing with stability during dry-docking, it is simplest to consider the righting moment when heeled by taking moments about the centre of buoyancy, which produces the equation:

$$\text{righting moment} = \Delta \times GM \sin\theta - P \times KM \sin\theta$$

directly.

The righting level GZ, is given by the equation:

$$GZ = \left(GM - \frac{P \times KM}{\Delta}\right) \sin\theta,$$

which is the righting lever for the ship with its GM reduced by $\frac{P \times KM}{\Delta}$

By making use of KM = KG ÷ GM, the alternative expression for righting lever can be obtained.

This approach has the advantage of showing that, although different values of GM are obtained, the value of the righting moment is the same in each case. The value of P for which

GM — 0 is also the same for both expressions.

The stability of a ship grounded at a point on the centreline is treated in exactly the same way as the dry-docking problem. A ship grounded forward, say, on a falling tide, would experience a reducing righting lever and the point could be reached at which it became zero. Providing the ship did not touch bottom elsewhere, it would flop over to an angle of loll or possibly capsize.

When grounded at a point off the centreline, a heeling moment is also produced. Considering the case where only heeling moment is involved, at the point of capsize the upthrust from the bottom becomes zero, therefore the ship would not capsize until heeled to its angle of vanishing stability when afloat. In most circumstances, cargo would have shifted, water entered through non-watertight openings or the ship would have slid off before reaching that angle. When the grounding force causes trim as well as heel the angle of vanishing stability may be much smaller.

It should be recalled that buoyancy is provided by the vertical component of water pressure on the ship's hull. When a ship is grounded on firm sand or a bottom of similar nature, water is unable to exert any pressure on the grounded portion and there is a loss of buoyancy compensated by an increased upthrust from the ground. If a ship is grounded over the whole of its bottom there is a large loss of buoyancy for any drop in water level, however small. Stability is not a problem in that circumstance but the fact that nearly all the weight of the ship is supported by the ground must be considered when deciding how to refloat her.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

### 3.1.2 EFFECT ON TRIM AND STABILITY IN THE EVENT OF DAMAGE AND STABILITY (11 hours)

The methods of calculating transverse stability, list and trim in a damaged condition are based upon the principles used in the textbook T4 but the problem has been approached in a way more applicable to the use of a ship's hydrostatic data, although still confined to compartments with roughly rectangular waterplanes.

**Flooding of compartments**

The requirements for the watertight subdivision of passenger ships are set out in SOLAS. Depending upon the type of service and its size, the ship will be required to withstand the flooding of one, two or three adjacent main compartments.

The International Convention on Load Lines, lays down requirements for the survivability of ships of type 'A', if over 150 metres in length, and for ships of type 'B' which are over 100 metres in length and are assigned freeboards less than the tabular freeboards for type 'B' ships.

Classification society rules stipulate the minimum number of bulkheads to be fitted in dry cargo ships, depending upon length, but do not specify that they should be fitted in such a way that the ship could withstand flooding of a main compartment.

Amendments to the SOLAS Convention provide regulations governing the subdivision and damage stability of cargo ships. They apply to ships over 100 metres in length intended primarily for the carriage of dry cargoes, but exclude those ships already covered by other damage stability regulations in IMO instruments.

The regulations are based on consideration of the probability of the location and extent of damage and the probability of survival after damage. The probabilities of survival conditional upon each possible damage configuration for compartments, singly or in adjacent groups, are summed for the summer draught and for a draught intermediate between light and loaded. The average of the two sums gives a value known as the "attained subdivision index, A" which must not be less than the "required subdivision index, R", which is a function of the length.

**Effect of flooding on transverse stability**

When a space is flooded without free communication with the sea, the stability can be calculated by taking account of the mass of water and the free surface effect. Examples would be the accumulation of water in tween-decks as a result of firefighting, or flooding through a crack in the hull or through a fractured pipe. The ship's hydrostatic data for the increased displacement are applicable for the calculations.

If a compartment is holed so that water can flow freely in and out of it, that compartment can be considered as part of the sea and no longer part of the ship. The buoyancy of the space up to the water level before damage is lost and the waterplane area of the ship is reduced by the waterplane area of the damaged compartment. These changes give rise to changes



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

in the hydrostatic data needed to calculate the transverse stability and trim. The mass of the ship and its centre of gravity remain unaltered. Such a treatment is known as the 'lost buoyancy method' and is the one used in this course and in the textbook T4.

The lost buoyancy, expressed in tonnes, is the mass of water which could enter the space up to the original waterplane, i.e. the volume x permeability x density of water in which the ship is floating.

The lost waterplane area is the area of the bilged compartment at the original waterplane. If the compartment is completely contained below the waterline, e.g. a double-bottom tank, there is no loss of waterplane area provided the tank top remains intact. The original waterplane area may be given in the ship's data or it can be calculated from

$$\text{waterplane area} = \frac{100 \times \text{TPC}}{1.025}$$

Of the two corrections in this objective, the first is the second moment of lost waterplane area about its own centroid, the second a correction to give the loss about the new centroid of the intact waterplane. In the case of symmetrical flooding, the second correction is zero. For wing compartments, the second correction is very much greater than the first, even for compartments extending half the breadth of the ship.

Generally, the displacement of the ship and the position of the centre of gravity will remain unchanged after bilging. However, if a tank containing a liquid is bilged, the weight of the tank contents is lost, causing a reduction in displacement and a shift in the position of the ship's centre of gravity. The lost buoyancy would be comparable with the lost weight, causing a similar shift in the centre of buoyancy with the result that there would be little change of draught, trim or list. The loss of waterplane area would result in a reduction of GM.

**Permeability**

The permeability of a space is the percentage or fraction of the space which could be occupied by water. The lost buoyancy equals the permeability x the volume. If a cargo was stowed solidly, with no space for water in infiltrate, it would occupy

$$\frac{1}{\textit{density}}\ m^3/t$$

The space occupied in the hold by one tonne is its stowage factor, so the space available to water = stowage factor – $\frac{1}{\textit{density}}\ m^3/t$

The proportion of the stow which could be occupied by water, i.e. the permeability, equals

$$\frac{\text{stowage factor} - \frac{1}{\textit{density}}}{\text{stowage factor}}$$



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

For example, a cargo has a stowage factor of 1.2 $m^3/t$ and a density of 2.5 $t/m^3$

$$\frac{1}{density} = \frac{1}{2.5} = 0.4 m^3/t$$

$$permeability = \frac{1.2\text{-}0.4}{1.2} = \frac{0.8}{1.2} = 0.67$$

Notice, if a cargo has a permeability of 0.4 but only occupies half of the compartment, the permeability of the whole compartment is 0.4 x 0.5 + 0.5 = 0.7.

The loss of waterplane area is taken to be permeability x waterplane area of the compartment, but if the water level is above the top of the cargo the whole area is lost.

**Angle of heel**

Buoyancy is lost at the damaged compartment and an equal amount of buoyancy is gained at the position of the new centre of flotation. The transverse shift in the ship's centre of buoyancy is, therefore, lost buoyancy x transverse distance from centre of flotation divided by the displacement. On the assumption that the centre of gravity is still on the centreline, the shift in buoyancy is the heeling arm.

The angle of heel would be given by the intersection of the GZ curve for the damaged ship with the heeling-arm curve $BB_1 \cos \theta$. Since KN curves for the damaged condition are not available, the GZ curve has to be constructed, using values for the intact ship at a displacement corresponding to the damaged draught and a KG chosen to give the modified value of GM. The angle of heel read from the curve will be approximate. If the angle is small it can be calculated from, $\tan \theta = BB_1 / GM$

**Effect of flooding on trim** **(9 hours)**

Similar calculations are necessary to find the longitudinal position of the centre of flotation after damage, and the reduction of BML. The change in GML is used to calculate the change in MCT 1cm.

Buoyancy has been lost at the damaged compartment and replaced at the centre of flotation, hence the trimming moment is the product of lost buoyancy and the distance from the centre of the damaged compartment to the new centre of flotation. The change of trim and the draught at each end are then calculated in the usual way.

Flooding of a compartment near an end of the ship causes a large shift in the centre of flotation away from the damaged end and a large reduction in MCT 1cm. Combined with the sinkage due to lost buoyancy, this may produce a large increase in draught at the damaged end. The original trim of the ship will influence the chances of the ship surviving the damage.

A ship already trimmed towards the damaged end is more vulnerable than one on an even keel or trimmed the other way.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Measures to improve stability or trim when damaged**

The immediate action should be to restrict the flooding and, if possible, to stop it. In the event of collision or stranding damage, it will not be possible to stop the flooding or reduce it significantly by the use of pumps. Even a comparatively small hole below the waterline admits water at a much higher rate than the capacity of bilge or ballast pumps. All watertight doors, valves, dampers in ventilation shafts and access hatches should be closed to prevent flooding progressing to other compartments. Where cross-flooding arrangements are required, they should be put into operation at once to restrict the resulting list.

In passenger ships, the guidance in the damage control booklet should be followed. The same applies to cargo ships where damage control information is provided.

In nearly all cases, damage will result in sinkage, list and trim, loss of stability and loss of longitudinal strength. Corrective action for one condition will affect the others.

Excessive list or trim should be corrected by moving weights, fuel, water or liquid cargoes, when possible. If ballast is added, it increases the sinkage. In some cases it may be possible to pump out ballast to improve list or trim and lighten the ship at the same time. If the ballast is taken from double-bottom tanks, however, the stability will be further reduced.

Stability may be improved by transferring fuel from wing or cross bunker tanks to double bottoms if suitable tanks are empty. Efforts should be made to reduce free surface to a minimum. Water accumulating in upper decks as a result of firefighting should be drained to the lowest level possible if means of pumping it out of the ship cannot be arranged.

After collision or stranding damage, particularly near the middle length of the ship, the longitudinal strength will be impaired and account should be taken of that when deciding on the transfer or addition of weights.

Cases have occurred where a slow leakage of water has been absorbed by a cargo, such as grain, with no water reaching the drain wells. The added weight, high on one side of the hold, has led to a steadily increasing list and eventual capsizing. As the source of the leakage was inaccessible, nothing could be done. Cargo spaces should be thoroughly inspected whenever they are empty for signs of leakage, indicating cracks or damage to overside discharge valve covers.

### 3.1.3 KNOWLEDGE OF IMO RECOMMENDATIONS CONCERNING SHIP STABILITY (2 hours)

Instructors should refer to the IMO publications referenced in the detailed teaching syllabus.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 3.2 MONITOR AND CONTROL COMPLIANCE WITH LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS AND MEASURES TO ENSURE SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA AND THE PROTECTION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT

### 3.2.1 INTERNATIONAL MARITIME LAW EMBODIED IN INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS AND CONVENTIONS (52 hours)

This area covers those international conventions, regulations and recommendations which directly affect the master in carrying out his obligations and responsibilities.

Those parts of the Geneva Conventions on Law of the Sea of 1958 and the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982, which are relevant to the conduct of a voyage have already been covered at the operational level, however, in order to reinforce previously covered topics, some points have been mentioned in the detailed teaching syllabus, for the instructor. Some brief revision may be necessary with an emphasis placed on the master's legal obligations concerning the requirements for certificates and other documentation, the survey requirements, the provision for inspections by the master or an officer delegated by him, the maintenance of equipment and the records that are required to be kept.

The technical details, where appropriate, are mainly dealt with under other relevant subjects. The International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea are covered entirely in the function Navigation.

We also deal with the necessary basic knowledge of law concerning carriage of cargo and marine insurance. Those subjects, together with a few others, are supplementary to the STCW 2010 requirements and are indicated as such below and in the Detailed Teaching Syllabus in Part C with an asterisk, *.

Instructors should note that the following areas are covered in the training at the operational level. Some areas are covered again with emphasis on the master's responsibilities.

1. An introduction to Maritime Law

2. Law of the Sea
    - 2.1 Conventions on the law of the sea
    - 2.2 Territorial sea and the contiguous zone
    - 2.3 International straits
    - 2.4 Exclusive economic zone and the continental shelf
    - 2.5 High seas
    - 2.6 Protection and preservation of the marine environment



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

3. Safety

3.1 International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as amended

3.2 International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended (SOLAS) — General Provisions

3.3 SOLAS — Subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations

3.4 SOLAS — Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction

3.5 SOLAS — Life-saving appliances and arrangements

3.6 SOLAS — Radiotelegraphy and radiotelephony

3.7 SOLAS — Radio communications (amended Chapter IV)

3.8 SOLAS — Safety of navigation

3.9 SOLAS — Carriage of grain

3.10 SOLAS — Carriage of dangerous goods

3.11 International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978, as amended

3.12 ITU Radio Regulations

4. Passengers

4.1 Special Trade Passenger Ships Agreement and Rules, 1971

4.2 Protocol and Rules on Space Requirements for Special Trade Passenger Ships, 1973

4.3 Athens Convention relating ft the Carriage of Passengers and their Luggage by Sea, 1974

## 1.1 Certificates and other documents required to be carried on-board ships by international conventions and agreements (1 hour)

The master must be familiar with all the certificates and other documents required by the vessel and by the crew. These will be subject to inspection by both the flag State and by port State control officers. Documents found not to be in order can cause delays on detentions to the voyage.

Relatively new requirements include the Safety Management Certificate denoting that the company and its shipboard management operate in accordance with the approved safety management system. A copy of the Document of compliance shall also be kept on board the ship in order that the master can produce it for verification.

A complete list of certificates and documents, with reference to which convention it is required, is provided in the detailed teaching syllabus.

The requirements for their issue and renewal are dealt with under the appropriate conventions, except for those mentioned below.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

A certificate of nationality, often called the ship's register, is required by the Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958, and by the UNCLOS, 1982. The form of certificate and the conditions for its issue are determined by each national government. In some cases it remains valid until the ship is scrapped or changes ownership or nationality, in others it is subject to regular renewal.

The Panama and Suez Canal Tonnage Certificates are included for completeness; they are not required by international conventions. Any ship wishing to traverse either canal must be measured and obtain the appropriate certificate before doing so. In general, they remain valid until alterations to the ship's structure or in the use of spaces are made.

**Tonnage**

The International Tonnage Certificate remains valid until alterations in construction or the use of spaces are made, the subdivision load line is changed or the ship is transferred to the flag of another State.

The licence for the ship radio station is required by the radio regulations of the ITU. The form of the licence is determined by the national government which issues it.

There are no international agreements requiring a ship to be classed by a classification society, but practically all ships are. Loss of class would be an indication to a port State control officer that a thorough inspection of the ship should be made. Maintenance of class is a condition for the continuance of insurance in many cases.

The form of the official logbook, the entries made in it and its eventual disposal are decided by each Administration.

The documents listed as the minimum additional documents required at arrival or departure are those mentioned in the Convention on Facilitation of international traffic, the International Health Regulations and the dangerous goods manifest required by SOLAS.

## 1.2 Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention on Load Lines (1 hour)

Instructors should note that the Load Lines Protocol of 1988 entered into force in February 2000. The 1988 Protocol has been modified by the 2003 Amendments which were adopted by MSC.143(77) in June 2003 and entered into force in January 2005.

## 1.3 Responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (2 hours)

Of all the international conventions dealing with maritime safety the most important is the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, better known as SOLAS which covers a wide range of measures designed to improve the safety of shipping.

The convention is also one of the oldest of its kind: the first version was adopted in 1914 following the sinking of the SS Titanic with the loss of more than 1,500 lives. Since then there have been four more versions of SOLAS. The present version was adopted in 1974 and



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

entered into force in 1980. Some recent additions are covered in the 1996 Amendments in R2.

Reference should be made to the International Safety Management (ISM) Code in Chapter IX, which sets out the master's responsibility with regard to safety and environmental protection.

### 1.4 Responsibilities under the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, and the Protocol of 1978 Relating thereto (MARPOL 73/78) (3 hours)

Relatively new additions to maritime law should be noted including MARPOL 73/78 Annex 1, regulation 26 that requires every oil tanker of l50gt and above and every ship other than a tanker of 400gt and above to have a shipboard oil pollution emergency plan (a SOPEP), and amendments to MARPOL Annex V that require garbage management plans to be in place.

Under Annex IV ships are not permitted to discharge sewage within a specified distance of the nearest land, unless they have in operation an approved treatment plant. Between 4 and 12 miles from land, sewage must be comminuted and disinfected before discharge.

Annex VI entered into force on 19 May 2005. It sets limits on sulphur oxide and nitrogen oxide emissions from ship exhausts and prohibits deliberate emissions of ozone-depleting substances. The instructors should use the topics included in the detailed teaching syllabus, in order to prepare the lesson. The local regulations which may be more stringent than as laid down by Annex VI, pertaining to SECA and ECA, should be pointed out to the trainees.

**Pollution**

Tanker officers who have had responsibility for loading, discharging and handling cargo will have completed an approved specialized training programme. This includes instruction in pollution prevention relevant to tankers, V2, V79.

Examples of checklists can be found in the references. More extensive checklists are used at many oil installations and include, amongst other things, a list of equipment on board and ashore, whether it is fully operational or not, the communications to be used and emergency procedures. The completed checklists are signed by the responsible persons from the ship and the installation when it is agreed to start the operation.

It is recommended that, whenever possible, disposal of garbage should be made to port facilities. Disposal at sea is strictly regulated by the provisions of the appropriate legislation. Records of waste and garbage disposed of at sea must be kept. These records are subject to inspection and checking by port State control officers.

The annexes to the Convention contain the applicable technical regulations. These are:

Annex I — Oil

Annex II — Noxious liquid substances in bulk

Annex III — Harmful substances carried by sea in packaged forms

Annex IV — Pollution by sewage from ships



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

Annex V — Pollution by garbage from ships

Annex VI — Air pollution from ships and NOx technical code

### 1.5 Maritime declarations of health and the requirements of the International Health Regulations (4 hours)

Arrival Documents and Procedures: these are all very practical requirements that have to be followed.

Officers should be aware that many States will require forms and declarations in addition to those mentioned in the FAL and in the International Health Regulations. The ship's agents should be consulted for the current requirements at any port.

Noting and extending protests: the need to note or extend protests varies from country to country. In many countries it is essential to do so to protect the interests of the ship. For example, failure to do so could debar the master from collecting general average contributions from the cargo. The owner's agent should be able to advise the master regarding the procedure and the number of crew members required as witnesses, if any. Letter of protest is also included in the detailed teaching syllabus, and should be explained to the trainees.

### 1.6 Responsibilities under other international maritime law embodied in international agreements and conventions that impact on the role of management level deck officers (35 hours)

There are a large number of international agreements and practices that impact on the legal and commercial elements of the role of a master or chief mate. It is important that trainees are familiar with the practical implications of the critical parts of these agreements and that they have the ability to be able to find, extract and understand detail from these agreements. Requirement for trainees to learn detail that in practice would normally be obtained from reference documents should be avoided.

**Maritime Labour Convention, 2006**

The MLC was adopted on 23 February 2006 at International Labour Organization, Geneva, Switzerland but at the time of writing this book, is still awaiting full ratification. Ratification has now been achieved and the convention is about to come into force. MLC is the result of a joint resolution in 2001 by the international seafarers' and shipowners' organizations, later supported by governments.

The Maritime Labour Convention, 2006 aims to establish a continuous "compliance awareness" at every stage, from the national systems of protection up to the international system starting with individual seafarers.

It sets out their rights to decent conditions of work and helps to create conditions of fair competition for shipowners. It is intended to be globally applicable, easily understandable, readily updatable and uniformly enforced. The MLC will be another pillar of the international regulatory regime for quality shipping, complementing the key Conventions of the IMO.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The rather large number of the existing maritime Conventions, many of which are not even ratified by several governments, some totally out of date and not in line with present day situations make it difficult for governments to ratify or enforce them.

MLC is a comprehensive set of global standards, based on 68 existing maritime labour instruments (Conventions and Recommendations), adopted by the ILO since 1920. MLC brings almost all these requirements together incorporating present day conditions and language.

Conventions addressing the seafarers' identity documents which were recently revised in 2003 (Nos. 108 and 185) are not incorporated in the MLC. The Seafarers' Pension Convention, 1946 (No. 71) and one Convention (The Minimum Age [Trimmers and Stokers] Convention, 1921 {No. 15}), which is no longer relevant to the sector, are also not included in the MLC.

MLC should help eliminate substandard ships and it would work within the well-established international system for enforcement of the international standards for ship safety, security and environmental protection that have been adopted by the IMO, in other words fall under PSC inspection systems.

Existing ILO Maritime Labour Conventions will be gradually phased out as ILO Member States that had ratified those Conventions ratify the MLC, but there will be a transitional period when some parallel Conventions will remain in force. Countries that ratify the MLC will no longer be bound by the existing Conventions when MLC enters into force since it incorporates the requirements of all these old conventions. Countries that do not ratify MLC will remain bound by the existing Conventions they have ratified, but these will be closed to any further revisions.

Ships flying the flags of countries that do not exercise effective jurisdiction and control will have no choice but to observe the minimum criteria enshrined in the MLC and prevent seafarers from having to work under unacceptable conditions, to the detriment of their well-being, health and safety and the safety of the ships on which they work.

MLC is designed on the principle of being "firm on rights and flexible on implementation". This is in line with the Constitution of the ILO and most ILO instruments that seek to take account of national circumstances and provide for some flexibility in their application. The ILO view is to gradually improve protection of workers by taking into account the specific situation in some sectors and the diversity of national circumstances. ILO addresses flexibility on the principles of tripartism, transparency and accountability. When a government exercises flexibility it usually involves consultation with the workers' and employers' organizations concerned, with any determinations that are made reported to the ILO.

Ships of 500 gross tonnage and above, engaged in international voyages or voyages between foreign ports, will be required to carry a 'Maritime Labour Certificate' (MLC) and a 'Declaration of Maritime Labour Compliance' (DMLC) on board. However, most other vessels will also be subject to inspections under MLC; this will get clear on studying the requirements of MLC in detail.

MLC also incorporates the "no more favourable treatment" concept similar to that adopted in the IMO conventions. That is, ships of all countries (irrespective of ratification) will be subject



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

to inspection in any country that has ratified the Convention, and to possible detention if they do not meet the minimum standards of the new Convention.

In covering the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, and recommendations, the relevant national laws and regulations or collective bargaining agreements, where applicable, should be dealt with. The administrative procedures involved, e.g. the correct procedures for signing off a sick seaman abroad, the disposal of a deserter's wages and effects or the engagement of replacements abroad and similar procedural matters, should be included in detail. Reference should also be made to arrangements to safeguard the shipmaster in the proper discharge of his responsibilities in regard to maritime safety and protection of the marine environment.

The International Medical Guide for Ships, 3rd edition upholds a key principle of the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006: to ensure that seafarers are given health protection and medical care no less favourable than that which is generally available to workers ashore, including prompt access to the necessary medicines, medical equipment and facilities for diagnosis and treatment and to medical information and expertise. By ensuring that this guide is carried on board ships entitled to fly their flags, and following its instructions, countries can fulfil their obligations under the terms of the Maritime Labour Convention, 2006, and ensure the best possible health outcomes for their seafaring population. The Guide was prepared jointly by ILO and WHO.

**Collision**

The Master's responsibilities under the Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, are fully covered in the function, Navigation at the Management Level

**Assistance and salvage**

At the request of IMO, the CMI drew up a new draft convention on salvage at Montreal in 1981 to update and revise the 1910 convention. The main new features relate to damage to the environment.

Masters and shipowners would have a duty to arrange salvage assistance and to cooperate with the salvors to prevent or minimize damage to the environment.

The draft Convention also made provision for special compensation to a salvor in cases where the salvor has carried out salvage operations in respect of a ship or cargo which threatened the environment but has failed to earn a reward for physical salvage. The International Convention on Salvage, 1989, was adopted by a diplomatic conference in March 1989 and entered into force on 14 July 1996.

Lloyd's Standard Form of Salvage Agreement (LOF) is widely used throughout the world. LOF 2000 superseded LOF 95 and where a salvor offers services on LOF 95 or some other terms, the Master of the vessel in difficulties should attempt to get agreement to LOF 2000. This takes account of the main changes included in the 1989 Salvage Convention and incorporates certain of the Convention Articles, including Article 14, which makes provision for the award of special compensation in cases where the salvor, by his salvage operations, has prevented or minimized damage to the environment. Personal effects of Master, crew and passengers including any car accompanying a passenger are excluded from reward



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

for salvage as per the LOF 2000. The currency of award as per the LOF 2000 is USA $. The instructor should point out to the trainees that, as compared to the old LOF 1995, the duty to cooperate as per the new LOF 2000 is extended to provide information about nature of cargo, plans, stability data etc. As per LOF 2000, the salvors have right to terminate when "no longer any reasonable prospects of useful result". In the LOF 2000, SCOPIC clause is introduced as an alternative to Art 14 set out in the convention. As per LOF 2000, the Master is authorized to sign on behalf of cargo. LOF 2000 defines the conditions under which a casualty is in a safe condition for redelivery to the owner (which can be of crucial importance in the closing stages of a salvage operation). Since a large proportion of the world's salvage is undertaken under the LOF, the use of LOF 2000 will give effect to the main provisions of the 1989 Salvage Convention, see Appendix.

Special Compensation P and I Club (SCOPIC) Clause, has been added in the detailed teaching syllabus, which is supplementary to any Lloyd's Form Salvage Agreement "No Cure – No Pay" ("Main Agreement") which incorporates the provisions of Article 14 of the International Convention on Salvage 1989 ("Article 14").

The instructors should point out to the trainees that as per SCOPIC the Contractor has the option to invoke by written notice to the owners of the vessel the SCOPIC clause at any time of his choosing regardless of the circumstances and, in particular, regardless of whether or not there is a "threat of damage to the environment". A non-binding code of practice has been agreed between the International Salvage Union (ISU) and the International Group of Clubs.

**Proceedings in the event of a collision**

Instructors should explain that in the event of a collision or of any other incident of navigation concerning a ship on the high seas involving the penal or disciplinary responsibility of the Master or of any other person in the service of the ship, no penal or disciplinary proceedings may be instituted against such persons except before the judicial or the administrative authorities either of the flag State or of the State of which such a person is a national.

**Need to render assistance**

Also that every State must require the Master of a ship sailing under its flag, in so far as he can do so without serious danger to the ship, the crew or the passengers, to render assistance to any person found at sea in danger of being lost, to proceed with all possible speed to the rescue of persons in distress if informed of their need of assistance, in so far as such action may be reasonably expected of him, and, after a collision, to render assistance to the other ship, her crew and her passengers and, where possible, to inform the other ship of the name of his own ship, her port of registry and the nearest port at which she will call.

**Submarine cables**

In the event that a ship breaks or injures a submarine cable so as to interrupt or obstruct telegraphic or telephonic communications, or similarly breaks or injures submarine pipeline or high-voltage power cable it must be understood that this is, except for the purpose of saving lives or ships, a punishable offence.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

However, owners of ships who can prove that they have sacrificed an anchor, a net or any other fishing gear in order to avoid injuring a submarine cable or pipeline should be indemnified by the owner of the cable or pipeline, provided that the owner has taken all reasonable precautionary measures beforehand.

**Convention on Limitation of Liability for Maritime Claims, 1976 (LLMC 1976)**

The LLMC Convention sets global limits to liability. For example, the limit in respect of death or injury of passengers in Article 7 is the global limit for all claims. Each individual claim is subject to the limitation in the Athens Convention.

**Classification societies**

Classification societies are independent, normally non-commercial organizations. They were originally established to designate minimum standards on which underwriters could rely before insuring a vessel but have, over the years of their existence, developed into standard-setting institutions for every section of the shipping community. Through their rules for construction and a regime of periodical surveys they are in a position to enhance ship construction and operation. They supervise all stages of the construction or major repairs of a ship, even to the extent of ensuring that the right materials are used. A ship so constructed is assigned a class in accordance with some code.

In order to retain its class, the vessel must be presented for survey at periodical intervals as specified in the rules. Failure to meet these terms or to comply with recommendations issued may result in the suspension or cancellation of its class.

Although it is not a legal requirement to be classed, practically all ships are. It is usually a condition for marine insurance or a maritime mortgage that the ship is classed and is maintained so as to retain her class.

The large classification societies have surveyors stationed at the major ports round the world who, in addition to classification work, carry out statutory surveys required by international conventions under authority delegated to them by national maritime Administrations.

**Cargo**

A brief description of the use of documentary credit has been included to show how the bill of lading is involved as security for the sale of goods and how important it is that the description of the goods shown in the bill of lading is correct. Trainees should have a working knowledge of carriage of goods conventions so far as these impact on the ship. This content can be found in numerous texts on maritime law or ship's business, only some of which are stated in the resources for this course.

Few management level officers will not at some stage operate under a charter agreement. A working knowledge of the key implications for the ship as a result of charter parties under voyage, time and demise charters is important. Again, this content will be found in any of numerous texts on chartering practice or maritime law in the shipping industry.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**General average and marine insurance**

The role of the York-Antwerp Rules in the adjustment of general average is covered in the Marine Claims Handbook, see below. The rules are also included.

Non-disclosure does not include circumstances which the shipowner could not know about. However, it has been held that non-disclosure of circumstances which should have been known but were not, possibly due to the Master's failure to keep the owner informed, would be grounds for the insurer to avoid the insurance contract.

The "duty of assured" clause is intended to encourage the assured to take all reasonable measures to avert or minimize the damage or loss which will form a claim on the policy. Claims under this clause are treated separately from others and are payable in addition to other claims, even in the event of total loss. It is said that the assured should behave as if uninsured.

Stowaways, Ship's Agents and Agency, Port State control, Port of refuge and the Master/pilot relationship are also included in the detailed teaching syllabus. Instructors should refer to these, which will assist them in preparing their lessons.

## 1.7 Responsibilities under international instruments affecting the safety of the ship, passengers, crew and cargo (4 hours)

Ballast Water Convention 2004 has been added in the detailed teaching syllabus, all 5 sections should be explained to the trainees. Ballast water exchange must be conducted in accordance with the ship's ballast water management plan, taking into account the recommendations adopted by the IMO.

A new paragraph, 4, has been added with effect from July 1, 2010 to SOLAS chapter V, regulation 22 – Navigation bridge visibility, some changes are operational and others introduce new requirements applicable to navigation records.

The instructors should emphasize that as a consequence of this amendment, any increase in blind sectors or reduction in horizontal fields of vision resulting from ballast water exchange operations is to be taken into account by the Master before determining that it is safe to proceed with the exchange.

The instructor should also point out to the trainees that as an additional measure, to compensate for possible increased blind sectors or reduced horizontal fields of vision, the Master must ensure that a proper lookout is maintained at all times during the exchange.

Trainees should be familiar with the organization and both the effect and coverage of port State control.

The legal and safety implications arising from the use of pilots continues to provide some difficulty. Trainees should have a working knowledge of these topics and be able to discuss how to establish effective relationships and also what action should be taken where the relationship is problematic or the actions of the pilot of concern.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

### 1.8 Methods and aids to prevent pollution of the marine environment by ships pollution (2 hours)

This covers the following IMO conventions:

- Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter (London Dumping Convention)
- International Convention Relating to Intervention on the High Seas in Cases of Oil Pollution Casualties, 1969
- International Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage, 1969
- International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, and the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto (MARPOL 73/78) has been covered earlier.

### 1.9 National legislation for implementing international agreements and conventions (1 hour)

Instructors should develop their own objectives here to ensure that national legislation that is the flag State laws are covered to an extent that meets or exceeds the standards laid down in the international conventions, codes and agreements. Emphasis should be on monitoring compliance, identifying areas where there may be potential for non-compliance or differences compared to international standards.

## 3.3 MAINTAIN SAFETY AND SECURITY OF CREW AND PASSENGERS AND THE OPERATIONAL CONDITION OF SAFETY SYSTEMS

### 3.3.1 LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCE REGULATIONS (2 hours)

The requirement of the STCW Convention is covered by IMO model course 1.23, Proficiency in survival craft and rescue boats other than fast rescue boats. Trainees who have successfully completed that course and have been issued with a certificate of proficiency in survival craft have demonstrated the ability and knowledge necessary to satisfy the requirements of the regulations concerning life saving.

The obligations and responsibilities of the master under the requirements of the life-saving appliance regulations of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended, are dealt with in the subject, Maritime Law, of this course.

### SEARCH AND RESCUE

The syllabus for training in search and rescue is contained in IMO model course, maritime search and rescue coordinator surface search. That course provides a thorough knowledge and understanding of the IAMSAR MANUAL and satisfies the requirements of the STCW Convention.

### 3.3.4 ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN TO PROTECT AND SAFEGUARD ALL PERSONS ON BOARD IN EMERGENCIES (4 hours)

SOLAS Regulations list the duties related to passengers which must be assigned to members of the crew. These duties would usually be so arranged that each member of the catering



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

staff would be responsible for a group of rooms. A small party would be charged with taking additional supplies to the lifeboats.

**Rescue of persons from a vessel in distress or from a wreck**

Unless the situation is critical, conditions should be assessed carefully and a plan prepared before initiating rescue action. If the survivors are in no immediate danger and existing conditions make rescue hazardous, consider waiting until conditions have improved or until daylight. Try to establish communications with the survivors to obtain information about their condition and to inform them of the intended method of rescue.

Direct transfer of survivors from a wreck to the ship requires nearly calm conditions and, normally, rescue boats or motor lifeboats will be used.

It is unlikely that the disabled ship or wreck will be drifting at the same rate as the rescue ship so, if time permits, it is a good idea to try to get an estimate of their relative drift rates before launching the boats. At the same time, the rescue ship should reconnoitre the area around the wreck to see if there are any obstructions which might hamper the boats.

During the launching of boats, lifelines, lifebuoys, ladders and nets should be ready in case somebody falls overboard or a boat overturns.

Going alongside a wreck may be difficult. On the lee side the approach may be obstructed by wreckage, and if the wreck is drifting quickly the boat will have difficulty getting away from the side. Sea conditions may make it impossible to approach from the weather side and, since the wreck will probably drift faster than the boat, it will be difficult to remain close enough to transfer survivors. An approach from the weather side is the only possibility when the wreck is on fire or releasing toxic fumes, in which case survivors may have to jump into the water to be picked up by the boats.

If weather conditions make the use of boats too hazardous, and it is not possible to wait for conditions to moderate, a liferaft on a stout line may be towed or floated to the wreck or may be hauled out to the wreck after making connection by line-throwing apparatus. The painter fitted to the liferaft is not heavy enough to be used in this manner.

At the rescue ship, preparations for the transfer of survivors include the provision of a boat rope, nets, ladders, lines and crew standing by to assist. The use of a liferaft alongside as a landing stage releases the boat quickly if it is necessary to make several journeys. Survivors who have been in the sea or survival craft for some time may be suffering from cold, fatigue and sea-sickness and be unable to do much to help themselves.

**Man-overboard procedures**

The standard man-overboard manoeuvres were dealt with in IMO model course 7.03, Officer in charge of a navigational watch.

The standard full-speed man-overboard manoeuvres, such as the Williamson turn, are not possible in very heavy weather. Turning at speed into a heavy sea and swell could cause serious damage to the ship. The turn should be made in the safest way possible in the conditions and the ship manoeuvred into a position to windward of the person in the water.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The ship will quickly drift down to him. A few fit crew members, wearing immersion suits, lifejackets and lifelines, should be standing by to help the person on board. Use may also be made of the line-throwing apparatus, with a buoyant head, to drift a line to the person in the water. It is essential to keep the person in sight throughout the operation, and this is difficult in a heavy sea and swell, so any crew not otherwise occupied in the rescue should be posted as lookouts.

When a person is reported to the master as missing, it may reasonably be assumed that efforts have already been made to find him. A final call on the public address system should be made and if there is no response the ship should be turned into its wake and a search along the reciprocal course made. At the same time, a thorough search of the ship should be organized and the time at which the missing person was last seen should be established. The track should be searched back to the position where it is known the person was still on board. An urgency call requesting other ships in the vicinity to keep a lookout for the person should be made.

### 3.3.5 ACTIONS TO LIMIT DAMAGE AND SALVE THE SHIP FOLLOWING A FIRE, EXPLOSION, COLLISION OR GROUNDING (4 hours)

**Means of limiting damage and Salving the Ship Following a Fire or Explosion**

No definite procedures can be laid down as each occurrence will be unique. Trainees should consider the measures which could be taken in a variety of situations, using materials to be found aboard ship.

It is important to keep observation on damaged areas and temporary repairs, to ensure that there is immediate warning of a worsening situation.

**Procedure for abandoning ship**

A ship should not be abandoned prematurely. It is generally safer to remain aboard a wreck, to await the arrival of assistance, for as long as possible. This is particularly true in severe weather conditions, when abandoning ship is very hazardous and the condition of the crew will deteriorate rapidly in survival craft. Also, in those conditions, craft are likely to become widely dispersed, making rescue more difficult.

When the condition of the ship is such that sinking or breaking up is inevitable, the ship should be abandoned in time to get clear of her before she sinks or before wreckage makes the launching of survival craft dangerous. In the event of fire or explosion or of the release of toxic fumes it may be essential to get clear of the ship as quickly as possible.

Consideration should be given to the method of passing the ‘abandon ship’ signal. It should be distinctive, so that it is not confused with other signals or instructions which may be given in an emergency. The instruction to abandon ship may have to be given by word of mouth if other communication systems have broken down.

The duties of the emergency party should include provision for the shutting down of any machinery, as required.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 3.4 DEVELOP EMERGENCY AND DAMAGE CONTROL PLANS AND HANDLE EMERGENCY SITUATIONS (13 hours)

### 3.4.1 PREPARATION OF CONTINGENCY PLANS FOR RESPONSE TO EMERGENCIES (9 hours)

Given a brief description of a ship and a crew list, trainees should be able to divide the crew into appropriate emergency teams and draw up the muster list and emergency instructions. Instructions should cover general emergency and fire stations separately.

Plans for dealing with fires in specific areas should be considered. Actual plans would depend upon the construction and arrangement of a particular ship, but principles such as containment of a fire, escape routes, access for fire fighters and the medium to be used can be dealt with. Trainees should be reminded that drills at sea should put these plans into action and that a different location for the fire should be chosen at each practice. It may be found that the plans need revising in the light of practice drills (V29).

Similarly, boat drills should sometimes be organized on the assumption that certain survival craft have been destroyed or are not usable for some reason.

The ship safety committee should be involved in the organization of emergency drills and the evaluation of the plans in the light of those drills. Representatives can bring any difficulties or deficiencies to the attention of the committee and suggest solutions to the problem. The committee can increase awareness of the actions required from crew members through their representatives.

The control centre for the command team in port should normally be at main deck level, at a location suitable for liaison with shore authorities. It should have a shore telephone connection and have emergency equipment and information stored there ready for use.

## 3.5 USE OF LEADERSHIP AND MANAGERIAL SKILLS

The detailed teaching syllabus for this section builds on the content of IMO model course 1.39, Leadership and teamwork. Many of the concepts introduced in this course are developed further to consider a more senior management perspective to these concepts.

### 3.5.1 SHIPBOARD PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT AND TRAINING

Officers will have different experiences of personnel management. As officers in charge of a watch they will also have had to exercise their authority. They will therefore recognize and understand many of the learning objectives. It should be possible to build on this and use their prior experience to the maximum to improve their knowledge and ability to cope with seagoing and other personnel such as pilots, ship agents, ship repairers and other shore staff.

There should also be a good opportunity to establish useful facts on the varying conditions of employment experienced by the group of trainees and perhaps to learn something of the advantages and disadvantages of the various systems which the trainees might find to be helpful in the course of their duties.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

If time permits, the trainees should be given group assignments to recreate and learn how to deal with some of the typical arguments and problems which occur on board ship (V111).

**Personnel management** **(10 hours)**

Management level deck officers have significant responsibility for the management of personnel on board ship. It is important that these officers are aware of national law and the detail of employment agreements that relate to personnel on board. It is equally important, however, that senior officers are able to motivate and manage the performance of personnel as well as dealing with disciplinary situations.

**Training** **(6 hours)**

Organization and management skills are best learnt through teamwork activities and case studies. As much time as possible should be devoted to this aspect. Role playing exercises may be designed in communications, meetings, organizing drills and training sessions, to name but a few areas (T37). This is an important part of the course as it involves teaching various subjects to the trainees so that they, in due course, have the capability to train staff on board in the same subjects in order to improve safety and operational standards. There is scope in this section to use role playing and group assignments for some aspects of this training.

Nearly all of the training undertaken aboard ship will be on-the-job training, i.e. the trainee uses the normal ship's tools, equipment and materials during the ordinary running of the ship. Off-the-job training will probably be restricted to the use of video cassettes.

For trainee watchkeepers the STCW Convention requires that an approved programme of on board training is supervised and monitored and is adequately documented in a training record book (STCW Code, section A-II/1, paragraph 6). An example of one such book is that produced by the International Shipping Federation. Extensive guidance regarding training is given in the STCW Code, section B-II/1.

**Purpose of training**

All training is intended to modify attitudes, to increase skills or to provide knowledge which can be applied by the trainee in carrying out his work. The desired outcomes include a reduction in accidents, less need for supervision, greater productivity and improved quality of work. A thorough mastery of a task and knowledge of its relevance to other tasks in the running of the ship also increase the job satisfaction of the crew member concerned.

**Preparation**

Before starting training, the instructor should prepare what he wishes to teach, decide the order of the instruction and make a note of the important points to be emphasized. Any tools or materials which are needed should be ready to hand and equipment, such as video players, should be tested to ensure that it is working.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

### Methods of training

For training to be effective, the trainee must be able to see that it is relevant to him and his work or duties on the ship. The instructor should question the trainees before starting to establish what they already know and can do and to explain why the task is necessary.

Nearly all on-board training is of an informal nature, often one-to-one, so trainees should be encouraged to ask questions or have demonstrations repeated, if necessary, during the training. The instructor should also question or test the trainees at suitable intervals to make sure that they have understood, or are able to perform the skill being taught, up to that point. Where appropriate, provide the trainee with a written note to support the tuition.

### Changing attitudes

An attitude is an individual's habitual mode of responding to an object or situation. Attitudes are developed by experience within social groups, including those of the work place, and may become firmly implanted. To produce a change of attitude by training is therefore difficult and cannot be done quickly.

A crew member may know the correct safe working practice to adopt for a particular task and yet ignore it when not being directly supervised. The necessary insistence on following safe working practices will not necessarily change a careless attitude to safety. A discussion of the consequences to himself and his family of an accident resulting in permanent disablement might be more effective. Officers should remember that their own attitudes and behaviour help to form those of trainees and new entrants, who will not develop desirable attitudes to required standards if their seniors do not adopt them or if they ignore breaches of them by others.

### Training in skills

On-the-job training usually consists of pulling the trainee to watch and work with an experienced person (e.g. a cadet, watchkeeping with a qualified officer). This arrangement fails if the experienced person uses incorrect methods in his work.

In teaching a particular skill, such as a manual task, the instructor should divide the task into self-contained stages, each of which can be taught as a unit. He should identify any critical points at each stage. The job is demonstrated and explained to the trainees in stages, with emphasis on the critical points. The trainee then carries out the job under the supervision of the instructor. Stages are repeated as necessary until the trainees' performances are satisfactory.

### Training in knowledge

In the majority of cases aboard ship this will involve an officer or petty officer describing equipment or a particular task to others, for example, instruction in how to launch an inflatable liferaft and board it, and how to survive when in it. Trainees should be encouraged to participate in the instruction by asking questions or making suggestions. Sufficient questions should be directed to trainees to test that the necessary knowledge is being transferred.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

Knowledge which is not often used (how to survive in a liferaft, for example) is forgotten with the passage of time, hence the necessity for repeating such instruction at intervals.

Each trainee should deliver a short training session (about 10 minutes would be sufficient) to the other members of the class. Subjects, drawn from those which would be undertaken aboard ship, should be assigned to the trainees well in advance to allow them ample time for preparation.

### 3.5.2 RELATED INTERNATIONAL MARITIME CONVENTIONS AND NATIONAL LEGISLATION (4 hours)

It is suggested that where national legislation implementing an international agreement or convention exists, both the national legislation and the international requirements are taught together. For example, a topic could be treated by dealing with the national legislation, including the administrative details necessary for the master to carry out his duties effectively, and making reference to the relevant sections of the international agreement or convention on which the national regulations are based.

In addition to the national laws implementing the international conventions and agreements, the following areas of concern to a ship's master, not touched upon in the syllabus, are mentioned:

- a review of the national system of courts, hearings and appeals
- the procedures for preliminary enquiry and formal investigation of accidents
- contracts of towage
- the carriage of the official logbook, entries and surrender of the logbook at the completion of a voyage
- crew disciplinary procedures, powers and obligations of the master
- the master's disciplinary powers concerning passengers
- calculation of crew wages, rules concerning allotment of wages, deductions of tax and social security contributions, advances, fines, forfeitures, other deductions and payment of the balance
- collective bargaining agreements between seafarers' and shipowners' organizations affecting the employment of crew

### 3.5.3 APPLICATION OF TASK AND WORKLOAD MANAGEMENT (8 hours)

The importance of identifying fatigue should be emphasized by the instructors. Overload situations can have catastrophic results; the instructors should include case studies involving fatigue, as the major reason for the accident/incident.

Personnel assignment, time and resource constraints and prioritization should be explained to the trainees. Providing opportunities for trainees to apply principles by planning complex typical shipboard activities either individually or in groups will enhance learning and the outcomes for trainees.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

### 3.5.4 EFFECTIVE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT (10 hours)

This content is intended to build on the learning of trainees through operational level training and experience. The structure follows the concepts from IMO model course 1.39, Leadership and teamwork but develops these to a management level.

Trainees are likely to enhance their learning where they are able to participate in group discussion and practical group activities where the principles of effective resource management can be applied and developed.

### 3.5.5 DECISION-MAKING TECHNIQUES (7 hours)

Situation and risk assessment, identifying and generating options, selecting course of action and evaluating the outcome effectiveness are covered under this topic.

### 3.5.6 DEVELOPMENT, IMPLEMENTATION AND OVERSIGHT OF STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES (1 hour)

Instructors should explain the methods of developing and implementing standard operating procedures (SOPs) and the reason and dangers of oversighting these procedures. Case studies should be used by the instructors, highlighting these topics.

## 3.6 ORGANIZE AND MANAGE THE PROVISION OF MEDICAL CARE ON BOARD (4 hours)

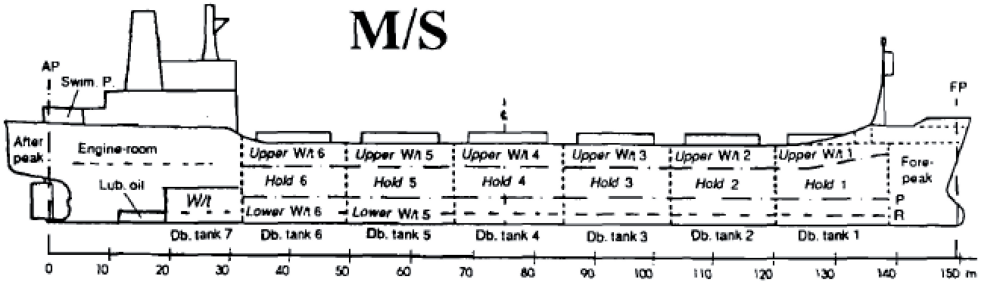
The standards of competence required by the STCW Convention are covered by IMO model course 1.15, Medical care, T33, and V91. However, officers need to know where to get appropriate advice and how to apply it correctly. The three main sources of information are the publications mentioned in this section.



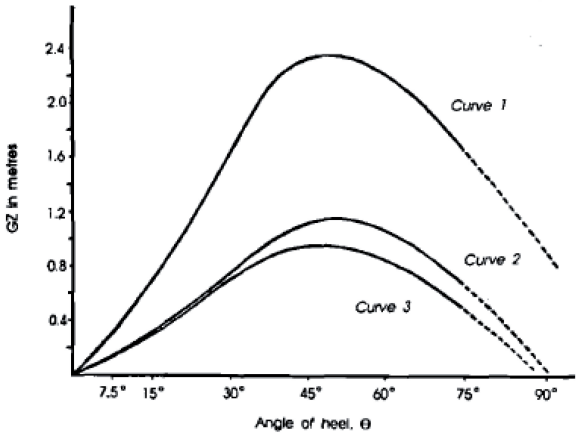
Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Appendix 1

## Stability Data




**Curves of statical stability**




| Curve | Condition | Cargo | *H.O.* | *D.O.* | Stores |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Ballast | – | 695.6 | 155.3 | 150 |
| 2 | Load 1 | 14 894.3 | 250.0 | 53.5 | 150 |
| 3 | Load 2 | 16 040.0 | 200.0 | 51.2 | 150 |

| Curve | *F/W* | Ballast | *L/S* | Δ |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 263.3 | 5070.5 | 4895 | 11 229.7 |
| 2 | 104.8 | 672.4 | 4895 | 21 020 |
| 3 | 104.8 | – | 4895 | 21 441 |

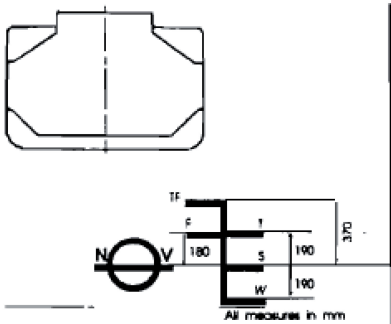
| Curve | KG | $GG_1$ | Corrected KG | GM |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 6.54 | – | 6.54 | 2.56 |
| 2 | 7.113 | 0.043 | 7.156 | 1.484 |
| 3 | 7.320 | 0.043 | 7.363 | 1.307 |

| Capacities in tanks | Volume in $m^3$ | Weights in tonnes | | | | | Centre of Gravity | | Free surface $I = l \times b^3$ $m^4$ / 12 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Lub. oil (ρ = 0.9) | Diesel oil (ρ = 0.9) | Fuel oil (ρ = 0.95) | Fresh w. (ρ = 1.0) | Ballastw. (ρ = 1.02) | VCG (metres) | From AP (metres) | |
| Forepeak | 268.4 | | | | | 275.1 | 7.28 | 142.77 | 67 |
| Db. tank No. 1 | 2 × 214.0 | | | | | 438.7 | 1.49 | 128.44 | 495 |
| Db. tank No. 2 | 2 × 296.0 | | | | | 606.8 | 1.19 | 110.64 | 2757 |
| Db. tank No. 3 | 2 × 328.0 | | | | | 672.4 | 1.13 | 93.39 | 2936 |
| Db. tank No. 4 | 2 × 328.0 | | | | | 672.4 | 1.13 | 75.80 | 2936 |
| Db. tank No. 5 | 2 × 191.3 | | | 363.5 | | 392.2 | 0.76 | 58.22 | 1094 |
| Db. tank No. 6 | 2 × 174.8 | | | 332.1 | | 358.3 | 0.76 | 40.78 | 785 |
| Db. tank No. 7 | 2 × 86.3 | | 155.3 | | | | 1.34 | 24.69 | 81 |
| Lower W/t. No. 5 | 2 × 136.1 | | | | | 279.0 | 1.76 | 58.46 | 81 |
| Lower W/t. No. 6 | 2 × 100.8 | | | 191.5 | | 206.6 | 1.89 | 40.63 | 55 |
| W/t. Eng. Room | 2 × 145 | | | 275.5 | | | 4.88 | 26.79 | 120 |
| Upper W/t. No. 1 | 2 × 149.5 | | | | | 306.1 | 11.57 | 127.41 | 152 |
| Upper W/t. No. 2 | 2 × 204.8 | | | | | 419.8 | 11.25 | 110.98 | 393 |
| Upper W/t. No. 3 | 2 × 204.8 | | | | | 419.8 | 11.25 | 93.39 | 393 |
| Upper W/t. No. 4 | 2 × 204.8 | | | | | 419.8 | 11.25 | 75.80 | 393 |
| Upper W/t. No. 5 | 2 × 204.8 | | | | | 419.8 | 11.25 | 58.22 | 393 |
| Upper W/t. No. 6 | 2 × 204.8 | | | | | 419.8 | 11.25 | 40.60 | 393 |
| After-peak | 158.5 | | | | 158.5 | | 7.98 | 3.44 | 206 |
| Swim. pool | 32 | | | | 30 | 30.8 | 21.86 | 2.20 | 24 |
| Freshw. tank | 2 × 52.4 | | | | 104.8 | | 11.40 | 5.27 | 83 |
| Daily diesel tank | 52.2 | | 47.0 | | | | 10.76 | 15.00 | 39 |
| Daily fuel oil tank | 71.1 | | | 67.5 | | | 10.82 | 11.22 | 102 |
| Diesel oil tank | 6.0 | | 5.4 | | | | 13.99 | 28.53 | 1 |
| Lub. oil tank | 40.0 | 36.0 | | | | | 10.76 | 29.81 | 4 |
| Lub. oil tank | 2 × 20.8 | 37.4 | | | | | 0.67 | 20.60 | 20 |
| Total: | | | 207.7 | 1230.1 | 293.3 | 6307.1 | | | |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Loading Scale




| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| TF | 17039 | tonnes | deadweight at | 9.35 m |
| F | 16538 | " | " | " 9.16 m |
| T | 17057 | " | " | " 9.17 m |
| S | 16546 | " | " | " 8.98 m |
| W | 16037 | " | " | " 8.79 m |

## Ships data

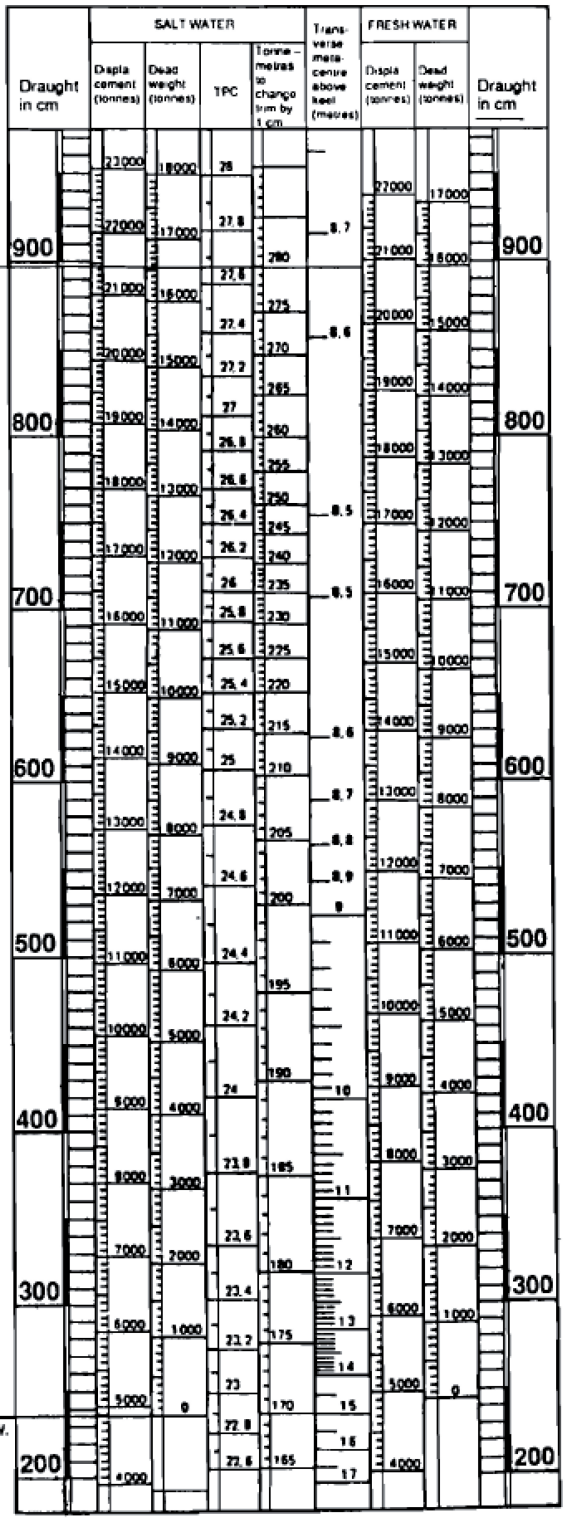
LOA = 159.4 m
LBP = 149.35 m
B = 20.4 m
D = 12.5 m
Gross = 11 182 tonnes
Net = 5 971 tonnes
Δ (s) = 21 441 tonnes
$C_b$ (s) = 0.765

### Light ship:

Displacement 4 895 tonnes
Draught F 0.25 m, A 4.62 m, M 2.43 m
VCG 7.8 m
LCG from AP 61.587 m

Cargo holds:

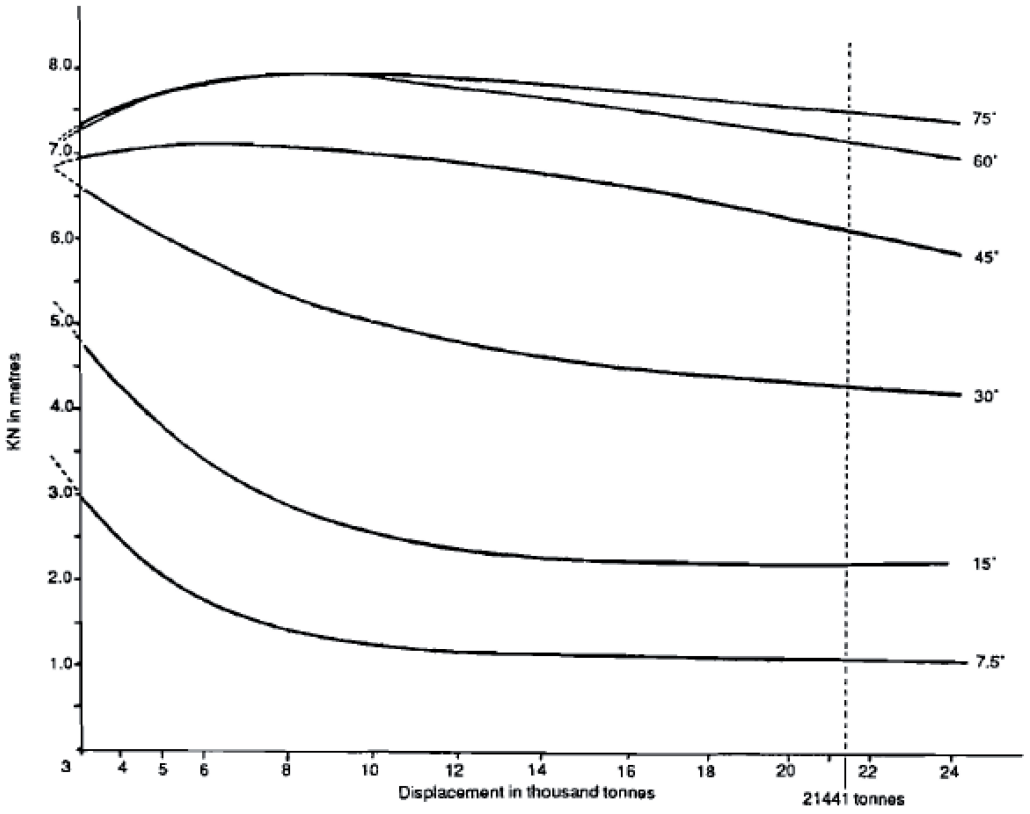
| Hold No. | Volume ($m^3$) | | Centre of Gravity | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Grain | Bales | VCG (m) | from AP (m) |
| 1 | 2 919 | 2 761 | 7.83 | 128.32 |
| 2 | 3 577 | 3 435 | 7.14 | 111.43 |
| 3 | 3 607 | 3 465 | 7.13 | 93.88 |
| 4 | 3 607 | 3 465 | 7.13 | 76.29 |
| 5 | 3 603 | 3 460 | 7.13 | 58.73 |
| 6 | 3 539 | 3 430 | 7.19 | 41.09 |
| Total: | 20 852 | 20 017 | | |

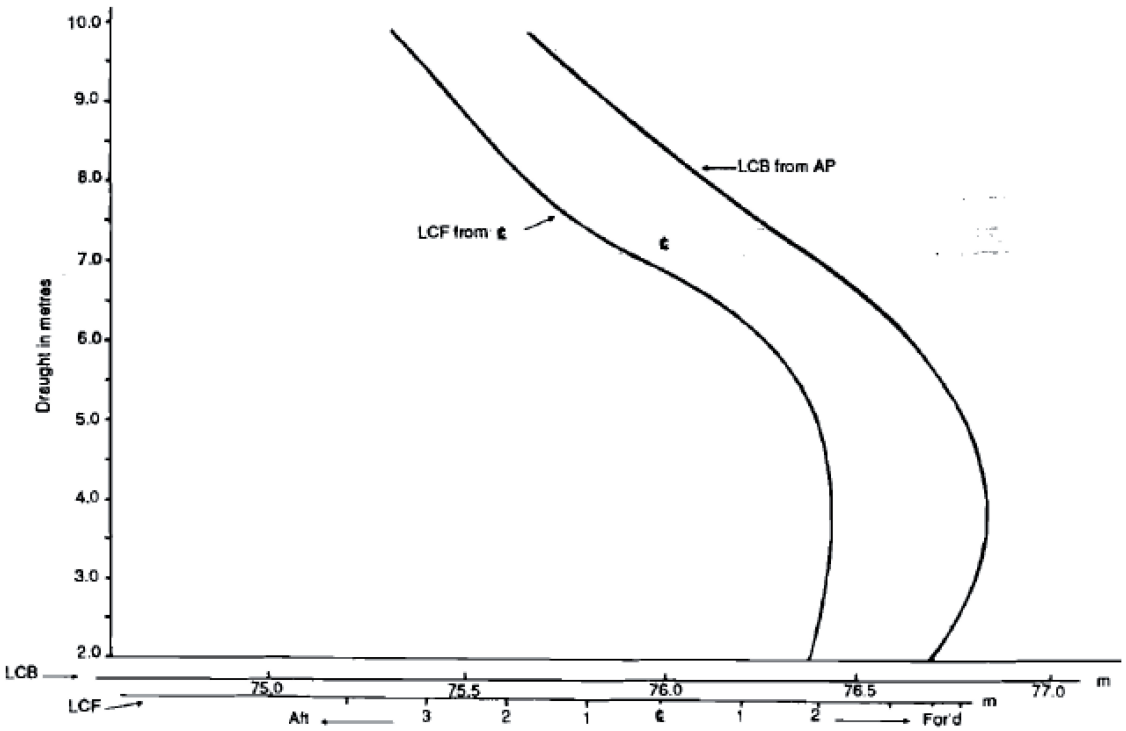





Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# KN Curves



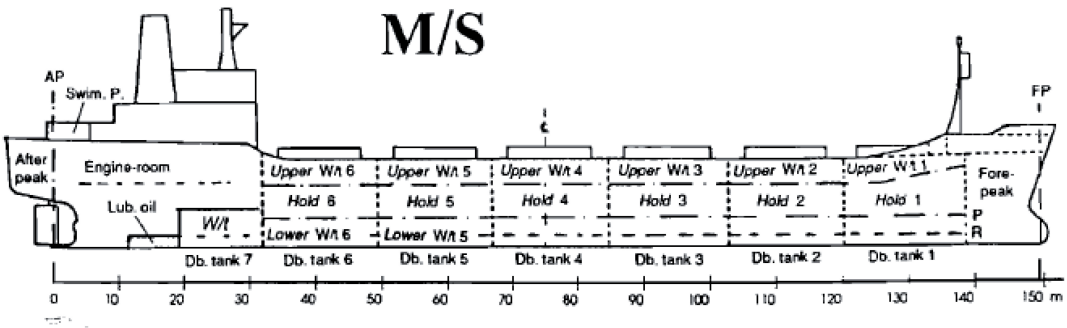



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Appendix 2

## Trim Table

Tables of changes in centimetres of draught forward and aft for each 100 tonnes loaded.




3.0m Draught

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| F | −16 | −13 | −10 | −6 | −1 | +4 | +9 | +14 | −18 | +23 | F |
| A | +26 | +22 | +19 | +15 | +10 | +5 | 0 | −6 | −11 | −15 | A |

6.0m Draught

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| F | −15 | −10 | −8 | −4 | 0 | +4 | +8 | +12 | +16 | +20 | F |
| A | +23 | +19 | +17 | +13 | +8 | +4 | 0 | −4 | −9 | −12 | A |

9.0m Draught

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| F | −9 | −7 | −5 | −2 | +1 | +4 | +7 | +11 | +14 | +17 | F |
| A | +15 | +13 | +12 | +9 | +6 | +3 | 0 | −3 | −6 | −9 | A |

Example – Find the draughts after loading 250 tonnes in No. 2 hold.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Initial draught forward 5.76 m | aft 6.38 m | | |
| Correction | +0.30 | −0.10 | $\left(\frac{250}{100} \times \text{tabulated values}\right)$ |
| New draught | 6.06 m | 6.28 m | |

Notes 1. Interpolation can be used for intermediate draughts.

2. Reverse the signs of the corrections for discharged weights.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part E: Evaluation

The effectiveness of any evaluation depends to a great extent on the precision of the description of what is to be evaluated. The detailed teaching syllabus is thus designed, to assist the instructors, with descriptive verbs, mostly taken from the widely used Bloom's taxonomy.

Evaluation/Assessment is a way of finding out if learning has taken place. It enables the assessor (instructor), to ascertain if the learner has gained the required skills and knowledge needed at a given point towards a course or qualification.

**Evaluation/assessment can also be used:**

- To assist trainee learning.
- To identify trainees' strengths and weaknesses.
- To assess the effectiveness of a particular instructional strategy.
- To assess and improve the effectiveness of curriculum programs.
- To assess and improve teaching effectiveness.

The different types of evaluation/assessment can be classified as:

## ■ Initial/Diagnostic assessment

This should take place before the trainee commences a course/qualification to ensure they are on the right path. Diagnostic assessment is an evaluation of a trainee's skills, knowledge, strength and areas for development. This can be carried out during an individual or group setting by the use of relevant tests.

## ■ Formative assessment

Is an integral part of the teaching/learning process and hence is a "Continuous" assessment. It provides information on trainee's progress and may also be used to encourage and motivate them.

**Purpose of formative assessment**

- To provide feedback to trainees.
- To motivate trainees.
- To diagnose trainees' strengths and weaknesses.
- To help trainees to develop self-awareness.

## ■ Summative assessment

It is designed to measure trainee's achievement against defined objectives and targets. It may take the form of an exam or an assignment and takes place at the end of a course.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**Purpose of summative assessment**

- To pass or fail a trainee
- To grade a trainee

## ■ Evaluation for Quality Assurance

Evaluation can also be required for quality assurance purposes.

**Purpose of assessment with respect to quality assurance**

- To provide feedback to instructors on trainee's learning.
- To evaluate a module's strengths and weaknesses.
- To improve teaching.

## ■ Assessment Planning

Assessment planning should be specific, measurable, achievable, realistic and time-bound (SMART). Some methods of assessment that could be used depending upon the course/ qualification are as follows and should all be adapted to suit individual needs.

- Observation (in Oral examination, Simulation exercises, Practical demonstration).
- Questions (written or oral).
- Tests.
- Assignments, activities, projects, tasks and/or case studies.
- Simulations (also refer to section A-I/12 of the STCW Code 2010).
- CBT.

## ■ Validity

The evaluation methods must be based on clearly defined objectives, and they must truly represent what is meant to be assessed, for example only the relevant criteria and the syllabus or course guide. There must be a reasonable balance between the subject topics involved and also in the testing of trainees' KNOWLEDGE, UNDERSTANDING AND PROFICIENCY of the concepts.

## ■ Reliability

Assessment should also be reliable (if the assessment was done again with a similar group/ learner, would you receive similar results). We may have to deliver the same subject to different groups of learners at different times. If other assessors are also assessing the same course/ qualification as us, we need to ensure we are all making the same decisions.

To be reliable an evaluation procedure should produce reasonably consistent results no matter which set of papers or version of the test is used.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

If the instructors are going to assess their own trainees, they need to know what they are to assess and then decide how to do this. The *what* will come from the standards/learning outcomes of the course/qualification they are delivering. The *how* may already be decided for them if it is assignments, tests or examinations.

The instructors need to consider the best way to assess the skills, knowledge and attitudes of our learners, whether this will be formative and/or summative and how the assessment will be valid and reliable.

All work assessed should be valid, authentic, current, sufficient and reliable; this is often know as VACSR – "valid assessments create standard results".

- Valid – the work is relevant to the standards/criteria being assessed;
- Authentic – the work has been produced solely by the learner;
- Current – the work is still relevant at the time of assessment;
- Sufficient – the work covers all the standards/criteria;
- Reliable – the work is consistent across all learners, over time and at the required level.

It is important to note that no single method can satisfactorily measure knowledge and skill over the entire spectrum of matters to be tested for the assessment of competence.

Care should therefore be taken to select the method most appropriate to the particular aspect of competence to be tested, bearing in mind the need to frame questions which relate as realistically as possible to the requirements of the officer's job at sea.

## ■ STCW

The training and assessment of seafarers, as required under the Convention, are administered, supervised and monitored in accordance with the provisions of section A-I/6 of the STCW Code.

Column 3 – Methods for demonstrating competence and Column 4 – Criteria for evaluating competence in table A-II/2 (Specification of minimum standard of competence for masters and chief mates) of STCW Code sets out the methods and criteria for evaluation. Instructors should refer to this table when designing the assessment.

It should be noted that this column distinguishes where/how competence can be evaluated by examination, by demonstration and in many cases has requirements for both. The reason for this is that while knowledge and understanding can generally be assessed with some validity, using examination, actual or simulated demonstrations are a far more valid method for evaluating proficiency.

Assessment is also covered in detail in another IMO model course, however to assist and aid the instructors, some extracts from the model course is used to explain in depth.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

When evaluation consists of calculations, the following should be taken into consideration:

## ■ Calculations

To carry out their duties, Masters and Chief Mates must be able to solve technical problems by performing calculations in various subject areas such as cargo work, ship stability and navigation calculations.

The ability to perform such calculations and to resolve such problems can be tested by having the candidates carry out the calculations in their entirety. Since a large variety of technical calculations is involved and the time necessary for their complete solution is considerable, it is not possible to completely test the abilities of candidates within a reasonable examination time.

Resort must therefore be made to some form of sampling technique, as is the case with the assessment of knowledge, comprehension and application of principles and concepts in other subject fields.

In examinations conducted on a traditional essay-type basis, the sampling technique that is applied in respect of calculation requirements is to attempt to cover as much of the subject area as possible within the examination time available. This is frequently done by using questions involving shorter calculations and testing in depth on one or two topics by requiring the completion of more complex calculations. The employment of this 'gross sampling' technique reduces the reliability of the examination as compared with what can be achieved with a more detailed sampling technique.

A greater breadth of sampling can be achieved by breaking down calculations into the various computational steps involved in their solution. This technique can only be applied to calculations in which the methodology is standardized. Fortunately, most calculations follow a standard format; where alternative methods of solution exist, the examination can be developed so as to allow candidates an appropriate freedom of choice. Such freedom of choice must be a feature of examinations of all types, in any event.

In order to develop a series of 'step test items', covering an entire calculation, it is necessary to identify each intermediate step in each calculation involved by all methods which are accepted as being correct in principle. These questions, after they have been reviewed for clarity and conciseness, form the standard 'step test items' in that calculation topic.

This approach allows questions to be posed which sample the candidate's knowledge and ability to perform parts of various calculations, which process takes up less time than having him perform entire calculations. The assumption is made that if the candidate can or cannot correctly complete a calculation step leading to the solution, then he can or cannot successfully carry out the entire calculation. Such detailed sampling allows a larger number of questions to be answered by the candidate within the time allotted for the examination, thus allowing a broader sampling of the candidate's knowledge and abilities, thereby increasing the reliability of the examination.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

It must be pointed out that because of the greater number of test items used more time will be spent by candidates in reading the questions and in appreciating the precise step which each question involves.

However, the ability to answer correctly questions that are based on each intermediate step leading to the solution does not necessarily indicate competence in the application of the calculation methodology or in the interpretation of the intermediate or final results. Further questions must therefore be developed which are of a 'procedural' and principle nature.

Such 'step test' and 'procedural' items may be drawn up as 'essay-type' items, supply-type items or multiple-choice items. Marking or scoring is easier if multiple-choice test items are used, but in some cases difficulties may arise in creating plausible distracters.

Detailed sampling can allow immediate identification of errors of principle and those of a clerical nature. It must be emphasized that this holds true, in general, only if the test item is based on a single step in the overall calculation. Multiple-choice items involving more than one step may, in some cases, have to be resorted to in order to allow the creation of a sufficient number of plausible distracters, but care must be exercised to ensure that distracters are not plausible for more than one reason if the nature of the error made (and hence the distracter chosen) is to affect the scoring of the test item.

## ■ Compiling tests

Whilst each examining authority establishes its own rules, the length of time which can be devoted to assessing the competence of candidates for certificates of competency is limited by practical, economic and sociological restraints. Therefore a prime objective of those responsible for the organization and administration of the examination system is to find the most efficient, effective and economical method of assessing the competency of candidates. An examination system should effectively test the breadth of a candidate's knowledge of the subject areas pertinent to the tasks he is expected to undertake. It is not possible to examine candidates fully in all areas, so in effect the examination samples a candidate's knowledge by covering as wide a scope as is possible within the time constraints and testing his depth of knowledge in selected areas.

The examination as a whole should assess each candidate's comprehension of principles, concepts and methodology; his ability to apply principles, concepts and methodology; his ability to organize facts, ideas and arguments and his abilities and skills in carrying out those tasks he will be called upon to perform in the duties he is to be certificated to undertake.

All evaluation and testing techniques have their advantages and disadvantages. An examining authority should carefully analyse precisely what it should be testing and can test. A careful selection of test and evaluation methods should then be made to ensure that the best of the variety of techniques available today is used. Each test shall be that best suited to the learning outcome or ability to be tested.

## ■ Quality of test items

No matter which type of test is used, it is essential that all questions or test items used should be as brief as possible, since the time taken to read the questions themselves lengthens the



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

examination. Questions must also be clear and complete. To ensure this, it is necessary that they be reviewed by a person other than the originator. No extraneous information should be incorporated into questions; such inclusions can waste the time of the knowledgeable candidates and tend to be regarded as 'trick questions'. In all cases, the questions should be checked to ensure that they measure an objective which is essential to the job concerned.

## SCORING TESTS

### Scoring subjective tests

The assessment of seafarers is concerned with judging whether they are competent, in terms of meeting sufficient specified learning objectives, to perform the tasks required by the qualification they are seeking. That is, they should be tested against predetermined criteria rather than against the performance of other examinees or the norm for the group as a whole, as is the case in many examinations.

To achieve that end in subjective tests, an analytical scoring scheme should be drawn up in which complete model answers, which would attract full marks, is produced for each question. The model answer is then analysed for the definitions, facts, explanations, formulae, calculations, etc., contained in it and marks are allocated to each item, the aim being to make the scoring as objective as possible. A subjective element will still exist in the original allocation of marks to the various sections and, to some extent, in the scoring of incomplete or partially correct sections.

Either credit scoring or deductive scoring may be used. In credit scoring, marks are awarded, in accordance with the scoring scheme, for each correctly completed part of the answer, no marks being credited for incorrect parts or omissions. With deductive scoring, marks are deducted for errors and omissions from the total mark for the question or part question (where a question has been divided into two or more sections). When applied to essay questions, the two methods should produce virtually the same score. Deductive scoring is usually confined to the marking of calculations.

Deductive scoring can be weighted to take account of the relative seriousness of different types of error. Errors are commonly classed and weighted as follows:

.1 errors of principle; for example, using the formula for righting moment in a calculation of list; deduct 50% of the mark for the question or part question;

.2 major errors; for example, extracting data for the wrong day or time from a publication; deduct 30% of the mark for the question or part question; and

.3 clerical errors; for example, transposition of numbers from tables or question paper, careless arithmetic; deduct 10% of the mark for the question or part question for each error.

In the case of clerical errors, only one deduction for a single error should be made. No deductions are made for incorrect answers which follow through from the original error. If deductions exceed the total mark for a question or part question it is given a zero score; negative scores are not carried over to other parts.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The different types of error can be taken into account in credit scoring schemes by suitably weighting the marks allocated to method, to the extraction of data and to clerical accuracy at each step of the calculation. The steps need to be smaller and more detailed than the division into parts used in deductive marking. As a result, the marks lost for errors of principle tend to be smaller in credit scoring than in deductive scoring.

A small percentage of the total mark, to be credited only for the correct final answer, is sometimes included in a credit scoring scheme. The answer must lie within stated accuracy limits to qualify for that credit. In deductive schemes, an answer that has otherwise been correctly calculated but which falls outside the accuracy limits are treated as a clerical error.

Where tests are to be marked locally at more than one test centre, a well-defined scoring scheme, which will give the same score when applied to the same paper by different markers, is essential for the uniform and fair treatment of candidates. To aid in any subsequent review of marks, possibly resulting from an appeal, the marker should make brief marginal notes on the paper to indicate the reasons for deductions.

Guidance on the treatment of answers produced by pocket calculators is needed. Examination rules usually warn candidates that all working must be shown to gain full marks for a question. The marks to deduct when insufficient working is shown but a correct answer is produced, or when all working is correctly shown but the answer is wrong, need to be known by the marker.

In papers in which all questions are to be answered, the marks may be weighted to reflect the importance or difficulty of individual questions or the length of time which will be needed to answer them. When this is done, it is usual to indicate the mark for each question on the question paper. Optional questions should all be of similar standard and carry equal marks, so that the standard of the complete test is the same regardless of the questions chosen.

Use can be made of a compulsory and an optional section in the same paper. Questions on which it is felt that all candidates should be tested can be placed in the compulsory section and suitably weighted, while the remainder of the paper offers a choice of questions each of similar standards.

A problem that arises with optional papers is how to deal with cases where more than the required number of questions is answered. Various solutions are adopted by different examining boards. Many mark all questions and discard the lowest marked question or questions, although that fact is not generally advertised as it may encourage candidates to attempt extra questions. Others take the requisite number of answers in the order in which they are on the question paper and ignore the remainder. A similar problem arises in papers in which candidates are required to answer a given number of questions and including at least some stated number from each of several sections.

The pass mark should be set at the lowest score for which sufficient skills and knowledge are demonstrated for competency in each subject. In practice, that score is difficult to determine exactly for an individual paper and could vary slightly from one examination to another. Such an arrangement would be difficult to administer and would be considered unfair by candidates, so the pass mark is fixed and published in the examination regulations. It is, therefore, essential when preparing papers to maintain as constant a standard as possible, such that the pass mark is an appropriate measure of competency.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

The following instructions are typical of those produced for guidance of examiners on the marking of examinations:

In order to achieve uniformity in marking between the examiners in various centres and to facilitate the review of papers, the following guidelines are to be used at all centres:

.1 When several candidates write the same examination, papers, other than multiple choice, should be marked question by question, that is to say, question 1 of paper 1 should be marked for all applicants before proceeding to question 2, etc. This gives more uniform marking.

.2 All questions should be marked even if it becomes apparent that the candidate cannot achieve the pass mark.

.3 Neatness and Orderly Layout of Work:

Where work is not properly laid out or is not neat, marks should be deducted without regard to correctness of the answer. The number of marks deducted should vary according to the quality of the work up to a maximum of 10% where the correct answer is obtained.

.4 Important Engineering and Technical Terms:

Where, in general calculations or general questions, an incorrect term is used and such a term is incidental to the work, the examiner should exercise his judgement as to whether or not marks should be deducted, but in any case, a deduction should not exceed 10% of the allotted marks. This does not apply to direct answers involving definitions or in answers involving the naming of parts.

.5 Types of Errors:

Errors can be divided into 3 types:

(a) P – error in principle; 50% of marks allotted for the whole or part of the question should be deducted.

(b) C – clerical error; 10% of the marks allotted should be deducted for each such error.

(c) M – major error; 30% of the marks allotted for the question or part of the question should be deducted.

NOTE: Large mark questions should be considered in their main sections and percentages of the sections deducted. Candidates should be given the benefit of any doubt which may exist.

.6 Drawings:

Too much importance should not be attached to elaborate drawings. Often a simple sketch with captions is very explanatory and indicative of a good understanding.

.7 Incomplete Answers:

Where a problem or distinct section of a large problem is only partly worked and a step of principle remains to be made, marks allotted should not exceed 50% of the total marks or the split marks allotted as the case may be.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**MARKING PAPERS:**

.8 When marking papers, examiners should enter appropriate marginal notes in brief showing why marks have been deducted, using abbreviations in Paragraph 5. The actual error should be ringed and marked with a brief statement of the reason for the error, e.g., 'wrong answer'. A paper should be so marked that any reviewing examiner can see at a glance just what happened, including a marginal note to indicate award of a 'benefit of doubt'.

.9 In the case of marginal failure, the paper concerned should be carefully reviewed. This review is not to be regarded as having the purpose of passing the candidate; it is to ensure that the foregoing marking standards have been correctly applied and are consistent with those of other responses to the same examination. It may result in either an increase or a decrease in marks assigned. This review having been completed, the examiner should issue a fail result if it is still below the pass mark.

.10 Use of Calculators:

When a pocket, non-programmable calculator is used by a candidate in an examination, all necessary formulae and transpositions must be shown for full marks to be allotted. In the case of a correctly set out answer, or partial answer, which has an incorrect final result, 30% of the whole or part should be deducted on the major error rule.

When the evaluation consists of oral and practical tests, which many topics as per the table A-III/2, column 2, Knowledge, Understanding and Proficiency, require, the following should be taken into consideration:

## ■ Advantages and disadvantages of oral and practical tests

Some aspects of competency can only be properly judged by having the candidate demonstrate his ability to perform specific tasks in a safe and efficient manner. The safety of the ship and the protection of the marine environment are heavily dependent on the human element. In many cases, STCW actually specifies where practical testing is required. In general, all proficiencies require a practical demonstration which in some cases can be performed within training or in service. It is important that any practical testing used to evaluate competence is valid. This means that where this is to be conducted during a training course, the assessor needs to create an environment that has the key features of the work environment on ship present.

It is generally considered advisable that at least some of the testing of knowledge and understanding of candidates for certificates of competency should be conducted orally. The ability of candidates to react in an organized, systematic and prudent way can be more easily and reliably judged through an oral/practical test incorporating the use of models or simulators than by any other form of test.

One disadvantage of oral/practical tests is that they can be time-consuming and can require expensive equipment and facilities. Each test may take up about 1 to 2 hours if it is to comprehensively cover the topics concerned. Equipment must also be available in accordance with the abilities that are to be tested. Some items of equipment can economically be dedicated solely for use in examinations.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Guidance on the Implementation of IMO Model Courses

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
IMO
PUBLISHING

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Contents


| | | Page |
|---|---|---|
| **Part 1:** | Preparation | 335 |
| **Part 2:** | Notes on teaching technique | 340 |
| **Part 3:** | Curriculum development | 342 |
| **Annex A1** | Preparation checklist | 345 |
| **Annex A2** | Example of a model course syllabus in a subject area | 347 |
| **Annex A3** | Example of a lesson plan for annex A2 | 352 |


INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION PUBLISHING



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION
IMO
PUBLISHING

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part 1: Preparation

## 1. Introduction

**1.1** The success of any enterprise depends heavily on sound and effective preparations.

**1.2** Although the IMO model course "package" has been made as comprehensive as possible, it is nonetheless vital that sufficient time and resources are devoted to preparation. Preparation not only involves matters concerning administration or organization, but also includes the preparation of any course notes, drawings, sketches, overhead transparencies, etc., which may be necessary.

## 2. General considerations

**2.1** The course "package" should be studied carefully; in particular, the course syllabus and associated material must be attentively and thoroughly studied. This is vital if a clear understanding is to be obtained of what is required, in terms of resources necessary to successfully implement the course.

**2.2** A "checklist", such as that set out in annex A1, should be used throughout all stages of preparation to ensure that all necessary actions and activities are being carried out in good time and in an effective manner. The checklist allows the status of the preparation procedures to be monitored, and helps in identifying the remedial actions necessary to meet deadlines. It will be necessary to hold meetings of all those concerned in presenting the course from time to time in order to assess the status of the preparation and "troubleshoot" any difficulties.

**2.3** The course syllabus should be discussed with the teaching staff who are to present the course, and their views received on the particular parts they are to present. A study of the syllabus will determine whether the incoming trainees need preparatory work to meet the entry standard. The detailed teaching syllabus is constructed in "training outcome" format. Each specific outcome states precisely what the trainee must do to show that the outcome has been achieved. An example of a model course syllabus is given in annex A2. Part 3 deals with curriculum development and explains how a syllabus is constructed and used.

**2.4** The teaching staff who are to present the course should construct notes or lesson plans to achieve these outcomes. A sample lesson plan for one of the areas of the sample syllabus is provided in annex A3.

**2.5** It is important that the staff who present the course convey, to the person in charge of the course, their assessment of the course as it progresses.

## 3. Specific considerations

**3.1 Scope of course**

In reviewing the scope of the course, the instructor should determine whether it needs any adjustment in order to meet additional local or national requirements (see Part 3).



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 3.2 Course objective

*.1* The course objective, as stated in the course material, should be very carefully considered so that its meaning is fully understood. Does the course objective require expansion to encompass any additional task that national or local requirements will impose upon those who successfully complete the course? Conversely, are there elements included which are not validated by national industry requirements?

*.2* It is important that any subsequent assessment made of the course should include a review of the course objectives.

## 3.3 Entry standards

*.1* If the entry standard will not be met by your intended trainee intake, those entering the course should first be required to complete an upgrading course to raise them to the stated entry level. Alternatively, those parts of the course affected could be augmented by inserting course material which will cover the knowledge required.

*.2* If the entry standard will be exceeded by your planned trainee intake, you may wish to abridge or omit those parts of the course the teaching of which would be unnecessary, or which could be dealt with as revision.

.3 Study the course material with the above questions in mind and with a view to assessing whether or not it will be necessary for the trainees to carry out preparatory work prior to joining the course. Preparatory material for the trainees can range from refresher notes, selected topics from textbooks and reading of selected technical papers, through to formal courses of instruction. It may be necessary to use a combination of preparatory work and the model course material in modified form. It must be emphasized that where the model course material involves an international requirement, such as a regulation of the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping (STCW) 1978, as amended, the standard must not be relaxed; in many instances, the intention of the Convention is to require review, revision or increased depth of knowledge by candidates undergoing training for higher certificates.

## 3.4 Course certificate, diploma or document

Where a certificate, diploma or document is to be issued to trainees who successfully complete the course, ensure that this is available and properly worded and that the industry and all authorities concerned are fully aware of its purpose and intent.

## 3.5 Course intake limitations

*.1* The course designers have recommended limitations regarding the numbers of trainees who may participate in the course. As far as possible, these limitations should not be exceeded; otherwise, the quality of the course will be diluted.

*.2* It may be necessary to make arrangements for accommodating the trainees and providing facilities for food and transportation. These aspects must be considered at an early stage of the preparations.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 3.6 Staff requirements

*.1* It is important that an experienced person, preferably someone with experience in course and curriculum development, is given the responsibility of implementing the course.

*.2* Such a person is often termed a "course coordinator" or "course director". Other staff, such as lecturers, instructors, laboratory technicians, workshop instructors, etc., will be needed to implement the course effectively. Staff involved in presenting the course will need to be properly briefed about the course work they will be dealing with, and a system must be set up for checking the material they may be required to prepare. To do this, it will be essential to make a thorough study of the syllabus and apportion the parts of the course work according to the abilities of the staff called upon to present the work.

*.3* The person responsible for implementing the course should consider monitoring the quality of teaching in such areas as variety and form of approach, relationship with trainees, and communicative and interactive skills; where necessary, this person should also provide appropriate counselling and support.

## 3.7 Teaching facilities and equipment

*.1 Rooms and other services*

It is important to make reservations as soon as is practicable for the use of lecture rooms, laboratories, workshops and other spaces.

*.2 Equipment*

Arrangements must be made at an early stage for the use of equipment needed in the spaces mentioned in 3.7.1 to support and carry through the work of the course. For example:

- blackboards and writing materials
- apparatus in laboratories for any associated demonstrations and experiments
- machinery and related equipment in workshops
- equipment and materials in other spaces (e.g. for demonstrating firefighting, personal survival, etc.)

## 3.8 Teaching aids

Any training aids specified as being essential to the course should be constructed, or checked for availability and working order.

## 3.9 Audiovisual aids

Audiovisual aids (AVA) may be recommended in order to reinforce the learning process in some parts of the course. Such recommendations will be identified in Part A of the model course. The following points should be borne in mind:

*.1 Overhead projectors*

Check through any illustrations provided in the course for producing overhead projector (OHP) transparencies, and arrange them in order of presentation. To produce transparencies, a supply of transparency sheets is required; the illustrations can be



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

transferred to these via photocopying. Alternatively, transparencies can be produced by writing or drawing on the sheet. Coloured pens are useful for emphasizing salient points. Ensure that spare projector lamps (bulbs) are available.

*.2 Slide projectors*

If you order slides indicated in the course framework, check through them and arrange them in order of presentation. Slides are usually produced from photographic negatives. If further slides are considered necessary and cannot be produced locally, OHP transparencies should be resorted to.

*.3 Cine projector*

If films are to be used, check their compatibility with the projector (i.e. 16 mm, 35 mm, sound, etc.). The films must be test-run to ensure there are no breakages.

*.4 Video equipment*

It is essential to check the type of video tape to be used. The two types commonly used are VHS and Betamax. Although special machines exist which can play either format, the majority of machines play only one or the other type. Note that VHS and Betamax are not compatible; the correct machine type is required to match the tape. Check also that the TV raster format used in the tapes (i.e. number of lines, frames/second, scanning order, etc.) is appropriate to the TV equipment available. (Specialist advice may have to be sought on this aspect.) All video tapes should be test-run prior to their use on the course.

*.5 Computer equipment*

If computer-based aids are used, check their compatibility with the projector and the available software.

*.6 General note*

The electricity supply must be checked for correct voltage, and every precaution must be taken to ensure that the equipment operates properly and safely. It is important to use a proper screen which is correctly positioned; it may be necessary to exclude daylight in some cases. A check must be made to ensure that appropriate screens or blinds are available. All material to be presented should be test-run to eliminate any possible troubles, arranged in the correct sequence in which it is to be shown, and properly identified and cross-referenced in the course timetable and lesson plans.

## 3.10 IMO references

The content of the course, and therefore its standard, reflects the requirements of all the relevant IMO international conventions and the provisions of other instruments as indicated in the model course. The relevant publications can be obtained from the Publication Service of IMO, and should be available, at least to those involved in presenting the course, if the indicated extracts are not included in a compendium supplied with the course.

## 3.11 Textbooks

The detailed syllabus may refer to a particular textbook or textbooks. It is essential that these books are available to each student taking the course. If supplies of



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

textbooks are limited, a copy should be loaned to each student, who will return it at the end of the course. Again, some courses are provided with a compendium which includes all or part of the training material required to support the course.

### 3.12 Bibliography

Any useful supplementary source material is identified by the course designers and listed in the model course. This list should be supplied to the participants so that they are aware where additional information can be obtained, and at least two copies of each book or publication should be available for reference in the training institute library.

### 3.13 Timetable

If a timetable is provided in a model course, it is for guidance only. It may only take one or two presentations of the course to achieve an optimal timetable. However, even then it must be borne in mind that any timetable is subject to variation, depending on the general needs of the trainees in any one class and the availability of instructors and equipment.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part 2: Notes on teaching technique

## 1. Preparation

**1.1** Identify the section of the syllabus which is to be dealt with.

**1.2** Read and study thoroughly all the syllabus elements.

**1.3** Obtain the necessary textbooks or reference papers which cover the training area to be presented.

**1.4** Identify the equipment which will be needed, together with support staff necessary for its operation.

**1.5** It is essential to use a "lesson plan", which can provide a simplified format for coordinating lecture notes and supporting activities. The lesson plan breaks the material down into identifiable steps, making use of brief statements, possibly with keywords added, and indicating suitable allocations of time for each step. The use of audiovisual material should be indexed at the correct point in the lecture with an appropriate allowance of time. The audiovisual material should be test-run prior to its being used in the lecture. An example of a lesson plan is shown in annex A3.

**1.6** The syllabus is structured in training outcome format and it is thereby relatively straight forward to assess each trainee's grasp of the subject matter presented during the lecture. Such assessment may take the form of further discussion, oral questions, written tests or selection-type tests, such as multiple-choice questions, based on the objectives used in the syllabus. Selection-type tests and short-answer tests can provide an objective assessment independent of any bias on the part of the assessor. For certification purposes, assessors should be appropriately qualified for the particular type of training or assessment.

REMEMBER – POOR PREPARATION IS A SURE WAY TO LOSE THE INTEREST OF A GROUP

**1.7** Check the rooms to be used before the lecture is delivered. Make sure that all the equipment and apparatus are ready for use and that any support staff are also prepared and ready. In particular, check that all blackboards are clean and that a supply of writing and cleaning materials is readily available.

## 2. Delivery

**2.1** Always face the people you are talking to; never talk with your back to the group.

**2.2** Talk clearly and sufficiently loudly to reach everyone.

**2.3** Maintain eye contact with the whole group as a way of securing their interest and maintaining it (i.e. do not look continuously at one particular person, nor at a point in space).



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

**2.4** People are all different, and they behave and react in different ways. An important function of an instructor is to maintain interest and interaction between members of a group.

**2.5** Some points or statements are more important than others and should therefore be emphasized. To ensure that such points or statements are remembered, they must be restated a number of times, preferably in different words.

**2.6** If a blackboard is to be used, any writing on it must be clear and large enough for everyone to see. Use colour to emphasize important points, particularly in sketches.

**2.7** It is only possible to maintain a high level of interest for a relatively short period of time; therefore, break the lecture up into different periods of activity to keep interest at its highest level. Speaking, writing, sketching, use of audiovisual material, questions, and discussions can all be used to accomplish this. When a group is writing or sketching, walk amongst the group, looking at their work, and provide comment or advice to individual members of the group when necessary.

**2.8** When holding a discussion, do not allow individual members of the group to monopolize the activity, but ensure that all members have a chance to express opinions or ideas.

**2.9** If addressing questions to a group, do not ask them collectively; otherwise, the same person may reply each time. Instead, address the questions to individuals in turn, so that everyone is invited to participate.

**2.10** It is important to be guided by the syllabus content and not to be tempted to introduce material which may be too advanced, or may contribute little to the course objective. There is often competition between instructors to achieve a level which is too advanced. Also, instructors often strongly resist attempts to reduce the level to that required by a syllabus.

**2.11** Finally, effective preparation makes a major contribution to the success of a lecture. Things often go wrong; preparedness and good planning will contribute to putting things right. Poor teaching cannot be improved by good accommodation or advanced equipment, but good teaching can overcome any disadvantages that poor accommodation and lack of equipment can present.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part 3: Curriculum development

## 1. Curriculum

The dictionary defines *curriculum* as a "regular course of study", while *syllabus* is defined as "a concise statement of the subjects forming a course of study". Thus, in general terms, a curriculum is simply a course, while a syllabus can be thought of as a list (traditionally, a "list of things to be taught").

## 2. Course content

The subjects which are needed to form a training course, and the precise skills and depth of knowledge required in the various subjects, can only be determined through an in-depth assessment of the job functions which the course participants are to be trained to perform (job analysis). This analysis determines the training needs, hence the purpose of the course (course objective). After ascertaining this, it is possible to define the scope of the course.

(**Note**: Determination of whether or not the course objective has been achieved may quite possibly entail assessment, over a period of time, of the "on-the-job performance" of those completing the course. However, the detailed learning objectives are quite specific and immediately assessable.)

## 3. Job analysis

A job analysis can only be properly carried out by a group whose members are representative of the organizations and bodies involved in the area of work to be covered by the course. The validation of results, via review with persons currently employed in the job concerned, is essential if undertraining and overtraining are to be avoided.

## 4. Course plan

Following definition of the course objective and scope, a course plan or outline can be drawn up. The potential students for the course (the trainee target group) must then be identified, the entry standard to the course decided and the prerequisites defined.

## 5. Syllabus

The final step in the process is the preparation of the detailed syllabus with associated timescales; the identification of those parts of textbooks and technical papers which cover the training areas to a sufficient degree to meet, but not exceed, each learning objective; and the drawing up of a bibliography of additional material for supplementary reading.

## 6. Syllabus content

The material contained in a syllabus is not static; technology is continuously undergoing change and there must therefore be a means for reviewing course material in order to eliminate what is redundant and introduce new material reflecting current practice. As defined above, a syllabus can be thought of as a list and, traditionally, there have always been an "examination syllabus" and a "teaching



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

syllabus"; these indicate, respectively, the subject matter contained in an examination paper, and the subject matter a teacher is to use in preparing lessons or lectures.

## 7. Training outcomes

**7.1** The prime communication difficulty presented by any syllabus is how to convey the "depth" of knowledge required. A syllabus is usually constructed as a series of "training outcomes" to help resolve this difficulty.

**7.2** Thus, curriculum development makes use of training outcomes to ensure that a common minimum level and breadth of attainment is achieved by all the trainees following the same course, irrespective of the training institution (i.e. teaching/ lecturing staff).

**7.3** Training outcomes are trainee-oriented, in that they describe an end result which is to be achieved by the trainee as a result of a learning process.

**7.4** In many cases, the learning process is linked to a skill or work activity and, to demonstrate properly the attainment of the objective, the trainee response may have to be based on practical application or use, or on work experience.

**7.5** The training outcome, although aimed principally at the trainee to ensure achievement of a specific learning step, also provides a framework for the teacher or instructor upon which lessons or lectures can be constructed.

**7.6** A training outcome is specific and describes precisely what a trainee must do to demonstrate his knowledge, understanding or skill as an end product of a learning process.

**7.7** The learning process is the "knowledge acquisition" or "skill development" that takes place during a course. The outcome of the process is an acquired "knowledge", "understanding", "skill"; but these terms alone are not sufficiently precise for describing a training outcome.

**7.8** Verbs, such as "calculates", "defines", "explains", "lists", "solves" and "states", must be used when constructing a specific training outcome, so as to define precisely what the trainee will be enabled to do.

**7.9** In the IMO model course project, the aim is to provide a series of model courses to assist instructors in developing countries to enhance or update the maritime training they provide, and to allow a common minimum standard to be achieved throughout the world. The use of training outcomes is a tangible way of achieving this desired aim.

**7.10** As an example, a syllabus in training-outcome format for the subject of ship construction appears in annex A2. This is a standard way of structuring this kind of syllabus. Although, in this case, an outcome for each area has been identified – and could be used in an assessment procedure – this stage is often dropped to obtain a more compact syllabus structure.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## 8. Assessment

Training outcomes describe an outcome which is to be achieved by the trainee. Of equal importance is the fact that such an achievement can be measured OBJECTIVELY through an evaluation which will not be influenced by the personal opinions and judgements of the examiner. Objective testing or evaluation provides a sound base on which to make reliable judgements concerning the levels of understanding and knowledge achieved, thus allowing an effective evaluation to be made of the progress of trainees in a course.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Annex A1 – Preparation checklist

| Ref | Component | Identified | Reserved | Electricity supply | Purchases | Tested | Accepted | Started | Finished | Status OK |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Course plan | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Timetable | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Syllabus | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Scope | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Objective | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Entry standard | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Preparatory course | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Course certificate | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | Participant numbers | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | Staffing | | | | | | | | | |

Coordinator _____

Lecturers _____

Instructors _____

Technicians _____

Other _____

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Annex A1 – Preparation checklist *(continued)*



| Ref | Component | Identified | Reserved | Electricity supply | Purchases | Tested | Accepted | Started | Finished | Status OK |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 11 | Facilities | | | | | | | | | |
| | a) Rooms | | | | | | | | | |
| | Lab | | | | | | | | | |
| | Workshop | | | | | | | | | |
| | Other | | | | | | | | | |
| | Class | | | | | | | | | |
| | b) Equipment | | | | | | | | | |
| | Lab | | | | | | | | | |
| | Workshop | | | | | | | | | |
| | Other | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | AVA Equipment and Materials | | | | | | | | | |
| | OHP | | | | | | | | | |
| | Slide | | | | | | | | | |
| | Cine | | | | | | | | | |
| | Video | | | | | | | | | |
| 13 | IMO Reference | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | Textbooks | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | Bibliography | | | | | | | | | |

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Annex A2 – Example of a model course syllabus in a subject area

**Subject area :** Ship construction

**Prerequisite :** Have a broad understanding of shipyard practice

**General aims :** Have knowledge of materials used in shipbuilding, specification of shipbuilding steel and process of approval

**Textbooks :** No specific textbook has been used to construct the syllabus, but the instructor would be assisted in preparation of lecture notes by referring to suitable books on ship construction, such as *Ship Construction* by Eyres (T12) and *Merchant Ship Construction* by Taylor (T58)



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

## Course outline

| Knowledge, understanding and proficiency | | Total hours for each topic | Total hours for each subject area of Required performance |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Competence :** | | | |
| **3.1 CONTROL TRIM, STABILITY and STRESS** | | | |
| 3.1.1 FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF SHIP CONSTRUCTION, TRIM AND STABILITY | | | |
| .1 | Shipbuilding materials | 3 | |
| .2 | Welding | 3 | |
| .3 | Bulkheads | 4 | |
| .4 | Watertight and weathertight doors | 3 | |
| .5 | Corrosion and its prevention | 4 | |
| .6 | Surveys and dry-docking | 2 | |
| .7 | Stability | 83 | 102 |



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Part C3: Detailed Teaching Syllabus

## Introduction

The detailed teaching syllabus is presented as a series of learning objectives. The objective, therefore, describes what the trainee must do to demonstrate that the specified knowledge or skill has been transferred.

Thus each training outcome is supported by a number of related performance elements in which the trainee is required to be proficient. The teaching syllabus shows the Required performance expected of the trainee in the tables that follow.

In order to assist the instructor, references are shown to indicate IMO references and publications, textbooks and teaching aids that instructors may wish to use in preparing and presenting their lessons.

The material listed in the course framework has been used to structure the detailed training syllabus; in particular:

- Teaching aids (indicated by A)
- IMO references (indicated by R), and
- Textbooks (indicated by T)

will provide valuable information to instructors.

## Explanation of information contained in the syllabus tables

The information on each table is systematically organized in the following way. The line at the head of the table describes the FUNCTION with which the training is concerned. A function means a group of tasks, duties and responsibilities as specified in the STCW Code. It describes related activities which make up a professional discipline or traditional departmental responsibility on board.

The header of the first column denotes the **COMPETENCE** concerned. Each function comprises a number of COMPETENCES. Each competence is uniquely and consistently numbered on this model course.

In this function the competence is **Control Trim, Stability and Stress**. It is numbered 3.1, that is the first competence in Function 3. The term “competence” should be understood as the application of knowledge, understanding, proficiency, skills, experience for an individual to perform a task, duty or responsibility on board in a safe, efficient and timely manner.

Shown next is the required TRAINING OUTCOME. The training outcomes are the areas of knowledge, understanding and proficiency in which the trainee must be able to demonstrate knowledge and understanding. Each COMPETENCE comprises a number of training outcomes. For example, the above competence comprises three training outcomes. The first is concerned with FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF SHIP CONSTRUCTION, TRIM AND STABILITY. Each training outcome is uniquely and consistently numbered in this model course. That concerned with fundamental principles of ship construction, trim and stability is uniquely numbered 3.1.1. For clarity, training outcomes are printed in black type on grey, for example TRAINING OUTCOME.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

Finally, each training outcome embodies a variable number of Required performances – as evidence of competence. The instruction, training and learning should lead to the trainee meeting the specified Required performance. For the training outcome concerned with the fundamental principles of ship construction, trim and stability there are three areas of performance. These are:

**3.1.1.1 Shipbuilding materials**
**3.1.1.2 Welding**
**3.1.1.3 Bulkheads**

Following each numbered area of Required performance there is a list of activities that the trainee should complete and which collectively specify the standard of competence that the trainee must meet. These are for the guidance of teachers and instructors in designing lessons, lectures, tests and exercises for use in the teaching process. For example, under the topic 3.1.1.1, to meet the Required performance, the trainee should be able to:

- state that steels are alloys of iron, with properties dependent upon the type and amount of alloying materials used
- state that the specification of shipbuilding steels are laid down by classification societies
- state that shipbuilding steel is tested and graded by classification society surveyors who stamp it with approved marks

and so on.

IMO references (Rx) are listed in the column to the right-hand side. Teaching aids (Ax), videos (Vx) and textbooks (Tx) relevant to the training outcome and Required performances are placed immediately following the TRAINING OUTCOME title.

It is not intended that lessons are organized to follow the sequence of Required performances listed in the Tables. The Syllabus Tables are organized to match with the competence in the STCW Code, table A-II/2. Lessons and teaching should follow college practices. It is not necessary, for example, for shipbuilding materials to be studied before stability. What is necessary is that *all* of the material is covered and that teaching is effective to allow trainees to meet the standard of the Required performance.



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

FUNCTION 3: CONTROLLING THE OPERATION OF THE SHIP AND CARE FOR PERSONS ON BOARD AT THE MANAGEMENT LEVEL

| **COMPETENCE 3.1** | **Control trim, stability and stress** | **IMO reference** |
|---|---|---|

3.1.1 FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF SHIP CONSTRUCTION, TRIM AND STABILITY

**Textbooks:** T11, T12, T35, T58, T69

**Teaching aids:** A1, A4, V5, V6, V7

Required performance:

**1.1 Shipbuilding materials** (3 hours) R1

- states that steels are alloys of iron, with properties dependent upon the type and amounts of alloying materials used
- states that the specifications of shipbuilding steels are laid down by classification societies
- states that shipbuilding steel is tested and graded by classification surveyors, who stamp it with approved marks
- explains that mild steel, graded A – E, is used for most parts of the ship
- states why higher tensile steel may be used in areas of high stress, such as the sheer strake
- explains that the use of higher tensile steel in place of mild steel results in saving of weight for the same strength
- explains what is meant by:
  - tensile strength
  - ductility
  - hardness
  - toughness
- defines strain as extension divided by original length
- sketches a stress-strain curve for mild steel
- explains
  - yield point
  - ultimate tensile stress
  - modulus of elasticity
- explains that toughness is related to the tendency to brittle fracture
- explains that stress fracture may be initiated by a small crack or notch in a plate
- states that cold conditions increase the chances of brittle fracture
- states why mild steel is unsuitable for the very low temperatures involved in the containment of liquefied gases
- lists examples where castings or forgings are used in ship construction
- explains the advantages of the use of aluminium alloys in the construction of superstructures
- states that aluminium alloys are tested and graded by classification society surveyors
- explains how strength is preserved in aluminium superstructures in the event of fire
- describes the special precautions against corrosion that are needed where aluminium alloy is connected to steelwork



Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO

# Annex A3 – Example of a lesson plan for annex A2

**Subject area : 3.1 Control trim, stability and stress** **Lesson Number: 1** **Duration : 3 hours**

**Training Area : 3.1.1 Fundamental principles of ship construction, trim and stability**

| **Main element**<br>Specific training outcome in teaching sequence, with memory keys | Teaching method | Textbook | IMO reference | A/V aid | Instructor guidelines | Lecture notes | Time (minutes) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1.1 Shipbuilding materials** (3 hours) | | | | | | | |
| States that steels are alloys of iron, with properties dependent upon the type and amounts of alloying materials used | Lecture | T12, T58 | STCW II/2, A-II/2 | V5 to V7 | A1 | Compiled by the lecturer | 10 |
| States that the specifications of shipbuilding steels are laid down by classification societies | Lecture | T12, T58 | STCW II/2, A-II/2 | V5 to V7 | A1 | Compiled by the lecturer | 20 |
| Explains that mild steel, graded A to E, is used for most parts of the ship | Lecture | T12, T58 | STCW II/2, A-II/2 | V5 to V7 | A1 | Compiled by the lecturer | 15 |
| States why higher tensile steel may be used in areas of high stress, such as the sheer strake | Lecture | T12, T58 | STCW II/2, A-II/2 | V5 to V7 | A1 | Compiled by the lecturer | 10 |
| Explains that use of higher tensile steel in place of mild steel results in a saving of weight for the same strength | Lecture | T12, T58 | STCW II/2, A-II/2 | V5 to V7 | A1 | Compiled by the lecturer | 15 |

Licensed to Batumi Maritime Academy for 1 copy. © IMO